

EXHIBIT 8

Part 2

Automate Mail Management

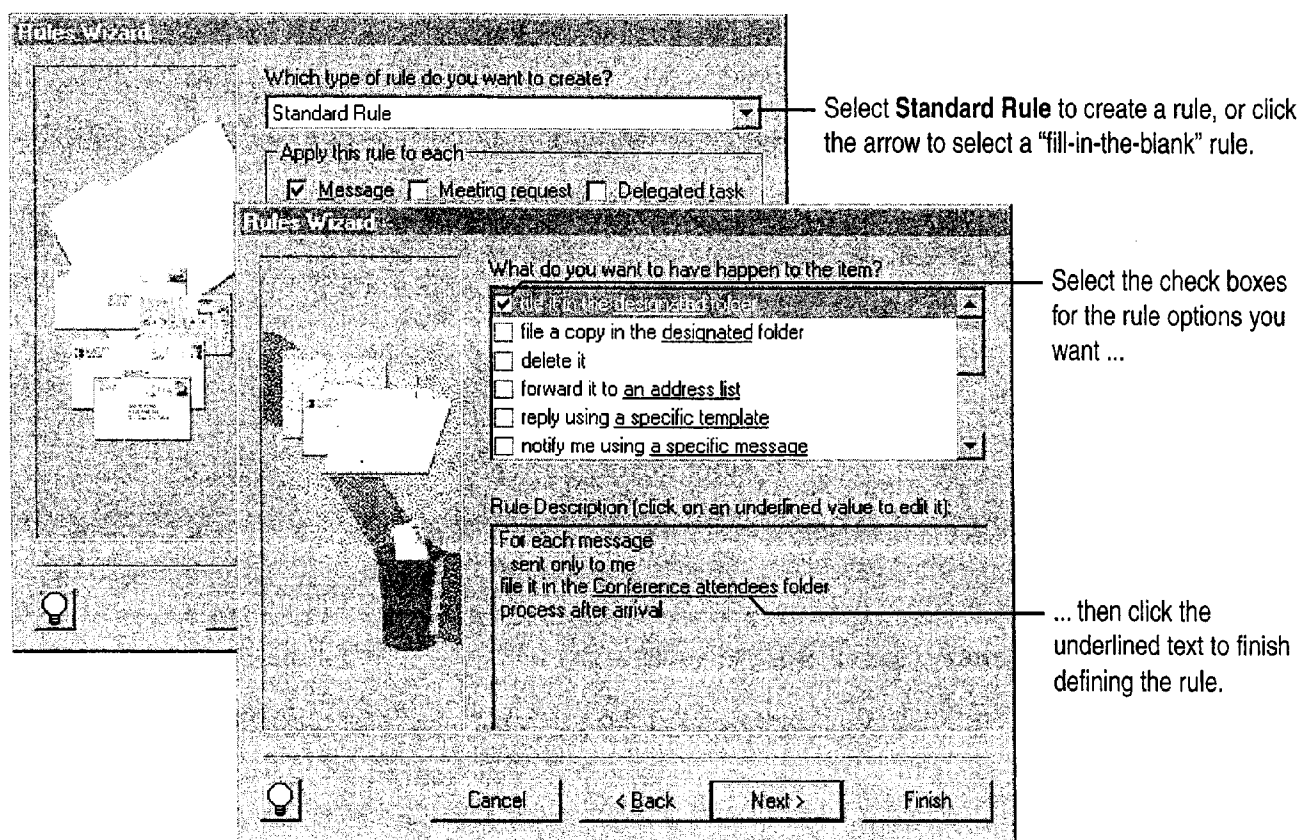
You have requested that conference attendees who register by e-mail include “Inspired Technologies conference” in the subject line. Now you can add a *rule*, an automated instruction, to move registration e-mail to a separate folder so that the messages won’t be added to and possibly misplaced in your Inbox.

Important The Rules Wizard is located on the Outlook Web site. It does not ship with Outlook. To download it, go to:

<http://www.microsoft.com/outlook/>

Click **Rules Wizard** (**Tools** menu), and then click **New**. Select **Standard Rule** from the list, and then follow the instructions in the wizard.

You can use the Rules Wizard to help you manage messages, meeting requests, and tasks.



Let Outlook help you set up a rule Use a “fill-in-the-blank” rule instead of starting from scratch. Click **Rules Wizard** (**Tools** menu), click **New**, and then select rules from the list.

MS 114116

Part 7 Do the Right Thing on the Right Day at the Right Time

Create a Personal Distribution List

You send e-mail messages regularly to your department to update them about the conference. Instead of typing the same names every time you send e-mail, you can create a *personal distribution list* that contains the names of everyone in the group. To send mail easily to a group, click **Address Book (Tools menu)**, and then click **New Entry**.



New Entry button

Click here to create a new distribution list.

Give a name to your distribution list. Then you can type this name in the To box of an e-mail message to send the message to the entire list.

Click here to add names to your list.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Mail** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114117

Use E-mail to Get Opinions

You've narrowed down the conference location to three possible sites. To get your team's input on which site is best, you can use e-mail to get their votes on the choices. Click the **Options** tab in a new e-mail message to set voting options.

Click here to select voting options, or type your own, separated by semicolons.

Click here to save the message to a folder other than Sent Items.

Set tracking and delivery options here.



Track the result of the vote Open the original message, which is stored in the Sent Items folder by default, and then click the **Tracking** tab to see the responses.

Next Steps

To	See
Manage e-mail when you're out of the office	"Use Outlook to Share Folders," page 433
Use a Microsoft Word template as your e-mail editor	"Distribute Documents Online," page 396

MS 114118

Add Activities to the Calendar

Working on the conference for Inspired Technologies is keeping you busy. However, you also need to plan time to take care of other projects and personal errands, as well as to keep track of holidays, seminars, and periods when you won't be in the office. You can use the Calendar to organize your time and to remind you of upcoming activities.

Key Features

-  Appointments
-  Events
-  TaskPad

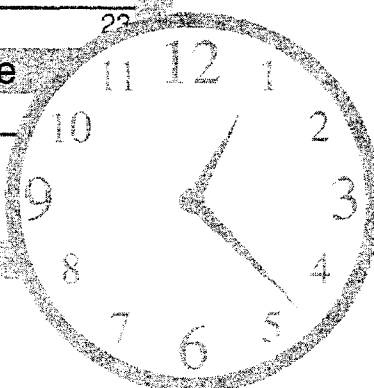
- Create an *appointment* when you want to set aside time in the Calendar for an activity that doesn't involve anyone else. To organize a meeting with other people, see "Set Up a Meeting," page 117.
- Add an *event* to represent a holiday, birthday, or activity that lasts for a day or more.

Weekly
Monthly
Yearly

Monthly Events

May 1997

Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
28	29	30	1	2
5 <i>Busy</i>	6	7 Victoria Day (France)	8	9
12 Meet with Paris Office	13	14	15 <i>Busy</i>	16
19	20	21	22	23
Inspired Technologies Conference				
26 Memorial Day (United States)	27	28	29 <i>Busy</i>	



Schedule an Appointment

You need to schedule time to run an errand. To create an appointment for this activity, click the **New** arrow and then click **Appointment**.

Click here to be prompted for the appointment.

Type a date and time for the appointment, or click the arrows to select a date and time.

Use this list to specify how you want the appointment labeled in the Calendar.



Set up a recurring appointment Click **New Recurring Appointment** (Calendar menu). If you want to turn a one-time appointment into a recurring appointment, double-click the appointment to open it and then click **Edit Pattern** (Appointment menu).

Don't remember when you made that appointment for? Click **Find** (Tools menu).

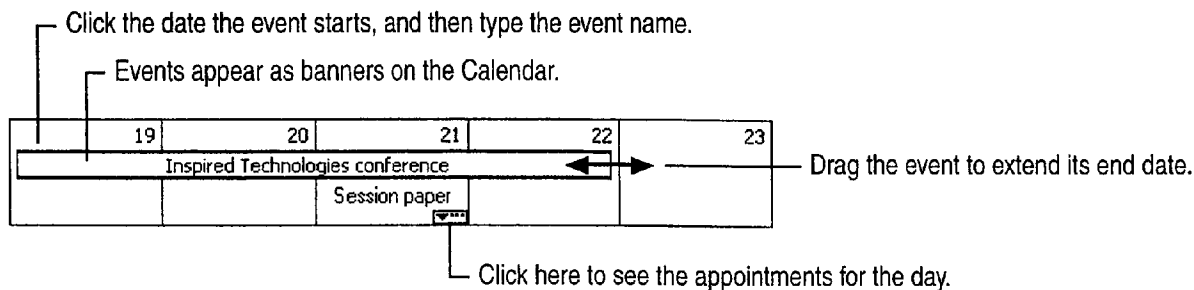
Turn an appointment into a meeting Open the appointment, and then click **New Meeting Request** (Appointment menu).

MS 114120

Part 7 Do the Right Thing on the Right Day at the Right Time

Mark an Event

Add the conference to the Calendar. Click **Month** (**View** menu) to view the Calendar by month, and then start typing.



Add holidays to the Calendar Click **Options** (**Tools** menu). On the **Calendar** tab, click **Add Holidays** to add holidays from one or more countries to the Calendar.

Change the way you display information Select a view in the **Current view** list to change to another view in the Calendar. For more information on views, see "Customize the Way You Display Information," page 366.

Take Care of the Calendar While You're Away

If you're going out of town, you can let someone else create appointments and update the calendar in your absence. Open the conference calendar, and then click **Options** (**Tools** menu). On the **Delegates** tab, click **Add** to assign permissions for the folder to someone else.

MS 114121

Add Activities to the Calendar

The task list that you create in Tasks appears in a TaskPad in the Calendar. To see the TaskPad, click **Day/Week/Month** in the **Current view** list, and then click **Day** or **Week** (**View** menu).

Views that you create in Tasks do not appear in the Calendar. Click **TaskPad View** (**View** menu) to filter the tasks that appear in the TaskPad. Click **TaskPad Settings** (**View** menu) to customize the way tasks appear in the TaskPad.

Next Steps

To	See
Plan a meeting	“Your First Outlook Session,” page 113
Send or accept a meeting request	“Confirm a Meeting,” page 387
Use the Calendar for group scheduling	“Use Outlook to Share Folders,” page 433
Learn more about tasks	“Keep a Task List,” page 391

MS 114123

Confirm a Meeting

You've set up a meeting with the speakers for the conference you're planning for Inspired Technologies. You want to confirm the attendees so you can finalize the agenda. In Outlook, after you invite others to a meeting, you can track their responses.

Key Features



Meeting Planner

Meeting Request Thursday

Meeting

To: Andrea Carlson; Bruce Bergstrom; Elliott Loren

Subject: Product Team Meeting

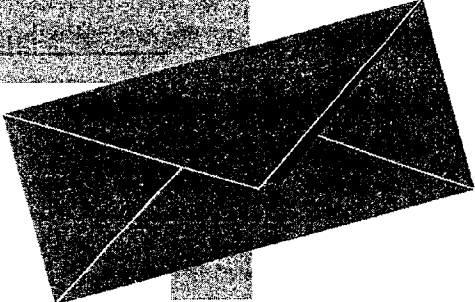
Location: Conference Room 2

Start Time: Thu 5/8/97 10:30 AM

End Time: Thu 5/8/97 12:00 PM

Agenda:

- 1 Review project status
- 2 Discuss product changes
- 3 Discuss new assignments



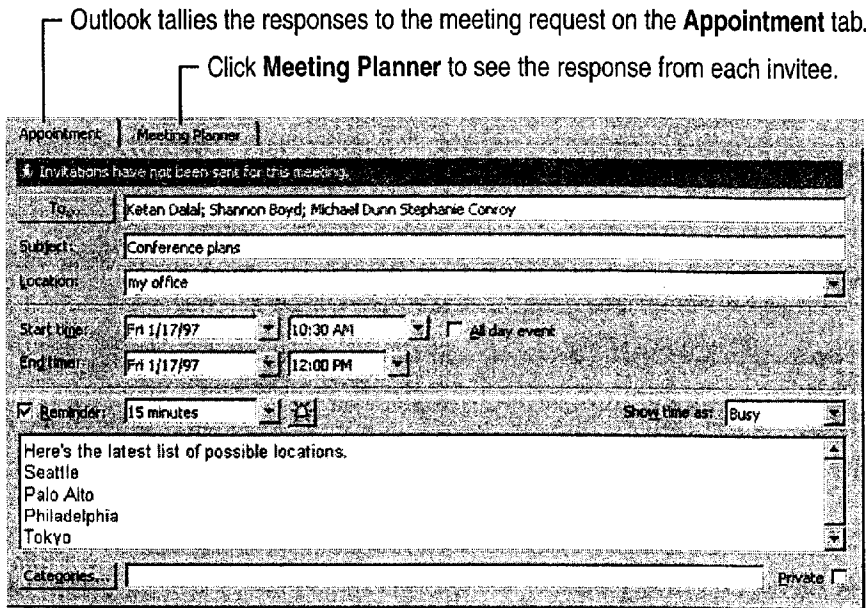
To schedule meetings, you need Microsoft Exchange or a compatible electronic mail system.

MS 114124

Part 7 Do the Right Thing on the Right Day at the Right Time

Track Meeting Responses

After you send a meeting request, the meeting appears in the Calendar. You can open the Calendar item to track responses.



Accept the invitation When you send someone a meeting request, a message appears in that person's Inbox with a meeting request symbol. They can accept, tentatively accept, or decline the request. If they accept, the meeting appears as an item on their calendar.

Create a recurring meeting Click **New Recurring Meeting (Calendar menu)** to schedule a meeting regularly.

Cancel a meeting Open the meeting, and then click **Delete (File menu)**.

Reschedule a meeting If you have to change a meeting, open the meeting and then change the date and/or time. You can type an explanation for the change in the text box. Then click the **Send** button to notify the attendees.



Meeting request symbol



Send button

MS 114125

Confirm a Meeting

Send a Meeting Request Over the Internet

You can send meeting requests and receive responses over the Internet. Just type the Internet address in the **Meeting Planner** when you set up the meeting. If both you and the invitee are using Microsoft Exchange, you can see available times in the **Meeting Planner**.

If the Internet invitees use Outlook or Schedule+, the meeting appears in their calendars when they accept it.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Meeting** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114126

Part 7 Do the Right Thing on the Right Day at the Right Time

Schedule a Conference Call

One of the speakers is in Tokyo. You decide to schedule a conference call to include him in the meeting. You can set up the Calendar to display more than one time zone so that you can plan the

best time to call. Click **Options** (Tools menu). On the **Calendar** tab, click **Time Zone**. In the **Time Zone** dialog box, select the **Show an additional time zone** check box.

Type the label names you want to appear in the Calendar here.

Click here to display a list of time zones.

To display both time zones in the Calendar, click **Day/Week/Month** from the **Current view** list, and then click **Day**.

Click here to change the order in which the time zones appear in the Calendar. When you swap the time zones here, you also change the time zone for all of your Windows-based programs.

Next Steps

To	See
Print information in the Calendar	“Add Activities to the Calendar,” page 382
Use the Journal to keep a record of meetings, e-mail messages, and appointments	“Your First Outlook Session,” page 113

MS 114127

Keep a Task List

The conference you're planning has a number of tasks associated with it. You're responsible for defining the tasks and assigning them to members of your team. Outlook gives you the flexibility to organize and share tasks with others.

Key Features

 Delegating Tasks

Tasks *Thursday, May 8th* day

Subject	Status	Due Date
Click here to add new task		
! Write Monthly Report	In Progress	Thu 5/8/97
Discuss new contract with Philip	Waiting	None
! Sales Meeting	In Progress	Fri 5/9/97
Weekly project team meeting	Not Started	Fri 5/9/97
Organize e-mail	Not Started	None

MS 114128

Part 7 Do the Right Thing on the Right Day at the Right Time

Assign a Task

You want to delegate one of your tasks to your assistant. In Tasks, double-click the task icon to open the task, and then click **Assign Task** (Task menu). In the **To** box, type your assistant's name.



Assigned task symbol

When you assign a task to someone else, the information is sent to that person in an e-mail message. The symbol next to the task in your task list changes to indicate that it has been assigned to someone else. You can no longer change information in that task, but you can keep a copy of the task.

Click here if you want to keep a copy of the task in your task list.
The task status changes as the recipient updates the task.

You can specify the status, priority, and due date of the task that you're assigning.

You can type notes in the text box, or click **Insert** (File menu) to include Outlook items, files, or objects with the task.



How do you know if the task is accepted? After you assign the task, you receive an e-mail message from the recipient, indicating whether (s)he accepts or declines the task.

What if the recipient declines the task? You own the task again, and you can update the information in it. You can keep the task or assign it to someone else.

Delegate a task as you create it Click **New Task Request** (Tasks menu) to create and assign a task not already on your task list.

Want to rearrange the way tasks are displayed in your task list? Select a different view from the **Current view** list. For more information, see "Customize the Way You Display Information," page 366.

MS 114129

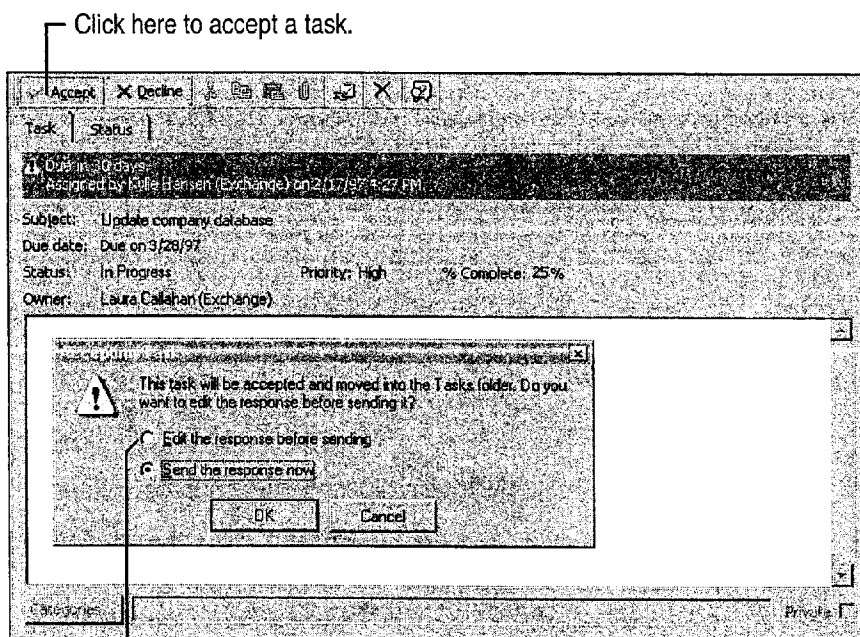
Keep a Task List

Accept a Task

The task request appears in your assistant's Inbox. After the task is accepted, it's added to your assistant's task list. The symbol to the left of the task indicates that the task was assigned to him/her.



Accepted task symbol



Keep track of the task's status Your assistant can update the status options in the task, and then click **Save and Close (Task menu)**. If you chose to keep a copy of the task, the updated information automatically appears in your task list.

Decline a task Your assistant can decline the task by opening the task in the task list, and then clicking **Decline (Task menu)**. The task is removed from your assistant's task list. As originator of the task, you are notified that the task was declined.

Need to print the task? You may want to print a task so that when you're in a meeting you can refer to notes, status, and other details. In the task, click **Print (File menu)**.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Task List** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114130

Part 7 Do the Right Thing on the Right Day at the Right Time

Next Steps

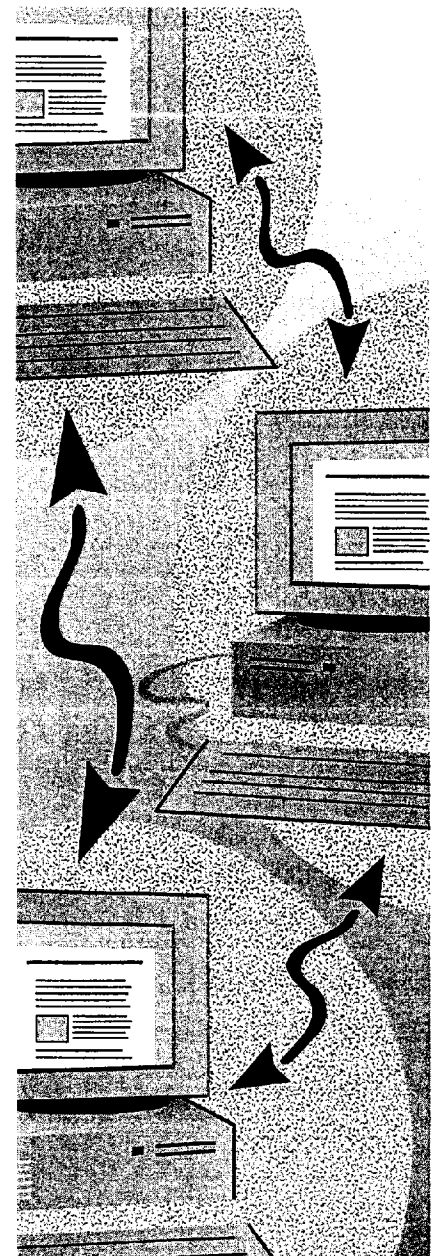
To	See
Post tasks to a public folder	“Use Outlook to Share Folders,” page 433
Track your work	“Your First Outlook Session,” page 113

MS 114131

Exchange Information with Others

Contents

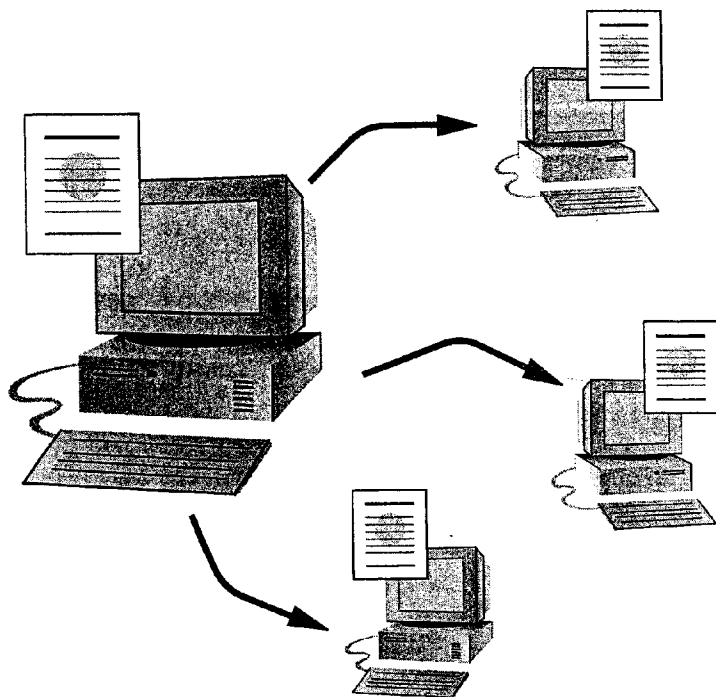
- Distribute Documents Online 396
- Have Your Team Review a Word Document 406
- Share a Workbook with a Co-Worker 412
- Create an Online Manual 417
- Track Orders in a Shared Database 427
- Use Outlook to Share Folders 433



Distribute Documents Online

When you need to distribute your documents to co-workers, you want to do it in the most efficient way possible. Distribute your documents online to get quick feedback from reviewers. You can use Word as your e-mail editor to compose and reply to messages. You can also send e-mail messages to distribute data created in Microsoft Access. When you distribute Microsoft Access data, use the **Send** command (**File** menu), not the **Send To** command.

You can distribute documents to other users over your network.



To send and route e-mail messages in applications for Windows, you must have Microsoft Exchange, Microsoft Mail, cc:Mail, or another compatible e-mail system installed on your computer. The examples in this topic use Microsoft Exchange.

Key Features

Sending Documents

Routing Documents

Posting Documents

Microsoft Word as an E-mail Editor

MS 114133

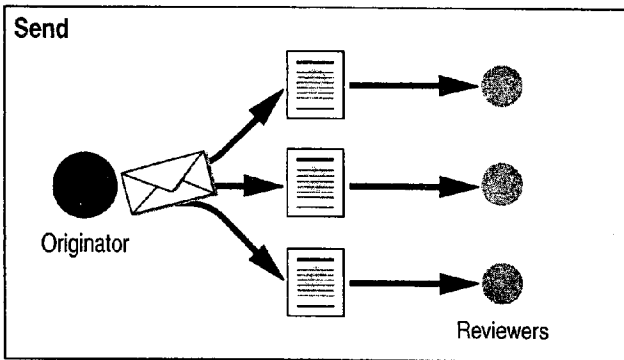
Choose How You Want to Distribute Documents

You have three options for distributing a document online.

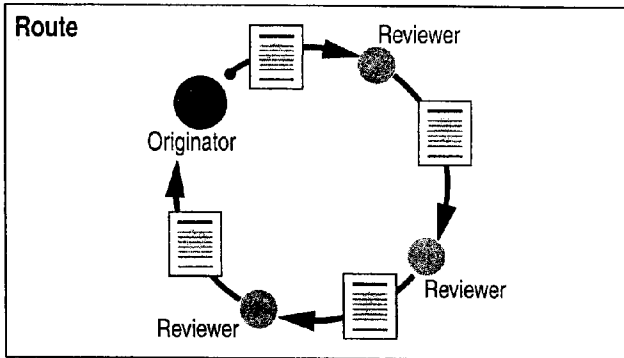
Send a document Choose this method when you need to distribute a document quickly, you have a specific list of reviewers, and you want review comments quickly.

Route a document Choose this method when you have a longer review period, a short list of reviewers, and you want each reviewer to see the comments of previous reviewers.

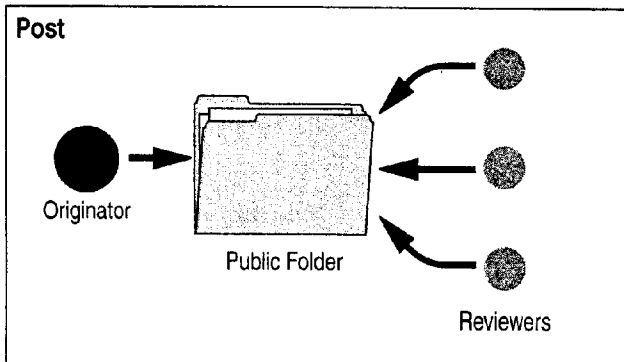
Post a document Choose this method when you want to provide wide distribution of a document, such as a company policy manual, or when you're not sure who might need or want to review it.



The originator sends simultaneous copies of a document to several reviewers, who may each return comments.



The originator routes a single copy of a document to multiple reviewers. Each reviewer sees comments from previous reviewers. The routed copy is automatically returned to the originator.



The originator posts a document to a public folder. Multiple reviewers can access the document and then return copies with their comments.

MS 114134

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

Want to Distribute Information to a Wider Audience?

If you want to distribute information online to your entire company, or to anyone outside your company, use the **Web** toolbar to create files that you can publish on the World Wide Web. For more information, see "Office and the Web," page 442.

What if your audience doesn't use Office? Office has free document viewers that let your online readers view and print files in their native format, without installing the full application. These viewers are free and can be downloaded from a software page that you access by clicking **Microsoft on the Web (Help menu)**.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Distribute Documents** in Help.



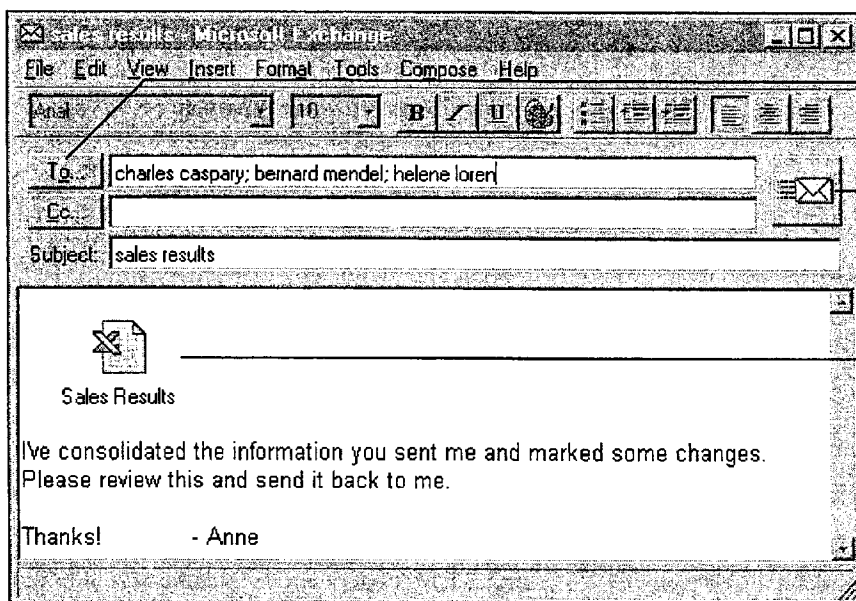
Office Assistant button

MS 114135

Send a Document

If you need to distribute your document to a specific list of reviewers from different departments and you have a tight deadline to meet, use e-mail messages to send your document quickly and efficiently. Each person can review it and return comments individually. When you send a document, you have two options:

- Start from your e-mail application, and then attach the document you want to send. For more information, see the documentation for your e-mail application.
- Start from the application that you're working in (Word, for example), click **Send To (File menu)**, and then click **Mail Recipient** to send a copy of the document you're working on. If you're sending from Microsoft Access, select a format for the document, and then click **Send (File menu)**. This starts your e-mail application, as shown in the following illustration.



To select the recipients, click here, and then use the options in the **Address Book** dialog box.

When you are ready to send your message, click here.

A copy of your document is included in the message.



Want to send a fax instead of an e-mail message? Click **Send To (File menu)**, and then click **Fax Recipient** to send a fax. To send a fax, you must have a modem and fax software. For more information, see "Create a Fax Cover Sheet and Send a Fax," page 192.

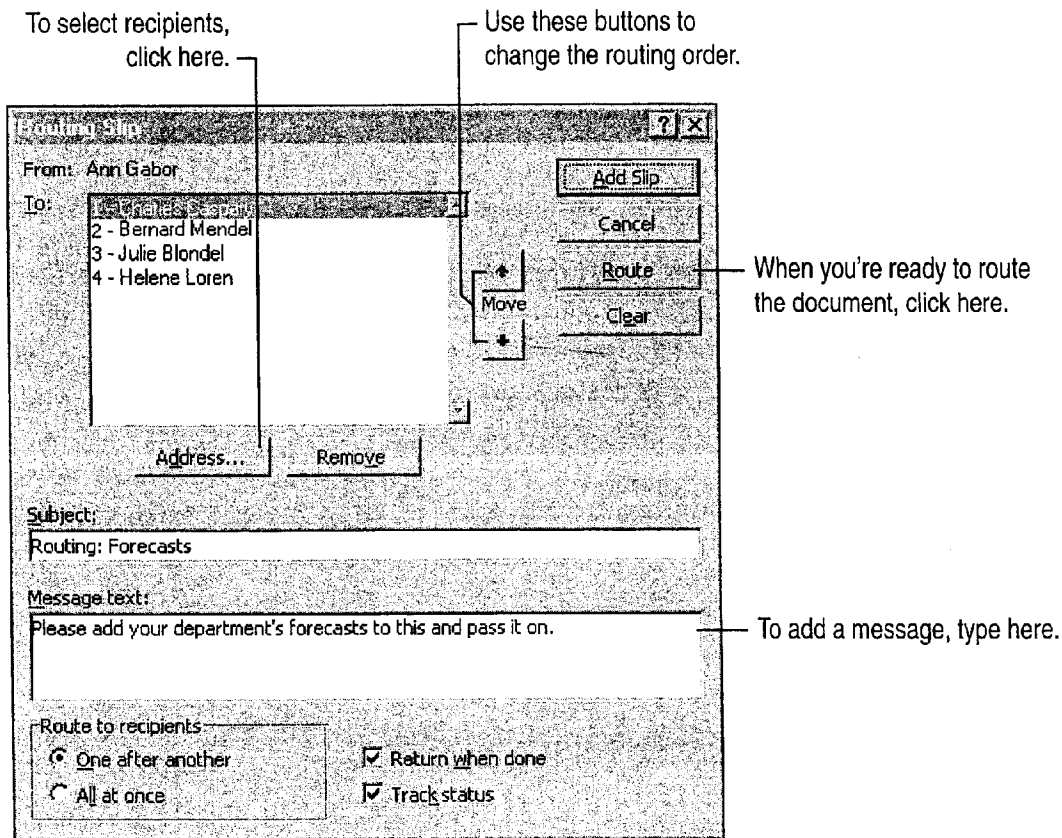
MS 114136

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

Route a Document

Perhaps you want only a few members of your team to see your document. As each member reviews your document, you want him or her to build on the comments of the previous reviewer. In this case, it's best to route your document. When you route a document by sending e-mail messages, you distribute a single copy of the document to the recipients in the order you specify.

To route a document, open the document, and then create a routing slip by clicking **Send To (File menu)** and then clicking **Routing Recipient**. In the **Routing Slip** dialog box, select the recipients and the order in which each will receive the document.



MS 114137



Want to know who has the routed document? When a recipient finishes reviewing the document, clicks **Send To** (**File** menu), and then clicks **Next Routing Recipient**, the document is automatically sent to the next recipient. Each time the document is sent to another person, you receive a status message letting you know who has the document. When the last recipient sends the document, it is routed back to you.

Find out who made the comments in the review document You can lock (protect) the document so that reviewers' changes and comments can be tracked. Word then identifies each set of changes or comments by reviewer. For more information, see "Have Your Team Review a Word Document," page 406.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Distribute Documents** in Help.



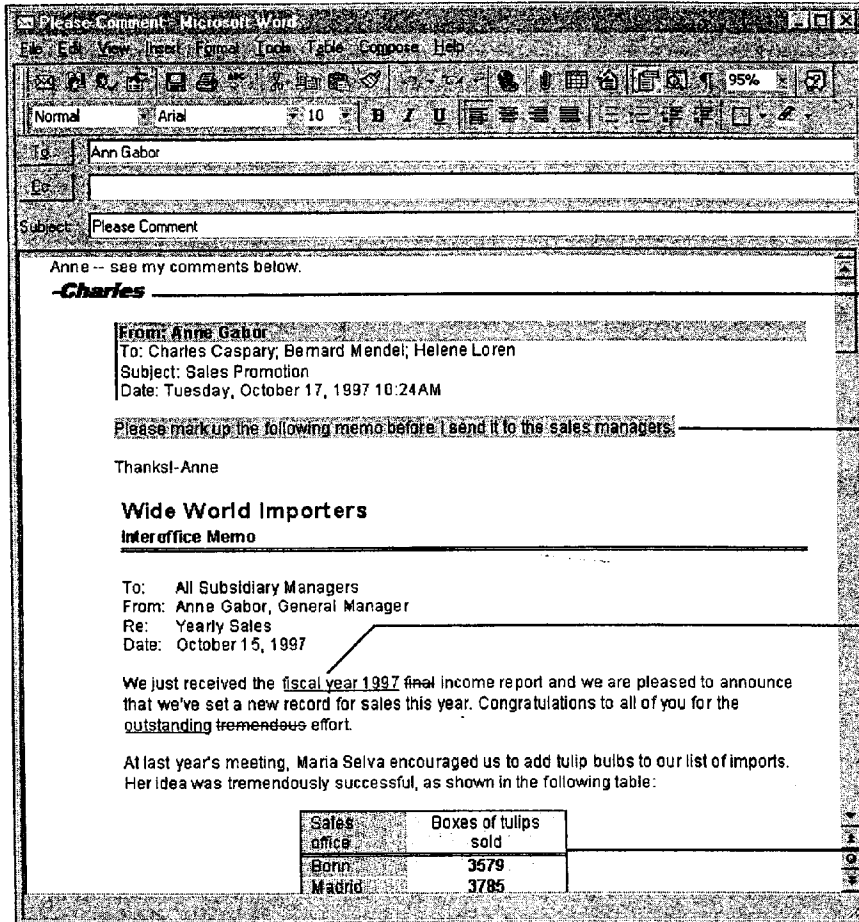
Office Assistant button

MS 114138

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

Use Word for Windows as Your E-mail Editor

Instead of using the built-in message editor that comes with your e-mail application, you can use Word for Windows to make editing and reading e-mail messages easier. For example, you can use highlighting, revision marking, bullets and complex numbering, AutoCorrect, and automatic formatting.



You can automatically include your signature in e-mail messages.

Use the **Highlight** button to highlight important parts of your document.

Revision features in Word make it easy to find comments in long messages.

Use the **Table AutoFormat** command (**Table** menu) to automatically format tables.

Important To use Word as your e-mail editor, you should have at least 12 megabytes (MB) of memory, and you must have Word and either Microsoft Exchange or Microsoft Outlook installed on your computer. If you have Microsoft Exchange, you must have installed WordMail capability when you first installed Office. To install this capability after initial installation, run the Setup program again.

MS 114139



How do you turn on Word as your e-mail editor? In Microsoft Exchange, click **WordMail Options** (**Compose** menu), and then select the **Enable Word as e-mail editor** check box. If you want to use Word as your e-mail editor in Outlook, click **Options** (**Tools** menu), and on the **Mail** tab, select the **Use Microsoft Word as e-mail editor** check box.

Switch between e-mail editors in Microsoft Exchange When you're in the main window of Microsoft Exchange (when folders and messages are displayed), click **WordMail Options** (**Compose** menu).

Make your e-mail messages easier to read Use the **Online Layout** command (**View** menu) to display your messages in larger fonts and with increased spacing, and to jump to comments from a particular person.

Want to automatically include your signature in e-mail messages? Run Word, create an AutoText entry, and name it "signature." Your signature can include formatted text and graphics. Whenever you send a message, Word automatically adds this signature.

Make it easy for others to read long messages If you are sending a long message that includes many replies, you can make it easier for others to read by using the Word **Highlight** button to mark sections that are particularly important.



Highlight button

Use Word E-mail Templates to Create Special Text Effects

To see the templates you can use, in Microsoft Exchange, click **WordMail Options** (**Compose** menu), select a template, and then click **Compose**. To set a template as your default mail template, select a template, click **Set as Default Template**, and then click **Close**. In Outlook, click **Options** (**Tools** menu). On the **Mail** tab, select the **Use Microsoft Word as e-mail editor** check box, click the **Templates** button, and then select a template.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Distribute Documents** in Help.



Office Assistant button

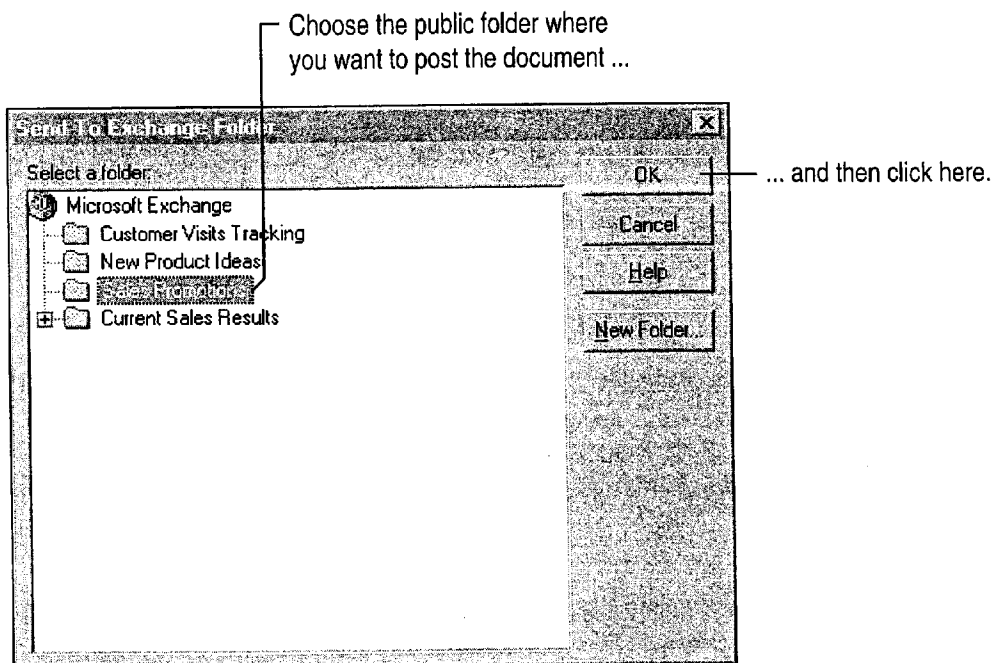
MS 114140

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

Post a Document

If you have a document (such as an employee manual) that you want to make available widely, post your document on a network. When you post a document, you deliver a copy of the document to a Microsoft Exchange public folder so that others can view the document over the network.

To post a document, click **Send To (File menu)**, and then click **Exchange Folder**.



Make it easier for others to find the document you've posted Create a Public Folder shortcut for the folder you're posting your document to, and then include that shortcut in an e-mail message to people who might be interested in reading your document. For more information, see your Microsoft Exchange documentation.

MS 114141

Next Steps

To	See
Get feedback from co-workers on a Word document	“Have Your Team Review a Word Document,” page 406
Share a workbook with co-workers	“Share a Workbook with a Co-Worker,” page 412
Share information on the Web	“Create a Web Presentation with PowerPoint,” page 452 “Publish Microsoft Excel Tables and Charts on the Web,” page 448 “Create a Web Page with Word,” page 458 “Office and the Web,” page 442 “Use Microsoft Access to Retrieve and Publish Data,” page 464
Create a fax cover sheet and fax a document	“Create a Fax Cover Sheet and Send a Fax,” page 192

MS 114142




Have Your Team Review a Word Document

Track Changes Online with Revision Marks and Add Comments

Suppose you just completed a new product proposal, and you want your team to review it online.

Whether you want reviewers to make changes directly to the document or in a separate Comments pane, Word makes it easy for you to get feedback from reviewers.

Key Features

-  Change Tracking
-  Comments
-  Document Protection

You can have Word track changes that reviewers make in a document. It's also easy to see who made a change and when.

By default, Word underlines inserted text. If you want, you can specify different formatting for insertions, deletions, and formatting changes.

In the document, you see a numbered comment mark, but you can see the contents of a comment by placing the pointer on the comment or comment mark.

When online reviewers add comments to a document, they type their comments in a separate Comments pane.

MS 114143

Decide How Reviewers Will Provide Feedback

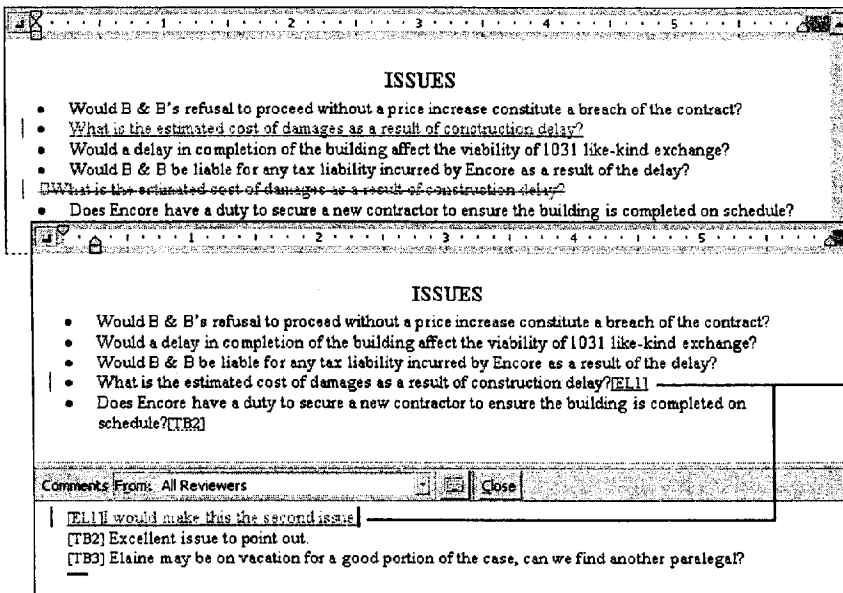
Before routing the document, decide how you want reviewers to provide feedback.

Have reviewers make changes directly to the document Use the Track Changes feature. Reviewers edit a document as they would ordinarily, and revision marks show where they added, deleted, or moved text and graphics, or even reformatted text. Reviewers can also add comments if they want (see next paragraph). When you get the review copy back, you can point to a revision and have a ScreenTip tell you who made the change, the nature of the change, and the date and time of the change. You can review each change and decide whether to accept or reject it.

Have reviewers insert comments without making changes in the document itself Reviewers select the text or graphic they want to comment on, and then click the **Insert Comment** button on the **Reviewing** toolbar. Their comments are inserted in a separate Comments pane, not in the document itself. In the document, the text or graphic they selected is shaded yellow and you'll see a numbered comment mark that includes the reviewer's initials. To see the comments in the document window, point to the shaded text or the comment mark, and a ScreenTip displays the comment. If comment marks aren't displayed, click **Comments (View menu)**.



Insert Comment button (Reviewing toolbar)



When you track reviewers' changes, all their edits are marked with special formatting. You can accept or reject the changes.

When you have reviewers add only comments, you have to manually incorporate their changes in the document.



Want to change the formatting Word uses for tracked changes? Click **Options (Tools menu)**. On the **Track Changes** tab, select the formatting you want.

MS 114144

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

Get a Document Ready for Review

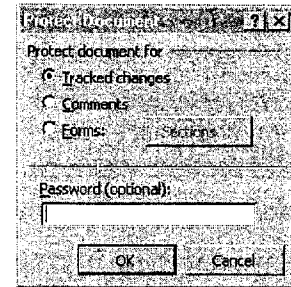
After you decide which method to use for feedback from reviewers, you need to “protect” the document for the kind of feedback you want; that is, lock the document so that only certain types of changes can be made, and then provide instructions for users on how to review your document.

“Lock” the document Open the document for review, and then click **Protect Document (Tools menu)**. Click **Tracked changes** or click **Comments**. Locking the document automatically enables revision marks or comments.

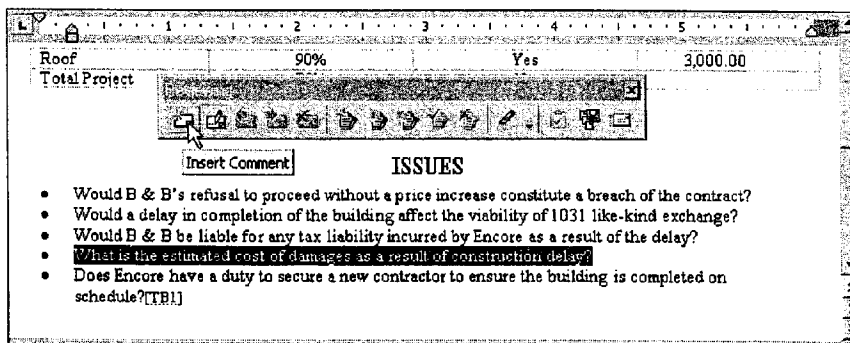
Decide how to distribute the document You can send the document individually to each reviewer, route it so that each reviewer sees previous reviewers’ changes, or put the document on a network server or post it to a public folder. For more information, see “Distribute Documents Online,” page 396.

Include instructions for reviewers In e-mail or the document itself, tell users what to expect. If you protect a document for tracking changes, tell reviewers that revision marks will automatically appear when they edit the document or add comments.

If you protect a document for comments only, tell reviewers that if they want to, they can select the text or graphic they want to comment on—which adds yellow shading—and then click the **Insert Comment** button on the **Reviewing** toolbar. If the toolbar isn’t displayed, they can click **Reviewing (View menu, Toolbars submenu)**.



Protect Document dialog box



Reviewers can insert comments quickly by clicking the **Insert Comment** button on the **Reviewing** toolbar.

MS 114145



Are reviewers distracted by revision marks? Tell them they can hide revision marks while editing by clicking **Track Changes (Tools menu)**, clicking **Highlight Changes**, and then clearing the **Highlight changes on screen** check list.

Want reviewers to focus on key sections only? If you used the **Highlight** button to mark text, tell reviewers they can find these sections by clicking **Find (Edit menu)**, clicking **More**, and then clicking **Highlight** in the **Format** list.

Want reviewers to add voice comments? Reviewers with sound cards and microphones installed on their computers can insert voice comments. Tell reviewers to click the **Insert Comment** button on the **Reviewing** toolbar, and then to click the **Insert Sound Object** button in the Comments pane.



Highlight button



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Team Review** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114146

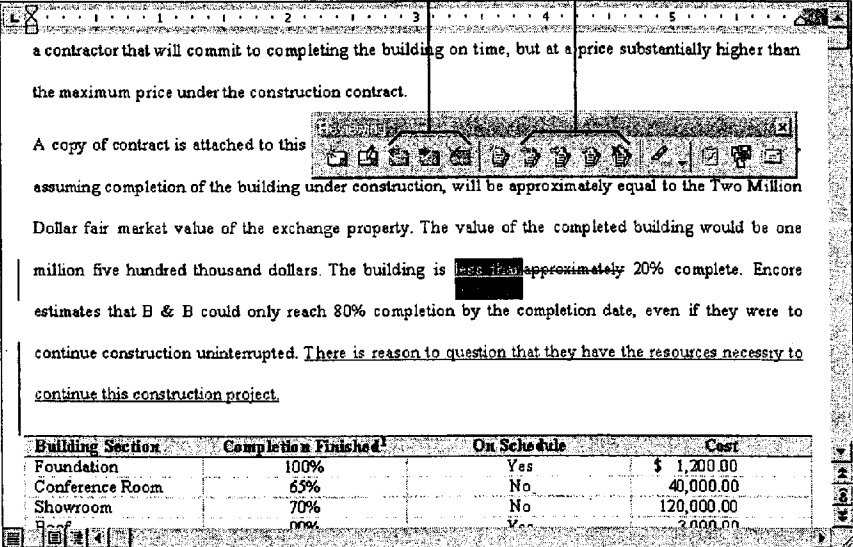
Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

Incorporate Changes

After the reviewers have made their changes, you need to review them. First, remove protection by clicking **Unprotect Document** (**Tools** menu). Display the **Reviewing** toolbar by clicking **Reviewing** (**View** menu, **Toolbars** submenu).

Use these buttons to review and delete comments.

Use these buttons to review, accept, and reject tracked changes.



Building Section	Completion Finished?	On Schedule	Cost
Foundation	100%	Yes	\$ 1,200.00
Conference Room	65%	No	40,000.00
Showroom	70%	No	120,000.00
Office	70%	Yes	2,000.00




Merge changes from all reviewers into a single document Open the document into which all reviewers' changes will be combined, and then click **Merge Document** (**Tools** menu). In the **Select File to Merge into Current Document** dialog box, click a copy of the document that has changes to be merged, and then click **Open**.

Are ScreenTips not displayed for comments or changes? Click **Options** (**Tools** menu). On the **View** tab, select the **ScreenTips** check box.

Do tracked changes not appear in your document? Click **Highlight Changes** (**Tools** menu, **Track Changes** submenu), and then select the **Highlight changes on screen** check box.

Delete a comment Position the insertion point in the text highlighted for the comment, or select the comment mark, and then click the **Delete Comment** button on the **Reviewing** toolbar. The mark and the associated comment are deleted.

Want to print comments? Click **Print** (**File** menu), and then click **Comments** in the **Print what** box.

 For Help on dialog box options, click this button and then click the option.



Delete Comment button
(**Reviewing** toolbar)

MS 114147

Compare Documents When Changes Aren't Tracked

Make sure the original and edited documents have different file names, or are in different folders if they have the same file name. Open the edited version of the document, and then click **Compare Documents** (Tools menu, **Track Changes** submenu). In the **Select File to Compare with Current Document** dialog box, open the file you want to compare.

As Word compares the two documents, it marks differences. You can review and incorporate the changes as described previously.

Next Steps

To	See
Make formatting changes to your document	"Make Your Word Document Look Great," page 127
Make the final version of the document available to a wider audience	"Distribute Documents Online," page 396

MS 114148

Share a Workbook with a Co-Worker

Suppose you need help from your co-workers in completing, verifying, and updating the information in a worksheet. Everyone needs to see the most recent data and know what they're responsible for. Microsoft Excel can merge everyone's changes; you view the group's progress every time you save.

Key Features



Comments

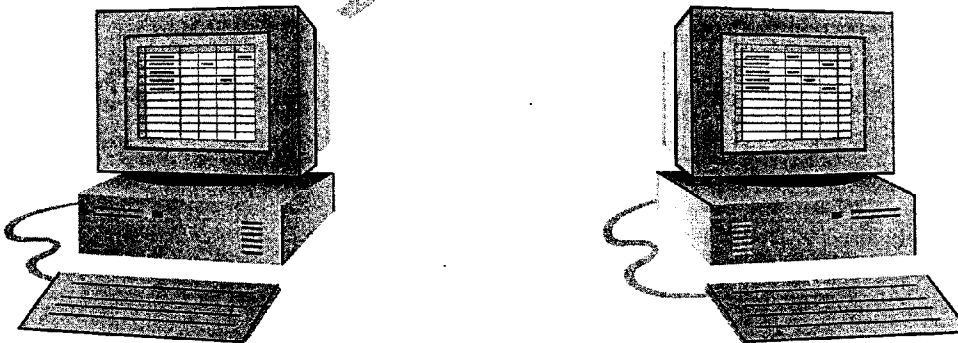
Shared Workbooks

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Company Name	Less than 30 days	30-60 Days	60-90 Days	More than 90 Days
2	Andre's Continental Food Market			335.70	
3	Blum's Goods		5.00		
4	Caesar's Mediterranean Imports				22,483.65
5	Consolidated Holdings		0.80	1,438.75	5,930.60
6	Dunn's Holdings		5.45		
7	Empire Trading	3,968.90			468.60
8					
9	Totals	\$ 5,310.05	\$ 2,621.25	\$ 1,774.45	\$ 28,882.85

Joe:
Roger, call Mr. Blum. This is the first time he's had a late payment.

Past-Due Accounts / Invoices /
Call A3 commented by Joe Howard

Note assignments and instructions right in the cells.



Microsoft Excel lets everyone work on the same worksheet at once and keeps the information up-to-date.

Before you start everyone who shares a workbook must have Microsoft Excel 97.

Did you know that you can also route workbooks to other users?

Routing sends a workbook to each user in succession and returns it to you with their cumulative edits. For more information, see "Distribute Documents Online," page 396.

MS 114149

Prepare Your Workbook to Be Shared

Anyone in your workgroup can share a workbook over your network with little preparation, but you can do some things in advance to make the collaboration go more smoothly. For example, your group can use your aged-receivables worksheet to collect past-due customer accounts. To let your co-workers know which customers to call, you can add *comments* to certain cells. You can also set up the worksheet so that your team members can update the amounts owed and add their own comments, without risking inadvertent changes to the formulas.

To view a comment, move the pointer over a cell containing a comment. To view all comments, click **Comments (View menu)**.

On your worksheet, select the cell you want to add a comment to. Click **Comment (Insert menu)**.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Company Name	Less than 30 days	30-60 Days	60-90 Days	More than 90 Days
2	Andre's Continental Food Market	1,045.95		335.70	
3	Blum's Goods		845.00		
4	Caesar's Mediterranean Imports				22,483.65
5	Consolidated Holdings		200.80	1,438.75	5,930.60
6	Dunn's Holdings		575.45		
7	Empire Trading				468.60
8					
9	Totals		621.25	\$ 1,774.45	\$ 28,882.85

Type your instructions for the cell.

Joe:
Roger, contact Dunn when their account goes past 60 days.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Company Name	Less than 30 days	30-60 Days	60-90 Days	More than 90 Days
2	Andre's Continental Food Market	1,045.95		335.70	
3	Blum's Goods		845.00		
4	Caesar's Mediterranean Imports				22,483.65
5	Consolidated Holdings		1,200.80	1,438.75	5,930.60
6	Dunn's Holdings		295.20	575.45	
7	Empire Trading		3,968.90		468.60
8					
9	Totals		\$ 5,310.05	\$ 2,621.25	\$ 1,774.45
					\$ 28,882.85

Unlock the cells that everyone will edit. Click **Cells (Format menu)**. On the **Protection** tab, clear the **Locked** check box. Then protect the worksheet by clicking **Protect Sheet (Tools menu, Protection submenu)**.

MS 114150

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others



Want to keep your formulas out of sight? Hide them before you protect the worksheet. Select a formula, and then click **Cells (Format menu)**. On the **Protection** tab, select the **Hidden** check box.

Protect the revision history Information about changes made to a shared workbook is recorded on a new sheet named **History**. You can protect this revision history and ensure that the workbook remains shared, until you decide otherwise. Click **Protect for Sharing (Tools menu, Protection submenu)**, and then select the **Sharing with Track Changes** check box. For more information on revision history, see "What Kinds of Shared Editing Can You Do?" later in this topic.

Tend your comments To add, delete, edit, or review multiple comments, click **Comments (View menu)** to display all comments in the workbook and to display the **Reviewing** toolbar.

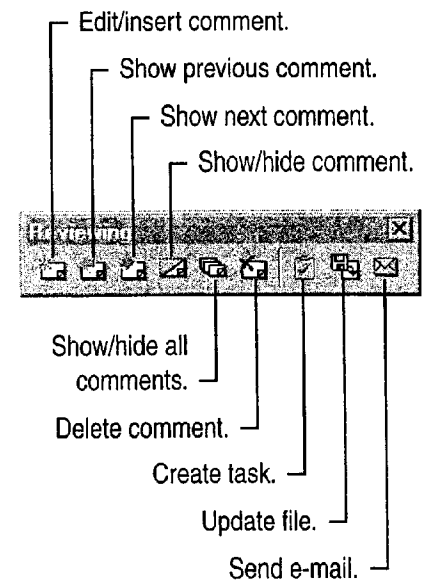
Leap into action Use the **Create Task** button on the **Review Comments** toolbar to start and create a new task in Microsoft Outlook. Click the **Send Mail** button to compose a quick e-mail message. For more information, see "Create a Task," page 120.

Combine separate workbooks Click **Merge Workbooks (Tools menu)**. To allow merging, all the workbooks must be created from the same original, and revision history must be maintained throughout the editing process. For more information, see "Collaborate, and Watch Everyone's Progress," page 415.

Should you consider using a Microsoft Access database? For information that will help you choose the right Office application for your needs, see "Where Should You Store Your Contact Information?" page 346.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Share Workbook** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114151

Collaborate, and Watch Everyone's Progress

Now that you have prepared the workbook, it can be shared. Put it on your network, and then click **Share Workbook** (Tools menu). On the **Editing** tab, select **Allow editing by more than one user at the same time**. Now your team members can get started on their work.

Every time the workbook is saved, it is updated with everyone's saved changes.

Cells that have comments have indicator marks in their upper-right corners.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Company Name	Less than 30 days	30-60 Days	60-90 Days	More than 90 Days
2	Andre's Continental Food Market	1,045.95		335.70	
3	Blum's Goods		845.00		
4	Caesar's Mediterranean Imports				22,483.65
5	Consolidated Holdings		200.80	1,438.75	5,930.60
6	Dunn's Holdings		575.45		
7	Empire Trading				468.60
8					
9	Totals	\$ 5,310.05	\$ 2,621.25	\$ 1,774.45	\$ 28,882.85

When a reviewer moves the pointer over the cell, your comment appears as a tip.



Tired of seeing the comments? After you've read them, turn them off: Click **Options** (Tools menu). On the **View** tab, click **None** in the **Comments** box. Or print the comments by clicking **Page Setup** (File menu). On the **Sheet** tab, select an option in the **Comments** box.

Highlight and review revisions You can easily see the changes made by your group by clicking **Highlight Changes** (Tools menu, **Track Changes** submenu). To review the changes one by one, click **Accept or Reject Changes** (Tools menu, **Track Changes** submenu).

MS 114152

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

What Kinds of Shared Editing Can You Do?

You can do many of the same things in a shared workbook that you can do in a regular workbook. You can create and edit formulas and values; add, delete, and move rows and columns; apply formatting; edit charts; sort and filter the worksheet; and insert and delete sheets. As each user saves the workbook, changes are merged and reconciled.

What if two people change the same cell? When the second user to make a change tries to save the workbook, a dialog box presents information about both changes. The last person to save can decide which change to keep.

Save and update automatically You can save your changes and get updates from other users automatically, at an interval that you set. Click **Share Workbook** (Tools menu). On the **Advanced** tab, click **Automatically every:**, and then type the frequency with which you want to save the workbook.

Keep track of who changed what You can see information about which changes users have decided to keep. Click **Share Workbook**. On the **Advanced** tab, make sure the **Keep change history for:** option is selected. You can then specify how long you want to retain the revision history. To keep the revision history on a sheet in the workbook, click **Highlight Changes** (Tools menu, Track Changes submenu) and then click **List changes on a new sheet**.



Click here to see full details about what changes were saved and discarded.

MS 114153

Create an Online Manual


Use Word to Create an Employee Handbook, Policy Manual, or Systems Guide

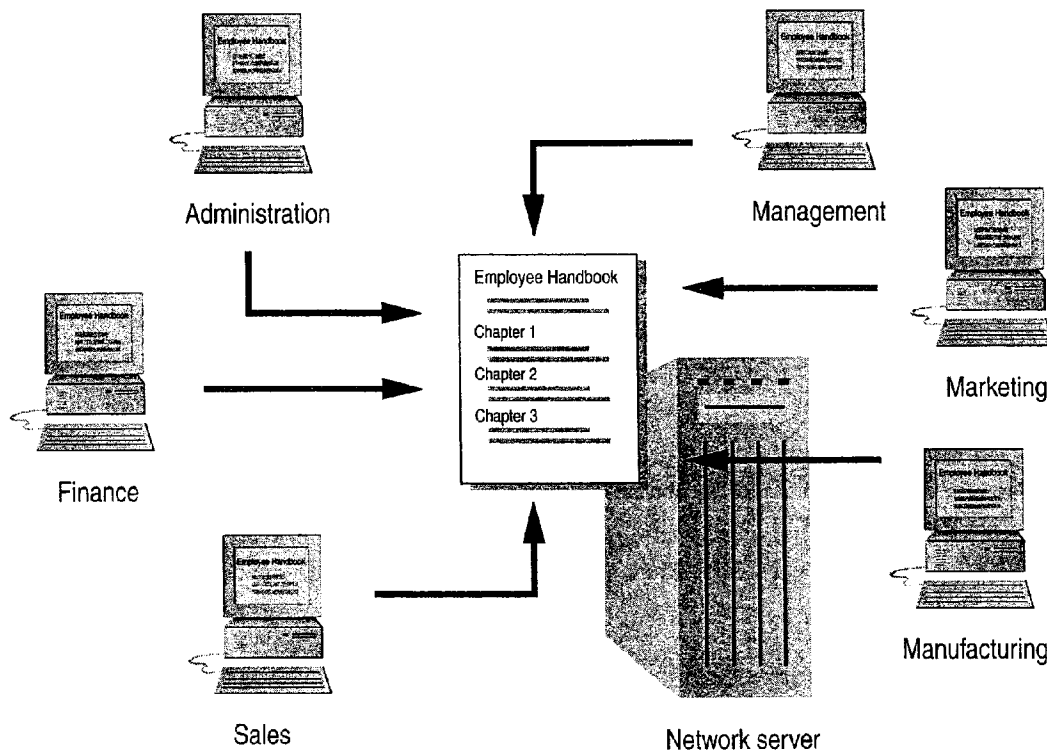
You're in charge of creating a procedures manual for your company, an employee handbook, let's say. You need to make sure the manual is universally accessible and always up-to-date. Also, you want to let users browse through and retrieve information quickly. Finally, you'd like to include color and graphics, but you don't want to pay higher printing costs.

The solution: Create an online manual and move it to a network server. This topic describes how to set up the manual's structure and design.

Move your employee handbook to a network server so that employees in any group or location can access an up-to-date version of the handbook.

Key Features

-  Styles
 - Online Layout View
 - Document Map
 - Hyperlinks
-



MS 114154

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

Create an Easy-to-Read Design

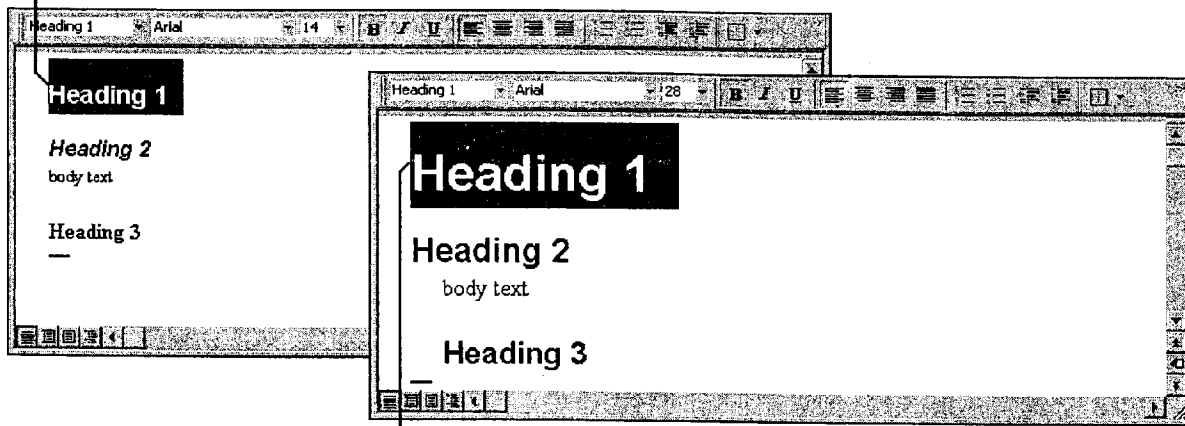
You want to design an online manual that's easy to read and easy to scan. Start by creating a document that sets up the fonts, colors, white space, and other elements you'll need.

Click the **New** button. Type some sample headings and body text, and then format them as shown in the following illustration.



New button

To standardize headings, apply built-in heading styles: Select a heading, and then click a heading style in the **Style** box. Repeat for the other headings.



Change the text design of a built-in style: Select a heading or body text paragraph, format it the way you want, click the **Style** box, press ENTER, and then click **OK** when prompted to update the style to reflect recent changes.



Save your document Click **Save As** (**File** menu), and then name the document.

Want to use a colored background in your online manual? Click **Background** (**Format** menu), and then click the background you want.

MS 114155

What Makes a Design Easy to Read?

To improve the legibility of on-screen text, use large and plain fonts, maximize the contrast between text and the background color, and use white space generously.

To highlight important information, increase the font size, indent the text, or emphasize it with underlining or color. You can even use animated text effects, such as a blinking background or text that sparkles. To add animated text effects, click **Font (Format menu)**. On the **Animation** tab, click the effect you want.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Online Manual** in Help.



Office Assistant button

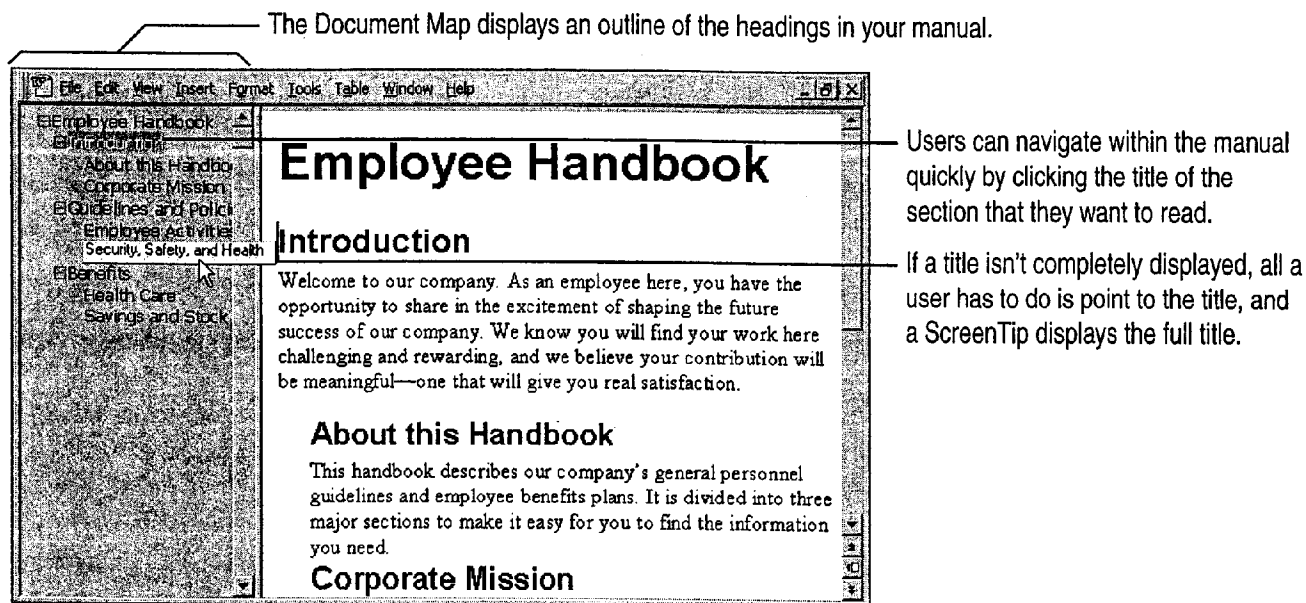
MS 114156

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

What View Should Online Readers Use?

While users can read documents in normal view or page layout view, the best view for reading online is online layout view (**View** menu).

Why? Because of increased legibility through larger fonts and more space between lines. Online layout view also hides screen elements (such as the ruler and horizontal scroll bar) that aren't critical for online reading. It also offers the Document Map, which displays an outline of the document headings.



Recommend that online readers remove toolbars Since online readers won't be editing the manual, you might want to recommend that they remove toolbars and the status bar to clear more screen space. To do so, tell users to click **Toolbars (View menu)** and then to click the toolbars with check marks.

Hands-Free Reading

If online readers with Word for Windows have the Microsoft IntelliMouse pointing device, you might want to point out that they can use the device to automatically scroll at reading speed. All readers need to do is click the wheel button to start the AutoScroll feature.

MS 114157

To Outline or Not to Outline?

After you start writing your manual, you may want to switch to outline view. It provides a quick way to organize your manual, and also creates the Document Map for your manual automatically. To switch to outline view, click **Outline** (**View** menu).

Click here to promote a heading (make it a higher heading level).

Click here to demote a heading (make it a lower heading level).

Click here to demote a heading to body text.

Use buttons on the **Outlining** toolbar to collapse, expand, and rearrange headings and text.

All headings in your outline will appear in the Document Map.

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Word window with the menu bar (File, Edit, View, Insert, Format, Tools, Table, Window, Help) and a toolbar with numbered buttons (1-7) and icons for promoting, demoting, and demoting to body text. The main window displays an outline for 'Employee Handbook' with sub-headings: Introduction, Guidelines and Policies (with sub-points: Employee Activities and Services, Security, Safety, and Health), and Benefits (with sub-points: Health Care, Savings and Stock Plans). A vertical Document Map is visible on the right side of the window.



Even if you don't outline, you can still have a Document Map Just apply heading styles (Heading 1, Heading 2, and so on) to your headings. You can use built-in heading styles or your own custom heading styles. For more information on custom heading styles, see "Reuse Your Custom Formatting," page 144.

Change to normal view for speedier writing and editing Click **Normal** (**View** menu).

MS 114158

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

Want to Keep Different Versions of Your Manual?

As you develop your manual, you may have different ideas about how to organize it, or even about what content to include. Instead of saving different versions of your manual as separate documents, you can save different versions of your manual in the same document file.

Click **Versions** (**File** menu), and then click **Save Now**. To give a brief description of which version you're saving, type a comment in the **Save Version** dialog box.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Online Manual** in Help.



Office Assistant button

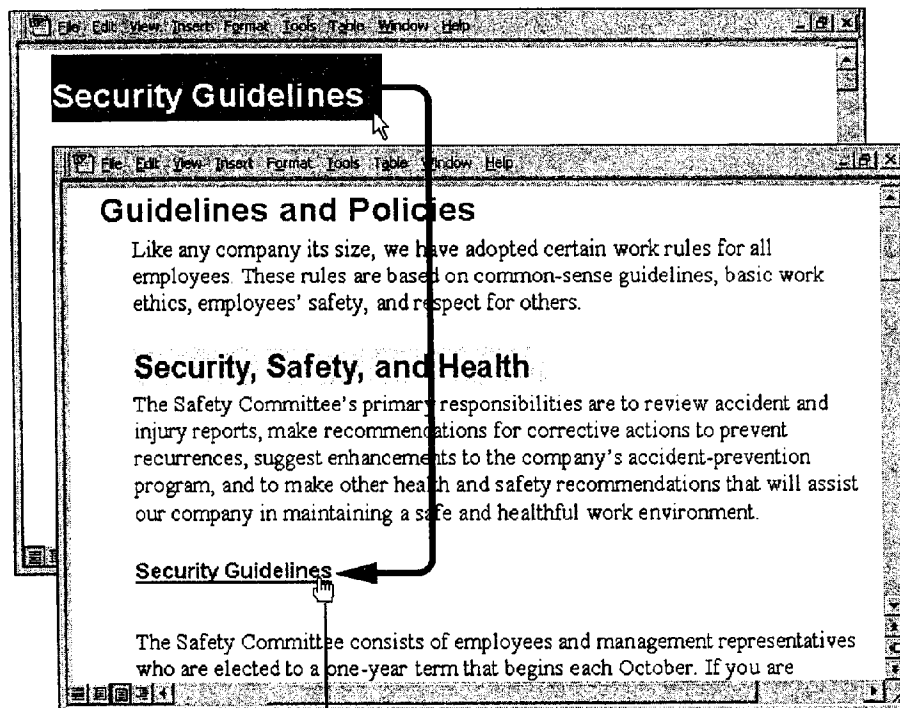
MS 114159

For Easy Navigation, Create Hyperlinks

After you finish writing, the next step is to add hyperlinks, which allow a user to jump from one place in the manual to another.

While the Document Map allows users to jump to the headings in your document, it's also a good idea to add hyperlinks to the text, so users can jump to related sections and to other relevant documents. For example, the section on savings and stock plans might include a hyperlink to another document that provides current stock prices. For more information on creating hyperlinks see "Office and the Web," page 442.

Copy a heading or text in your manual ...



... then click where you want to insert the hyperlink text. Click **Paste as Hyperlink** (Edit menu).

When users point to the heading or text, the pointer becomes a hand, indicating a hyperlink.

MS 114160

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others



The Paste as Hyperlink command isn't available Make sure that the document that you are copying from has been saved.

Want cross-references to be hyperlinks? Just click **Cross-reference** (**Insert** menu). By default, all cross-references in the same document will be hyperlinks. Online readers will be able to jump to headings, page numbers, numbered paragraphs, table or figure references, or whatever you insert as a cross-reference.

Add graphics Word comes with a variety of clip art that you can use to make your manual more interesting. You can even create your own graphics with tools on the **Drawing** toolbar. For more information, see "Get Your Point Across with Graphics," page 159.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Online Manual** in Help.



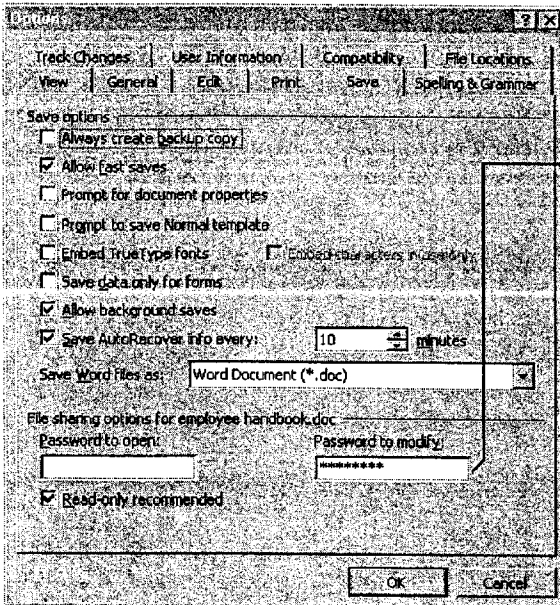
Office Assistant button

MS 114161

Save Your Document and Protect It from Changes

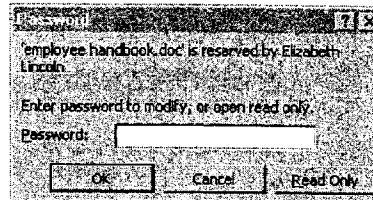
To make sure that your document is not changed by online readers, protect it by requiring a password to modify the document.

Click **Save As (File menu)**, and then click **Options**. On the **Save** tab, type a password in the **Password to modify** box.



To allow online readers to open your manual but not make changes, use this option.

When online readers open your manual, they see a dialog box prompting them to open it as read-only.



Move a copy of your manual to a network server Send e-mail to employees to let them know the location of the manual. In your message, you might also want to strongly recommend that they read the manual in online layout view and that they remove toolbars.

Move the Online Manual to Your Intranet?
 If your company has an intranet, you might want to think about converting your online manual to a Web page. For more information, see “Office and the Web,” page 442, and “Create a Web Page with Word,” page 458.

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

Next Steps

To	See
Use your online manual as a template for other online manuals	“About Creating and Opening Documents and Databases,” page 48
Distribute the manual on your internal Web	“Office and the Web,” page 442
Create a simple schedule that includes topic names, authors, current status, and future milestones	“Create a Business Contact List in Microsoft Excel,” page 353
Schedule team meetings and track other tasks and appointments	“Schedule an Appointment,” page 383, “Keep a Task List,” page 391
Modify the manual’s formats, such as fonts, line spacing, and margins	“Make Your Word Document Look Great,” page 127
Solicit feedback on individual topics or on the entire manual	“Have Your Team Review a Word Document,” page 406


MS 114163

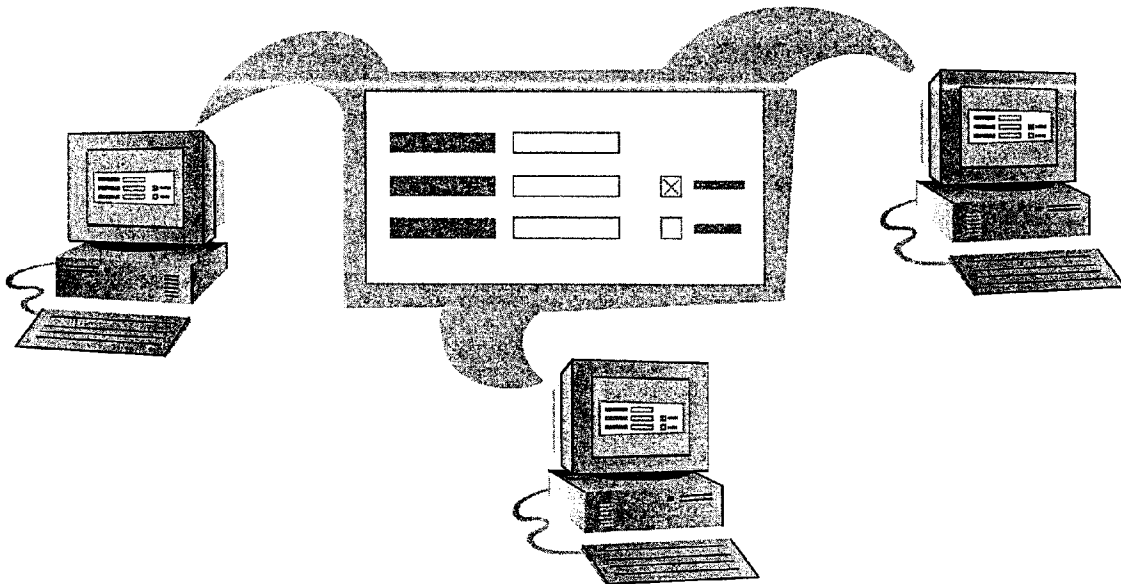
Track Orders in a Shared Database

Work with a Microsoft Access Database in a Multiuser Environment

An order entry database is likely to be used by people throughout your company. For example, one person may enter an order taken over the phone, another may fill the order from inventory, someone else may pack and ship the order, and another person may check on order status for the customer. With the Microsoft Access Database Wizard, you can easily create a multiuser database that serves all of these needs.

Key Features

-  Database Wizard
 - Multiuser Options
-



To complete the steps in this topic you need to have Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed.

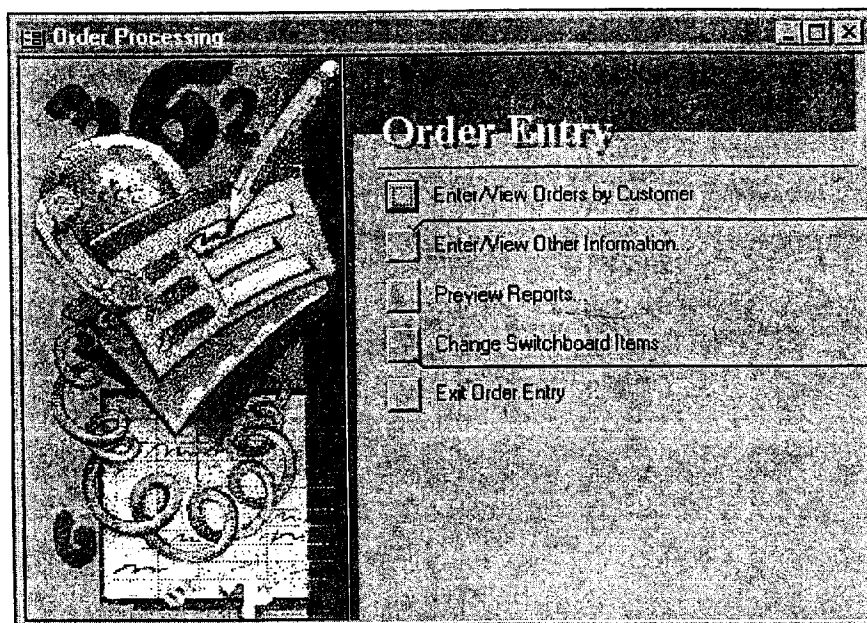
MS 114164

Create an Order Entry Database

If you need to track sales activity, you can use Microsoft Access to quickly set up a database to enter sales data and store information about your products, customers, and company. In the database window, click **New Database** (**File** menu). On the **Databases** tab, double-click **Order Entry** to start the Database Wizard. Follow the instructions in the wizard.

When the Database Wizard creates your database, it creates a *switchboard*, a form that you use to open the database's forms, tables, and reports.

The Database Wizard creates everything you need to enter orders and search your database.



Click here to open forms and reports to track company information, shipping, and payments.

Click here to change items on the switchboard.

MS 114165



Help your co-workers get started on tracking orders You can choose to have the Database Wizard include sample data when it creates your database. Your co-workers can view the sample data and replace the entries with their own data.

Want to set up other types of business databases? Use the Database Wizard to create many business and personal databases, including databases for asset tracking, event management, and resource scheduling.

Protect your database with a password Click **Security (Tools menu)**, and then click **Set Database Password**. Type a password when prompted. When you or your co-workers attempt to open the database, Microsoft Access will ask for the password.

Want to see all the components that make up your database? Click the **Database Window** button to see your forms, reports, tables, queries and modules.



Database Window button



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Track Orders** in Help.



Office Assistant button

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

Share Your Order Entry Database

After the Database Wizard creates a complete order entry database, you can use Windows Explorer to copy or move the file to a network location where everyone can open it.

When you place the database on a network, your co-workers can use the switchboard to open its forms and reports. You can work with order prices, dates, and other important information by using Orders by Customer, the primary order entry form. To use this form, click **Enter/View Orders by Customer**.

Multiple users can enter data at the same time when working in forms. Microsoft Access saves changes every time a user presses SHIFT+ENTER or moves to the next record.

The Unsaved Record Indicator symbol shows that you are editing this record.

The screenshot shows the 'Orders by Customer' form. At the top, there are fields for Company Name (LKXS Radiography Companies), Contact First Name (Jack), Last Name (Tanner), Billing Address (1234 5th Avenue NE), City (Seattle), State/Province (WA), Postal Code (98036-2394), and Country (USA). To the right, there are fields for Customer ID (27), Phone Number ((206) 555-1830), and Fax Number. Below these is a 'Note' field. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Orders', 'Payments', and 'Print Invoice'. At the very bottom, a status bar shows 'Record: 1 of 2'.

Order ID	Order Date	Ship Date	Order Total	Payments	Amount Due
138	11/23/97	11/23/97	\$23.00		\$23.00
144	11/30/97	11/30/97	\$23.00		\$23.00
145	11/30/97	11/30/97	\$46.00	\$46.00	\$0.00
146	12/3/97	12/3/97			
147	12/15/97	12/15/97	\$69.00		\$69.00

Several users can create new orders simultaneously, while other users view the latest status.

MS 114167



Prevent others from making changes to a record you are working in Click **Options** (**Tools** menu). On the **Advanced** tab, click **Edited Record**.

Does someone else need to edit while you are? Microsoft Access will notify you and give you choices about how to proceed.

View the most up-to-date changes to records Click **Refresh** (**Records** menu).

Do some users just look at orders and never make changes? These users can open the file in the read-only state. To open a database in read-only state, click the **Open Database** button and then click the database. Click the **Commands and Settings** button, and then click **Open Read Only**.

Is your database slow? You can improve performance and make a database easier to maintain by dividing it into two files: one that contains your data and another that contains the queries, forms, reports, macros, and modules that you need. Click **Add-Ins** (**Tools** menu), and then click **Database Splitter**.



Open Database
button



Commands and
Settings button

When You Need to Modify a Database, Open It in Exclusive Mode

Making design enhancements while others are sharing a database can be confusing to your users. For example, if other users are sharing the database and you start making changes to table designs, the other users cannot use the data stored in the tables you're modifying. If other users have opened tables, you can't modify them.

You can prevent others from using a database while you make changes. First, make sure no one else is using the database. Click **Open Database** (**File** menu), and then select the **Exclusive** check box in the **Open** dialog box that appears. Then select and open the database you want to work in.

MS 114168

Use Data from Other Applications or Databases

Microsoft Access makes it easy to work with data from elsewhere on your network.

Move data permanently into your database by pasting or importing You can move several different types of data into Microsoft Access. For example, you can move data that is stored as text, in a supported database format, or as a Microsoft Excel list. Microsoft Access wizards can help you import data. To import external data into your database, click **Get External Data (File menu)**, and then click **Import**. To create a link to external data, click **Get External Data**, and then click **Link Tables**.

View and update data stored in another application by creating links What if you want to work with data stored and maintained in a different application or in another database, such as Paradox? Create a link to your Microsoft Access database from a table in a supported database format. Users can then view and update the linked data, just as they view and update data stored in Microsoft Access. The changes are saved and stored in the original application's file, so that users who work with the data using the original application can continue to do so.

List in Paradox

List in another database application



Customers table

Orders table

Microsoft Access database

Next Steps




To	See
Learn more about using forms for data entry	"Use Your First Microsoft Access Database," page 104
Move Microsoft Excel data into Microsoft Access	"Move a Product List into Microsoft Access," page 493

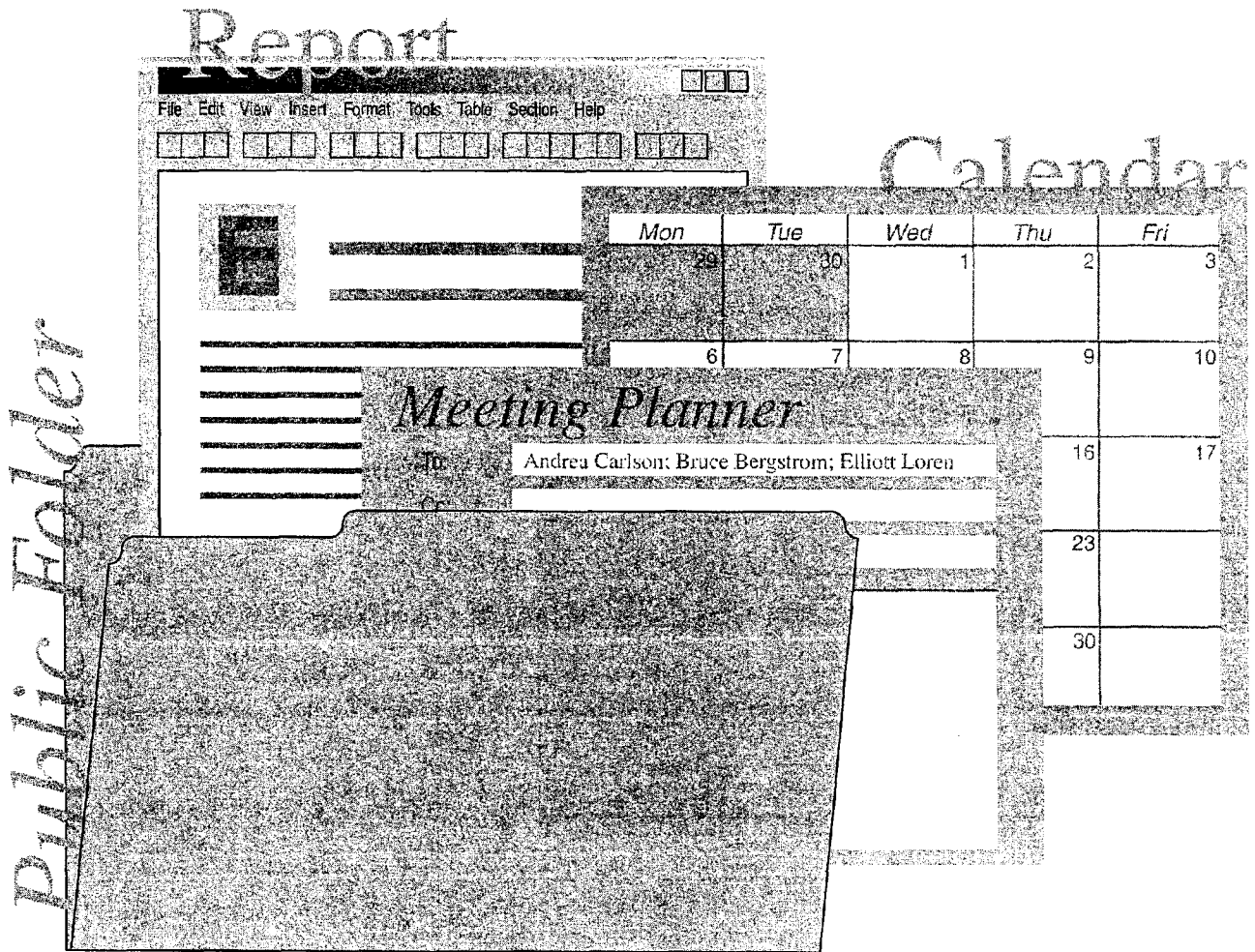
MS 114169

Use Outlook to Share Folders

Suppose that you maintain a group calendar. You're constantly updating your co-workers about meetings, events, and other associated information stored in the calendar. Instead of using your private folders, you can share this information easily by using a *public folder*. Public folders are Outlook folders that are posted to a network. You can add any Outlook item, Office document, or other file to a public folder. You can assign levels of permission to a public folder so that you determine the users who can read, edit, and add information to the folder.

Key Features

-  Public Folders
-  Setting Permissions
-  Offline Folders



To use public folders, you need Microsoft Exchange and permission to read items in a folder. See your network administrator for permission to create or add information to a public folder.

MS 114170

Check Permissions Granted for a Public Folder

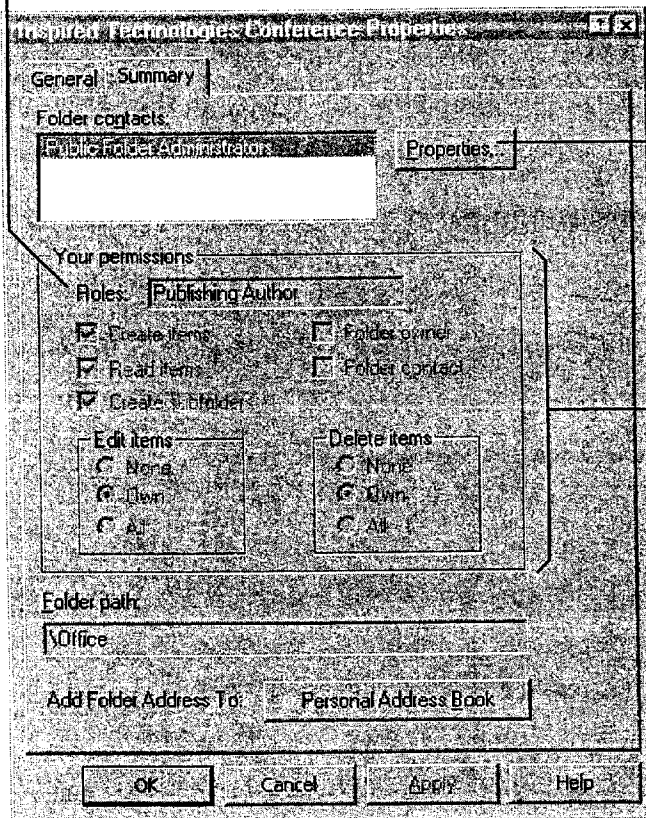
You created a group calendar for the Inspired Technologies conference, and now you want to add the calendar folder to a public folder. Start by checking the properties of the public folder to see if you have the correct permission level.

To check the permissions set for a public folder, click the **Folder List** button and then navigate to the public folder. Select the Public Folders folder, and then click **Properties for folder name** (File menu, Folder submenu).



Folder List button

Your role as Publishing Author lets you create and read items in the public folder, create subfolders, and edit and delete items you create.



Click here to see a list of network administrators and the owner of the public folder.

Your level of access to the public folder is displayed here.

MS 114171

Use Outlook to Share Folders



Set access levels for other users Only the owner can set permissions for a public folder. However, if you have Publishing Editor or Publishing Author privileges for a public folder, you can create a subfolder and, as the owner of that subfolder, set levels of permission for other users.

Create a Shortcut to a public folder You can add a Shortcut to the public folder. Right-click the public folder you want to add to the Outlook Bar, and then click **Add to Outlook Bar**.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Share Folders** in Help.



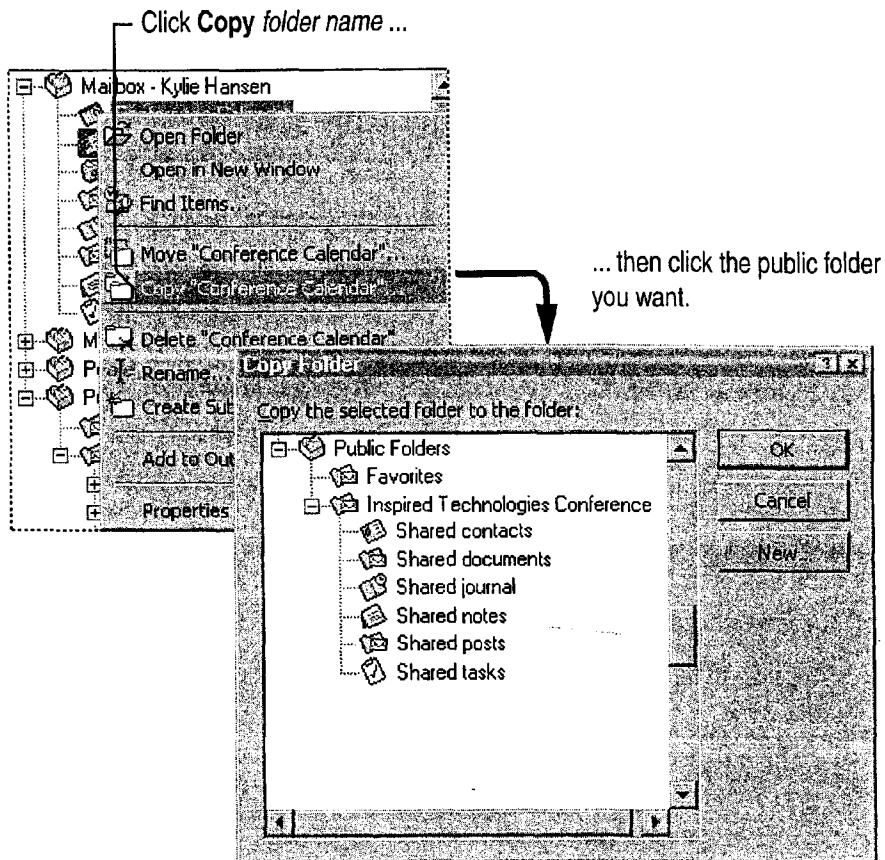
Office Assistant button

MS 114172

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others

Add a Calendar to the Public Folder

Now you're ready to copy the conference calendar to the public folder. In the folder list, right-click the folder you want to add to the public folder.



Notify other users about the public folder You can send a shortcut to a public folder to other users in an e-mail message. Create a new message, and then drag the public folder into the body of the message.

Copy information from the public calendar to your private calendar

To copy an appointment or event to your personal calendar, open the appointment or event and then click **Copy to Personal Calendar** (Appointment menu).

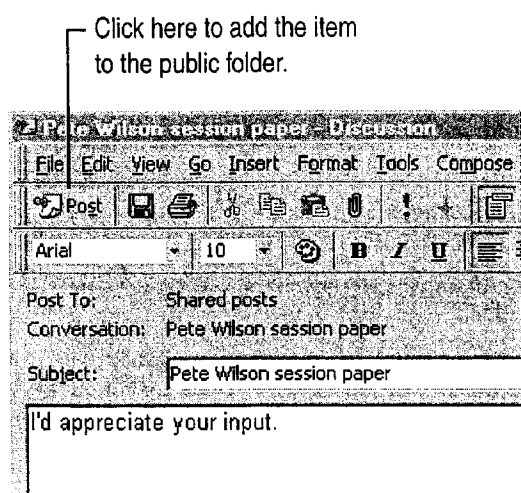
Create a new folder within a public folder Instead of copying a private folder, right-click the public folder and then click **Create Subfolder** to create a new folder. You must have permission to create subfolders within a public folder.

MS 114173

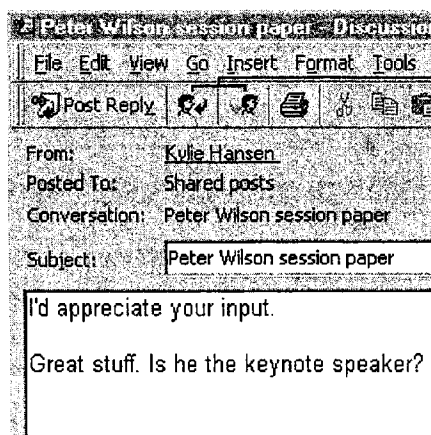
Start an Online Discussion

One of the speakers has submitted a paper for the conference and you'd like input from the rest of the team. You can use a public folder as a bulletin board so that members of the group can discuss the paper online. You must have permission to create items in order to post information to a public folder. Other members of the team need permission to read and post items to the folder.

Open the public folder you want to post to, and then click **New Post in This Folder** (**Compose** menu). After the item is posted, your co-workers can read and respond to the information.



A respondent can click **Post Reply** in the item to add the response to the folder so that others can read it.



Click **Reply** to send your response directly to the originator of the post, or click **Forward** to send it to someone else.

MS 114174

Part 8 Exchange Information with Others



Create a bulletin board You must have permission to create subfolders within a public folder. Right-click the public folder, and then click **Create Subfolder**. In the **Create New Folder** dialog box, click the **Folder contains** arrow, and then click **Mail Items**.

Sort posted information Suppose the public folder contains posts about more than one session paper. You can click **By Conversation Topic** in the **Current view** box to sort posted information by conversation topic. Then open a post, click **Next (View menu)**, and then select a navigation option to scroll through the responses in that group.

Organize how items are posted to a public folder If you have owner privileges, you can set rules to process new items posted to a public folder. For example, you can create a rule that sorts posted information by subject. Right-click the public folder, and then click **Properties**.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Share Folders** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114175

Update a Public Folder When You're Out of the Office

If you use a computer when you're away from the office, you can still share information in a public folder if you create an *offline folder* on your remote computer. Offline folders make it possible to copy a public folder from a server location, update and modify the contents, and then update the public folder, all from a remote location. For example, you can use offline folders to send and retrieve e-mail messages.

Open the public folder you want to use offline. Click **Add to Public Folder Favorites** (**File**

menu, **Folder** submenu). Open the **Favorites** folder in the public folder list, right-click the public folder you want, and then click **Properties**. On the **Synchronization** tab, click **When offline or online**. Follow the instructions that appear on the screen to create an offline folder on your hard disk.

When you're ready to update the server folder, connect to Microsoft Exchange and then open the folder in Outlook. Click **This Folder** (**Tools** menu, **Synchronize** submenu).

Next Steps

To	See
Learn more about public folders	<i>Microsoft Office 97 Resource Kit</i> , Microsoft Press <i>Building Microsoft Outlook 97 Applications</i> , Microsoft Press
Create custom views in folders	"Customize the Way You Display Information," page 366

MS 114176

Use Office on the World Wide Web

Contents

- Office and the Web 442
- Publish Microsoft Excel Tables and Charts on the Web 448
- Create a Web Presentation with PowerPoint 452
- Create a Web Page with Word 458
- Use Microsoft Access to Retrieve and Publish Data 464
- Open Web Addresses from Outlook 470



MS 114177



Getting Results with Microsoft Office 441

Office and the Web

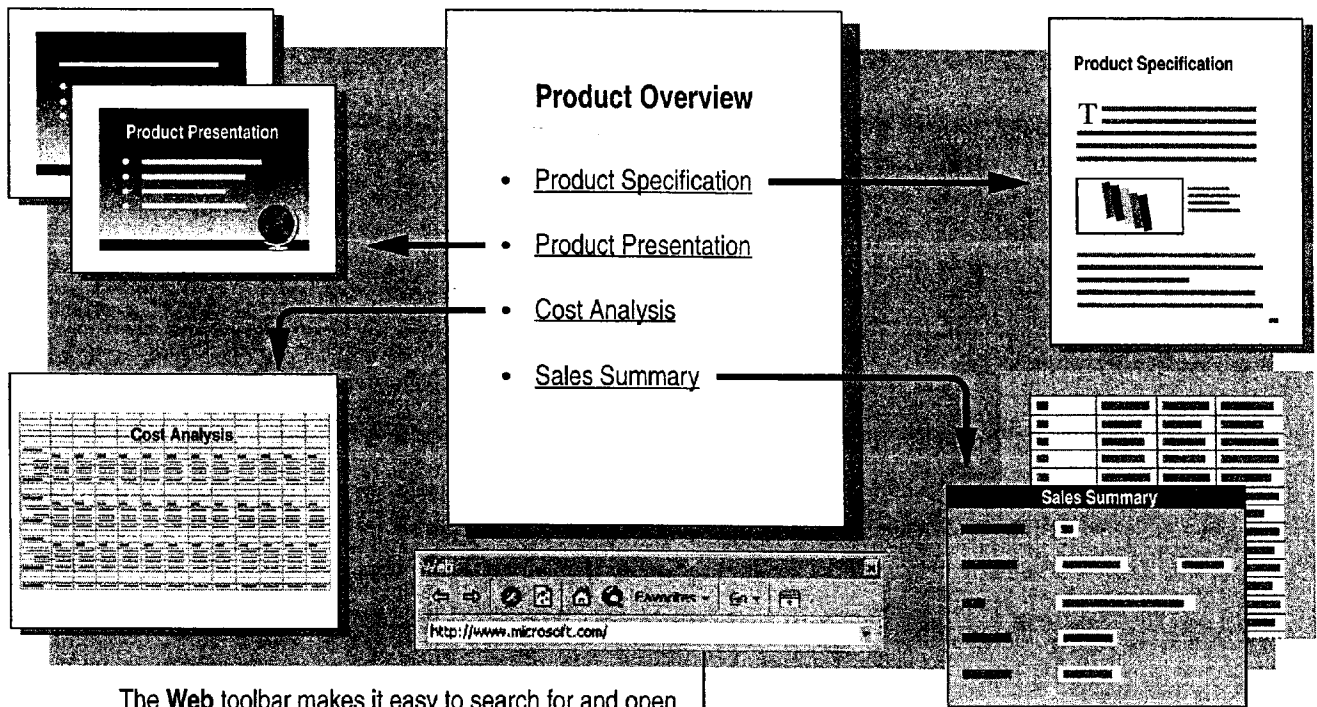
Make the Most of Office Applications on Your Internal Web or the World Wide Web

Suppose you have product specifications written with Microsoft Word that you want to share with your team, upper management, engineering, and other product teams. And you also have Microsoft PowerPoint slide presentations, a cost analysis done in Microsoft Excel, and sales summaries done in Microsoft Access. You can share information with many people (who do not all share the same applications) by adding hyperlinks to your files. If not everyone in your audience has all the Office applications, they can still jump to most files they need and view Microsoft Excel, Word, and PowerPoint files by using the special viewers with these applications.

Key Features

-  Hyperlinks
-  Web Toolbar

When you add hyperlinks to your Office files, online readers can jump to a different location in the same file, or to a site on your internal Web or the World Wide Web.



The **Web** toolbar makes it easy to search for and open Office files (such as PowerPoint presentations, Microsoft Excel worksheets, Word documents, and files that contain data created with Microsoft Access) on your internal Web.

MS 114178

About the World Wide Web and Intranets

What is the World Wide Web? The World Wide Web is a major component of the Internet, which is a vast global network of smaller networks and personal computers. *Web pages* include hyperlinks and present information in a graphical format that can incorporate text, pictures, sounds, and digital movies. Web pages are created in *Hypertext Markup Language* (HTML) format, which is a special system for tagging a file so that it can be interpreted by Web *browsers*, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer. A browser enables virtually any type of computer to read HTML files.

What is an intranet? An *intranet* is a special type of Web that is available only to the users of a particular local area network (LAN) or wide area network (WAN), such as those often used by companies and organizations for internal communication. With an intranet, employees can share confidential, work-related information without making it available to the public.

Use Office applications you're familiar with When you use Office applications with your intranet, you can work with Office files in their native format, rather than having to convert them to HTML format. For example, when you open a Word document with the **Web** toolbar, you will see the Word toolbars, and you'll be able to work with the document in the same way that you would any other Word document. You won't be limited by the viewing features of a particular browser.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Web and Office** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114179

Part 9 Use Office on the World Wide Web

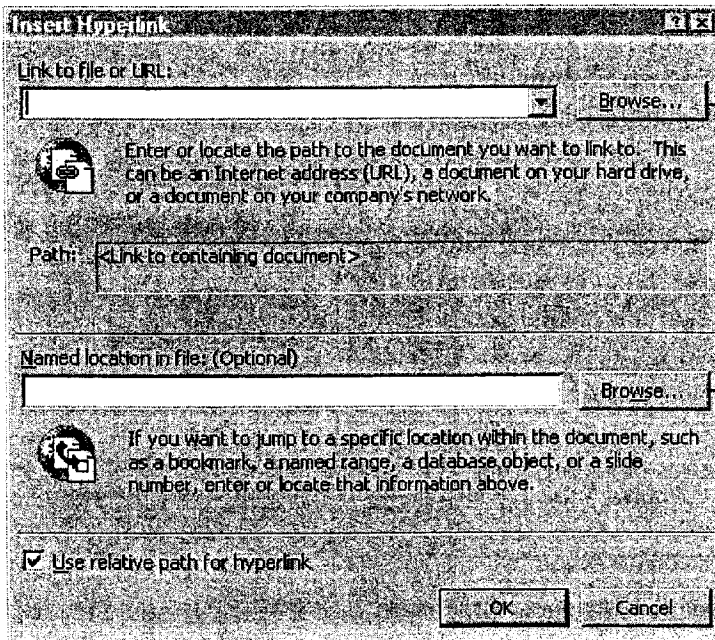
Add Hyperlinks to Your Files

A *hyperlink* is colored or underlined text or a graphic that you click to jump to another file, or to another location in the same file. You can jump to files on your intranet or to Web sites. For example, you can click a hyperlink to jump to a heading in Word, a cell or named range in Microsoft Excel, titles in PowerPoint slides, and table cells in Microsoft Access. If your company already has a LAN or WAN, all you need to do to make your files available to other employees is to put them on a public server and then add hyperlinks to files that you want to jump to.

In your file, click where you want to be able to jump from, and then click the **Insert Hyperlink** button.



Insert Hyperlink button



Click here to locate the file you want to jump to, or type an address in the **Link to file or URL** box.

Click here to specify a location to jump to in a file.

MS 114180



Jump to another location in the same file In Microsoft Excel for Windows, Word for Windows, or PowerPoint for Windows, select the text or heading you want to be able to jump to, and then right-click to drag it to the location you want to be able to jump from. When you release the mouse button, click **Create Hyperlink Here** on the shortcut menu.

Get the wrong shortcut menu? If your hyperlink text has been marked as having a possible spelling or grammar error, you must first resolve the error before you can right-click the hyperlink text and display the shortcut menu with the **Hyperlink** submenu.

Jump to a location in another file In Microsoft Excel, Word, or PowerPoint, select the heading or text that you want to be able to jump to, and then copy it. In the location that you want to be able to jump from, click **Paste as Hyperlink (Edit menu)**.

What if online readers don't have your Office application? They can still view your Microsoft Excel, Word, or PowerPoint files on an intranet or the Web by downloading the viewer for the appropriate application from the Microsoft Web site:

<http://www.microsoft.com/>

Want to remove a hyperlink? Right-click the hyperlink, click **Hyperlink** on the shortcut menu, and then click **Edit Hyperlink**. In the **Edit Hyperlink** dialog box, click **Remove Link**.

Make it Easy to Create Web Pages

If you want to create a Web page by working in HTML format, you can use Word as your authoring tool. Another alternative is to save existing Office files in HTML format. For more information, see "Create a Web Page with Word," page 458, "Publish Microsoft Excel Tables and Charts on the Web," page 448, "Create a Web Presentation with PowerPoint," page 452, and "Use Microsoft Access to Retrieve and Publish Data," page 464.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Web and Office** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114181

Part 9 Use Office on the World Wide Web

Use the Web Toolbar to Navigate Your Intranet

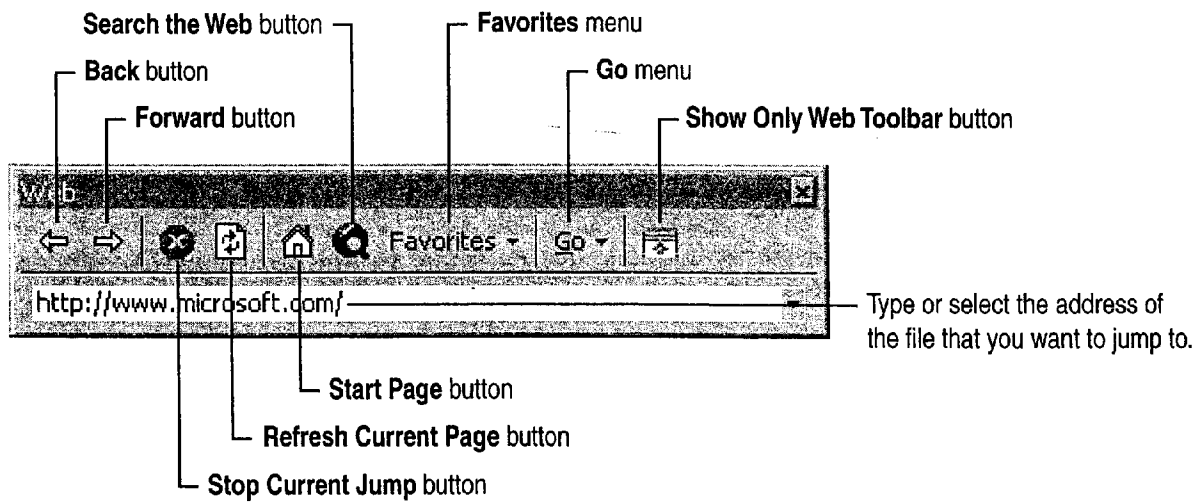
After you click different hyperlinks, the easiest way to navigate among the files is to use the **Web** toolbar. In Microsoft Excel, Word, or PowerPoint, if the **Web** toolbar isn't already visible, click the **Web Toolbar** button. In Microsoft Access, click **Toolbars (View menu)**, and then click **Web**. If you already know the file location, type it or select it from the **Address** box. If you don't know the location, click the **Search the Web** button to search for it. After you open a file, use the **Back** and **Forward** buttons to move quickly between files.



Web Toolbar button

If you have certain files that you want to open on a regular basis, you can add them to your Favorites folder by clicking the **Favorites** button and then clicking **Add to Favorites**.

To make it easier to see more of the file that you've just opened, you can click the **Show Only Web Toolbar** button, which hides the other application toolbars.



MS 114182



Jump to sites on the World Wide Web If you have access to the Internet, you can jump to Web sites. Just type the address, or *Uniform Resource Locator* (URL), in the **Address** box. For example, type the following:

`http://www.microsoft.com/`

Open files on your intranet while working in an Office application In your Office application, click the **Open** button. In the **File name** box, type the address you want. For example, type the following:

`http://sales/february/report.doc`

Use Microsoft Internet Explorer 3.0 to View Microsoft Excel, Word, and PowerPoint Files

If you use Internet Explorer 3.0 to browse the Internet and then switch to viewing files on your corporate intranet, your Microsoft Excel, Word, or PowerPoint file opens in the browser just as if it were an HTML file. You can navigate between these files and files on the Internet with no loss of browsing or navigational capabilities. More important, when you're working in a Microsoft Excel, Word, or PowerPoint file, you can access the default toolbars in that application.

Next Steps

To	See
Create a Web page by using Word	"Create a Web Page with Word," page 458
Create Web content by using Microsoft Excel	"Publish Microsoft Excel Tables and Charts on the Web," page 448
Create a Web page by using PowerPoint	"Create a Web Presentation with PowerPoint," page 452
Add a hyperlink to a table and retrieve information from the World Wide Web or your intranet	"Use Microsoft Access to Retrieve and Publish Data," page 464

MS 114183

Publish Microsoft Excel Tables and Charts on the Web

You can use Microsoft Excel to publish information for viewing on the World Wide Web or on your company's intranet. You can take advantage of the tabular structure of Microsoft Excel to create HTML tables, you can publish your existing Microsoft Excel charts, and you can even put them together on the same page.

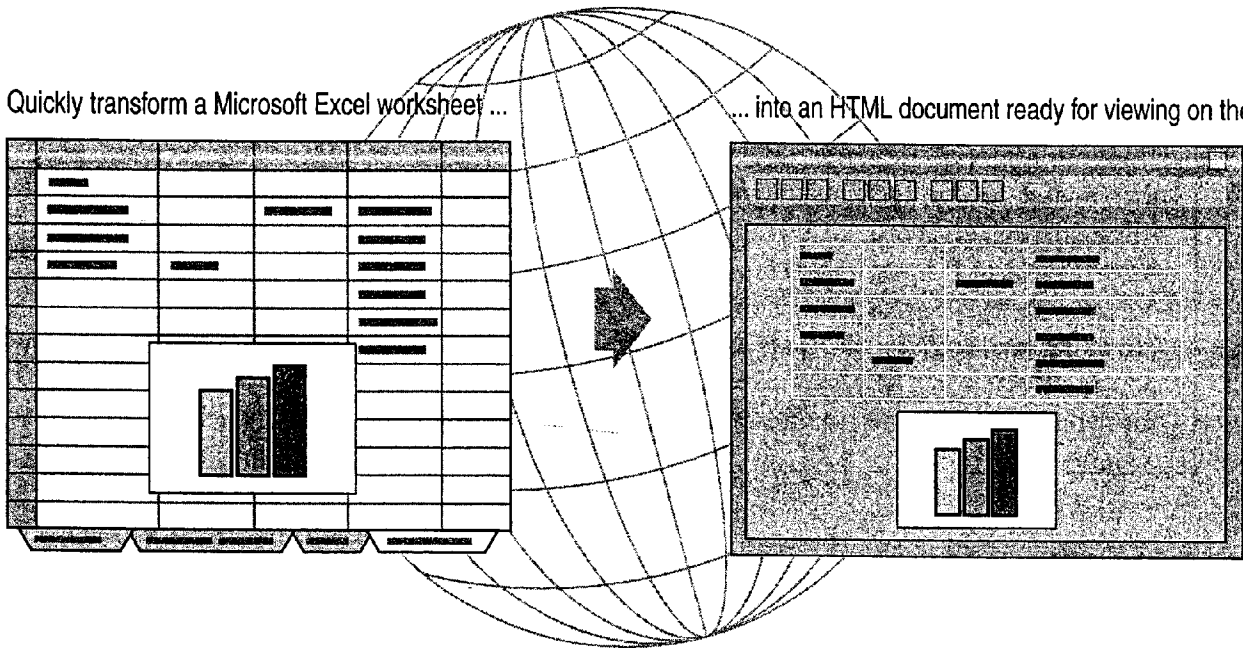
Key Features



Save as HTML command

Quickly transform a Microsoft Excel worksheet ...

... into an HTML document ready for viewing on the Web.



Guidelines for Effective Web Pages

Keep it clean Don't clutter your worksheets with too many fonts or formats. Easy-to-read worksheets make easy-to-read Web pages.

Use larger fonts Small text is often difficult to read after HTML conversion. Even though you might use a high-resolution display, you need to design your Web documents so that they can be read easily by others who don't.

MS 114184

Save the Worksheet as an HTML Document

Open the worksheet you want to publish, and then click **Save as HTML (File menu)** to start the Internet Assistant. The Internet Assistant can convert multiple cell ranges and charts to a single Web page, or you can insert them into an existing Web page. If this command does not appear, you need to rerun Setup. For more information, see "Add or Remove Components," page 32.

The Microsoft Excel Internet Assistant transforms cell ranges and charts ...

	A	B	C
1	5-Year Total Market Forecast		
2	HIGH-QUALITY PROFESSIONAL SEGMENT ONLY		
3	HIGH-QUALITY PROFESSIONAL SEGMENT ONLY		
4		1997	1998
5	Acoustic instruments	\$2,950,000	\$3,000,000
6	Electric guitars	\$2,380,000	\$2,600,000
7	Keyboards	\$1,750,000	\$2,000,000
8	Speakers	\$1,000,000	\$1,000,000
9	Electronics	\$1,380,000	\$1,650,000
10	Total Market	\$9,460,000	\$10,250,000
11			
12			
13			

5-Year Total Market Forecast						
HIGH-QUALITY PROFESSIONAL SEGMENT ONLY						
	1997	1998	1999	2000	2001	CAGR
Acoustic instruments	\$2,950,000	\$3,000,000	\$3,000,000	\$3,130,000	\$3,200,000	2%
Electric guitars	\$2,380,000	\$2,600,000	\$2,870,000	\$3,160,000	\$3,500,000	10%
Keyboards	\$1,750,000	\$2,000,000	\$2,300,000	\$2,650,000	\$3,100,000	15%
Speakers	\$1,000,000	\$1,000,000	\$1,000,000	\$1,000,000	\$1,000,000	0%
Electronics	\$1,380,000	\$1,650,000	\$1,980,000	\$2,370,000	\$2,850,000	20%
Total Market	\$9,460,000	\$10,250,000	\$11,150,000	\$12,310,000	\$13,650,000	10%

... into HTML pages or tables ready for publishing on the Web.



Post the HTML file If you have the Microsoft FrontPage Web publishing application, you can post the HTML file created by the Internet Assistant directly to a Web site.

Create links to information before the conversion When you run the Internet Assistant, any links created by using the **Insert Hyperlink** button are converted to HTML links.



Insert Hyperlink button

MS 114185

Part 9 Use Office on the World Wide Web

Insert a Table into an Existing Web Page

The Internet Assistant can either create a new Web page for you or insert a table into an existing Web page. To insert an HTML table into an existing Web page, you must first add the following HTML code to the Web page where you want the table to appear before the Internet Assistant can complete its task:

```
<!--##Table##-->
```

If you have enough memory, you can leave the Internet Assistant displayed on your screen while you edit the Web page.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Web and Microsoft Excel** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114186

Other Web Features of Microsoft Excel



Use The Web toolbar The **Web Toolbar** button displays the **Web** toolbar. For more information on the **Web** toolbar, see “Office and the Web,” page 442.



Create Hyperlinks Click the **Insert Hyperlink** button to format the selected text or object as a hyperlink. For example, to create a hyperlink to the Microsoft Web site, select a cell, click the **Hyperlink** button, and then type **http://www.microsoft.com/** in the **Link to file or URL** box. Then, when you click the hyperlinked cell, your Web browser starts and you jump to that Web site. Microsoft Excel also includes a Hyperlink function that you can use in formulas.

Open and link to files in HTTP and FTP stores in Windows You can transfer and create links to files located on Web sites that support the HTTP and FTP protocols. To do so, click **Open** (**File** menu), click **Internet Locations (FTP)** in the

Look in list, and then click **Add/Modify FTP Locations**. To create a link to the file, copy the information you want to link to, click **Paste** (**File** menu), and then click **Paste Link**.

Create links to Web pages in Windows You can create links to files located on Web sites. To do so, click **Open** (**File** menu), click **Internet Locations (FTP)** in the **Look in** list, and then click **Add/Modify FTP Locations**.

Create Web forms You can create forms in Microsoft Excel to gather input from other Microsoft Excel users who visit your Web site. Use the **Control Toolbox** toolbar to create the form on a worksheet, and then click **Web Form** (**Tools** menu, **Wizard** submenu). If this command does not appear on the **Tools** menu, you need to install the Web Form Wizard add-in program. For more information, see “Add or Remove Components,” page 32.

Next Steps


To	See
Create a Web site	“Create a Web Page with Word,” page 458
Save a PowerPoint presentation in HTML format	“Create a Web Presentation with PowerPoint,” page 452

MS 114187

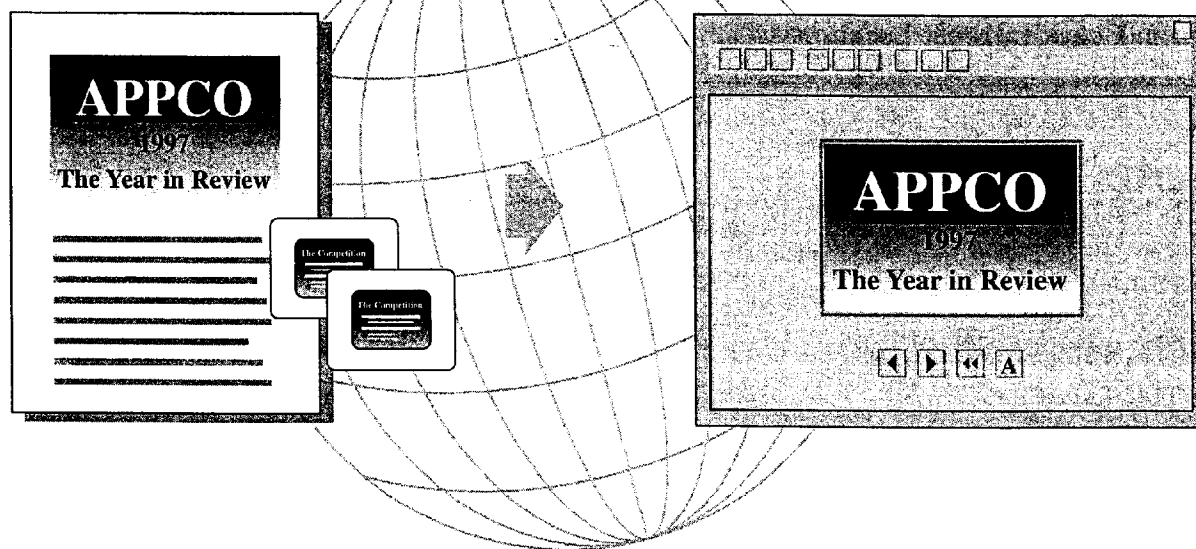
Create a Web Presentation with PowerPoint

Take advantage of the graphic design power of PowerPoint to create presentations for publication to the World Wide Web, or to your company's intranet. You can use PowerPoint to create a new Web presentation quickly from scratch. Or, if you have an existing presentation you want to publish to the Web, you can convert it to Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) format so that it can be viewed by Web browsers. You can create Web presentations for a variety of purposes. Advertise your company's products by publishing press releases to the Web. Or inform co-workers about training opportunities and department procedures by publishing to your intranet. You can also use your intranet to set up an internal presentation archive with demonstration scripts and other behind-the-scenes resources. To access other Web presentations quickly, use the search and navigation options on the **Web** toolbar. For more information, see "Office and the Web," page 442.

Key Features

-  AutoContent Wizard
 - Save as HTML command
-

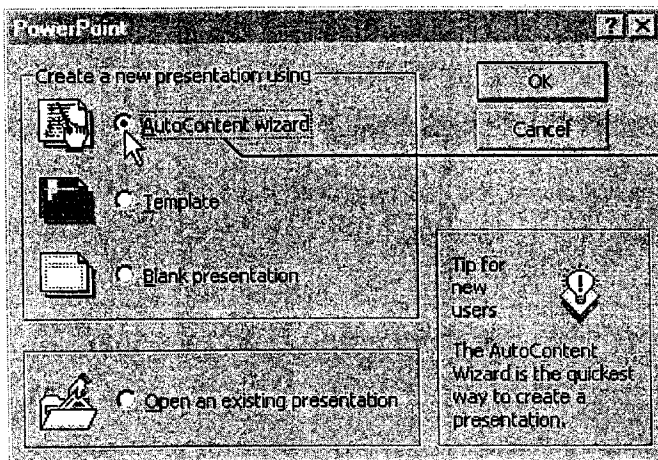
Quickly transform your PowerPoint slides ... into Web pages.



Create a Web Presentation

It's easy to use PowerPoint to create a new presentation that you can publish to the Web or to your company's intranet. Get a head start by selecting one of the presentation templates available in the AutoContent Wizard. To use the wizard, select the **AutoContent wizard** option when you first start PowerPoint, or click **AutoContent Wizard (Tools menu)** if you're already working in PowerPoint.

You don't have to start from scratch to create a Web presentation, however. You can convert any existing presentation into a format that is compatible with popular Web browsers. Either way, when you're done, just click **Save as HTML (File menu)** to convert your presentation for publication to the Web or to your intranet. If this command does not appear, you need to rerun Setup. For more information, see "Add or Remove Components," page 32.



Let the AutoContent Wizard help you create presentations for publication to the Web.



Want to create hyperlinks? You can format any selected PowerPoint text or object as a hyperlink. For example, to create a hyperlink to the Microsoft Web site, select the text or object, click the **Insert Hyperlink** button, and then type <http://www.microsoft.com/> in the **Link to file or URL** box. For more information, see "Office and the Web," page 442.



Insert Hyperlink button

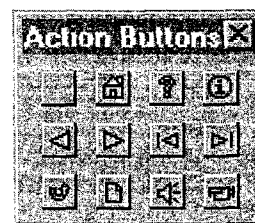
Create your own image maps Click the **Insert Hyperlink** button to turn any PowerPoint shape into a hyperlink that you can click to jump to another slide, document, or Web site. These hyperlinked images remain clickable after you save the presentation in HTML format. You can create clusters of hyperlinked objects that will serve as an *image map*, a single graphic that contains multiple HTML hyperlinks.

MS 114189

Part 9 Use Office on the World Wide Web

Connect to additional Web publishing resources Click **PowerPoint Central (Tools menu)** to connect to resources on the World Wide Web designed to help you create online content. Check periodically for the latest information on Web features in Microsoft applications. To use the **PowerPoint Central** command, you need to have access to the Internet.

Quickly create navigation buttons and add them to your slides Click **Action Buttons (Slide Show menu)** to display a palette of buttons. Each button (such as **Back** or **Previous** or **Forward** or **Next**) has a specific action assigned to it. To add an action button to a slide, click one of the buttons in the palette, click where you want the button to appear on the slide, and then drag to draw the button. When you release the mouse button, the **Action Settings** dialog box appears.



What's the Difference Between Hyperlinks and Action Settings?

If you want to add basic hyperlinks that make it possible for users to jump from your presentation to other files, click the **Insert Hyperlink** button. However, you can also create hyperlinks associated with additional actions and special effects (such as playing sounds, returning to the last slide viewed, and running other applications and macros). To do so, select the item (a graphic or text) to which you want to apply the action(s), and then click **Action Settings (Slide Show menu)**. Select the appropriate options in the **Action Settings** dialog box. Then, whenever someone clicks the text or graphic, the actions assigned to it will occur. You can even use the **Action Settings** command to assign additional actions that occur when you rest the pointer over an item.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - PowerPoint Web Page** in Help.



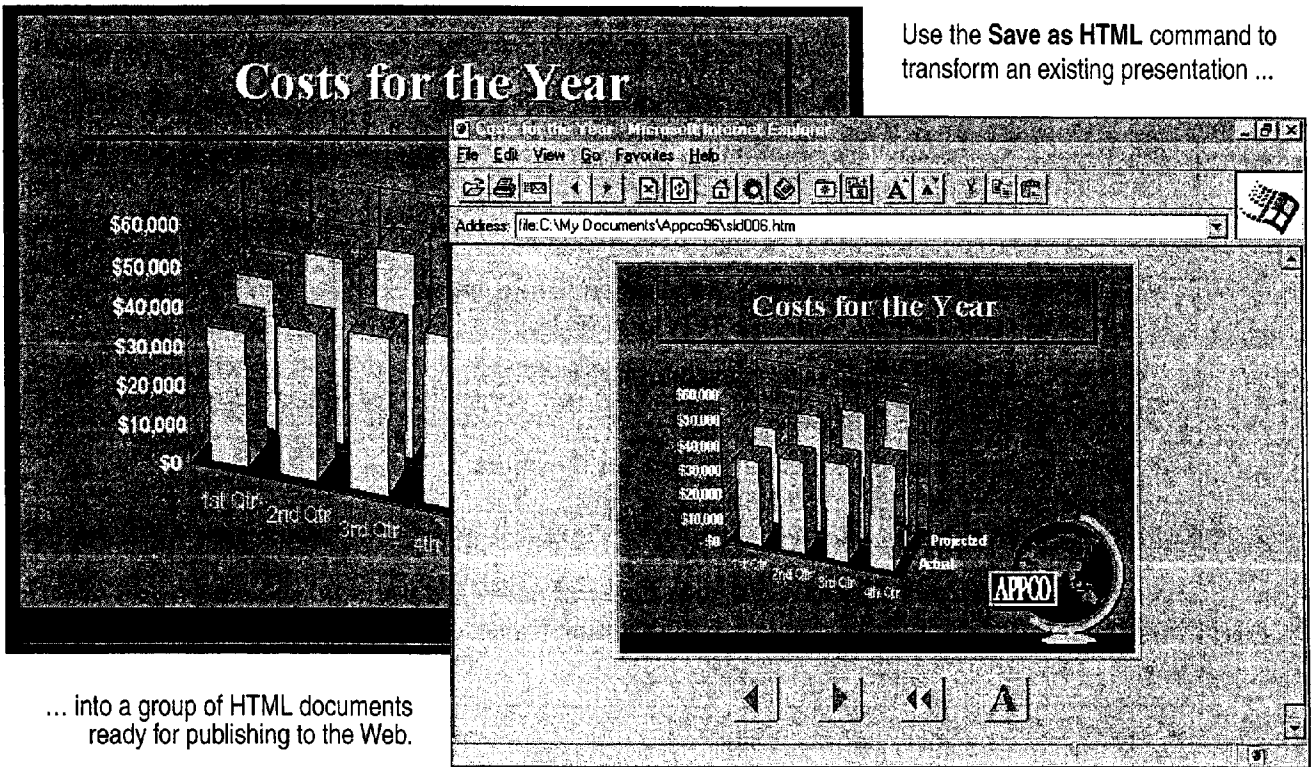
Office Assistant button

MS 114190

Save an Existing Presentation in HTML Format

If you already have a presentation that you want to convert for publication to the Web or your intranet, click **Save as HTML** (File menu) to start the PowerPoint Internet Assistant. Select options to choose a graphic format, place navigation buttons, add speaker notes to your Web pages, create an index page, and more. If this command does not appear, you need to rerun Setup. For more information, see “Add or Remove Components,” page 32.

When your presentation is converted to HTML format, each presentation slide is turned into an individual HTML page, existing hyperlinks are converted to HTML format, and actions that you assigned by using the **Action Settings** command (Slide Show menu) are translated into their HTML counterparts. Then, all the necessary files are saved to a new folder that you specify.



MS 114191

Part 9 Use Office on the World Wide Web



Create a text-only version of your Web presentation To accommodate visitors to your Web site whose browsers might not have the same capabilities for viewing graphics, the PowerPoint Internet Assistant can create a text-only version of your presentation (while simultaneously creating a standard version that includes graphics). When it finishes, it adds an **A** button (shown to the right of the Web page navigation buttons in the preceding illustration) to the presentation. When clicked, this button launches the text-only version.

Want non-PowerPoint users to view your Web presentation as a full-screen presentation? You can click **Save as HTML (File menu)** and then select options in the PowerPoint Internet Assistant to make it possible for others to view your presentation as an actual full-screen slide show.

Create a Framed Web Presentation

Use the **Framed Slideshow** option in the PowerPoint Internet Assistant to create a special type of Web presentation that uses features available only in advanced Web browsers such as Microsoft Internet Explorer 3.0. A framed slide show offers more control, displaying components of the presentation and navigation controls in separate frames on the screen:

- The Slide frame contains the slide image itself.
- The Navigation frame contains standard slide navigation controls such as Next Slide and Previous Slide.
- The Notes frame displays any speaker notes for the associated slide/Web page.
- The Outline frame displays the outline for the entire presentation. You can click headings to jump to the associated slide/Web page.
- The Outline Controls frame contains **Expand** and **Collapse** buttons that control the display in the Outline frame.

Design Effective Web Presentations

To create an effective PowerPoint presentation that you can publish to the World Wide Web or to your intranet, apply the same design principles that you would use to create any other PowerPoint presentation: Divide subject matter into “bite-sized” pieces, present each piece in a graphically pleasing format, and then reveal them in a logical, predetermined sequence. Also, keep the following guidelines in mind when designing for the Web:

Keep it clean Don’t clutter your slides with distractions. Clear, easy-to-read presentations make easy-to-read Web pages.

Use large fonts Typically, the PowerPoint Internet Assistant reduces the size of text in converted presentations. After you convert the presentation to HTML format, small text may be difficult to read.

Next Steps

To	See
Add a Microsoft Excel table to a Web page.	“Publish Microsoft Excel Tables and Charts on the Web,” page 448

MS 114193

Create a Web Page with Word


Suppose you're the manager of a sales group. You want to broaden the audience for your sales message. You want to provide potential customers with information about your products, pricing, shipping, product support, and so on.

You've decided to promote your products through a Web page. The question is where to start. Do you need to learn HTML? Should you hire a graphic artist or a computer programmer to do the work for you? The answer is much simpler.

Work in Word, an application you're already familiar with. The Word Web Page Wizard can help you create the Web page yourself. The wizard helps you create the right Web page for the information you want to convey.

With the Web Page Wizard, you can quickly create different kinds of Web pages in a variety of styles.

Key Features

-  Web Page Wizard
 - Web Authoring Tools
-



MS 114194

Start the Web Page Wizard

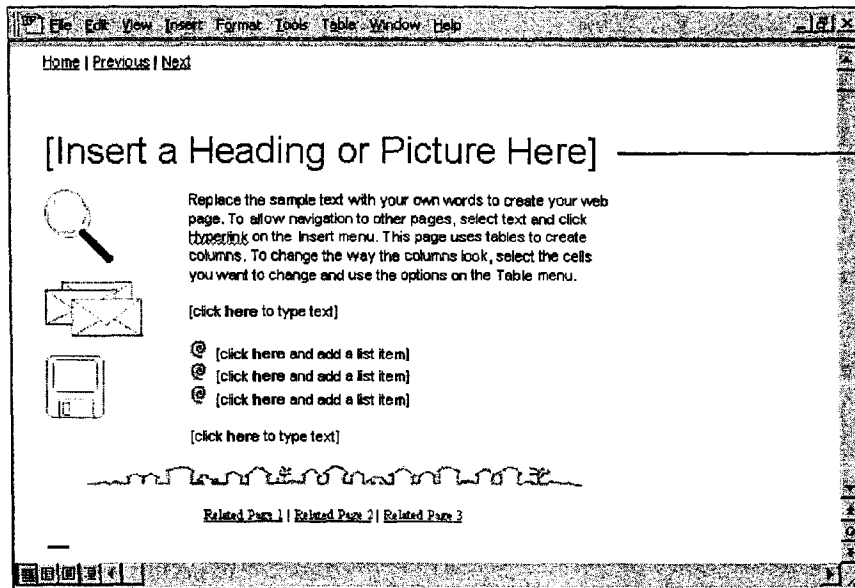
Start by clicking **New** (File menu). On the **Web Pages** tab, double-click **Web Page Wizard**.

From the list of Web pages, click one that best suits the content of the Web page you want to create. You can choose from different kinds of Web pages, such as a home page with two columns, a personal home page, a registration form, or a survey form.

After you select the type of Web page, click the **Next** button, and then select the style that you want. For business-oriented pages, for example, you may want to use styles such as Professional or Elegant. For personal home pages, on the other hand, you may want to use the Jazzy or Festive style.

If you want to try different styles to see which one looks best, just click another style name, and that style will be applied to the Web page that you've selected.

After you click the **Finish** button in the wizard, you'll have a professionally designed Web page to which you can add your content.



You'll see suggestions for adding art and jumps to other Web pages. Click the sample text to select it, and then type your own text or insert a picture.

Don't see the Web Pages tab? The Web authoring components may not be installed. To add these components, rerun Setup and then select **Web Page Authoring (HTML)**. For more information, see "Add or Remove Components," page 32.

MS 114195

Part 9 Use Office on the World Wide Web



Want to create a Web page from scratch? Click **New** (File menu). On the **Web Pages** tab, double-click the **Blank Web Page** template. Create your Web page by using the commands on the menus and toolbars.

Want to create a Web page from an existing Word document? Open the document that you want to convert into a Web page, click **Save as HTML** (File menu), and then name the new Web page. Keep in mind that HTML, the format in which Web pages are published, does not support all of the features that Word supports. Your Web page, therefore, may look different from your Word document.

What Happened to the Toolbars and Menus?

When you work on Web pages, you will notice that the toolbars and menus are not the same as those you see when working on a Word document. This is because HTML, the underlying file format for Web pages, does not support all Word features.

Following is a partial list of Word features that HTML does not support at this time: newspaper-style columns; paragraph borders; text effects such as shadowing, embossing, and engraving; headers and footers; footnotes; and cross-references.

Even though these features are not currently supported by HTML, you can achieve similar effects. For example, you can use tables instead of columns, and instead of using a cross-reference, you can add a hyperlink.

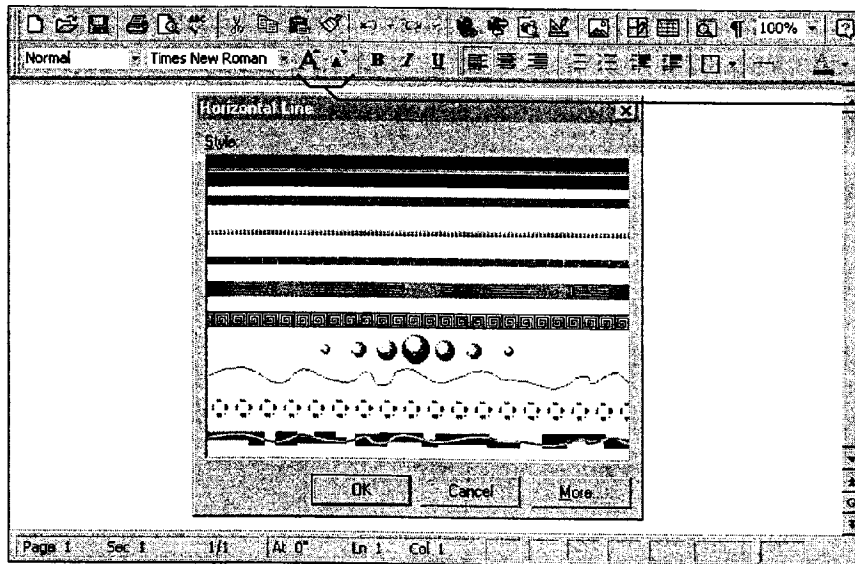
For more information, look up **Getting Results - Word Web Page** in Help.

MS 114196

Customize Your Web Page

Whether you've chosen to create a home page or a survey form, all you need to do is add your content to the Web page that the wizard creates. Keep in mind that most Web pages are not more than one page long. However, you can include much more information by using hyperlinks to other Web pages.

You might also want to use some special tools that Word provides for working on Web pages, allowing you to add background sounds, video, scrolling text, "arty" horizontal lines, or "picture" bullets.



When you're working on Web pages, new formatting tools, such as the **Increase Font Size** and **Decrease Font Size** buttons, appear on the toolbars.

You'll also find new menu commands, such as the **Horizontal Line** command (**Insert** menu), that make it easy to add interesting visual effects to your Web page.



Publish your Web page The procedures for publishing your Web page will depend on your Internet service provider or your company's network administrator. For more information, look up **Getting Results - Word Web Page** in Help.

You've published your Web page, so why does it look different? Not all browsers (the software that opens Web pages) support the same set of features. Internet Explorer 2.0 and later, for example, support marquee or scrolling text while Netscape 2.0 does not. For more information, look up **Getting Results - Word Web Page** in Help.

Get the latest version of Web authoring tools Word automatically checks to see if there is a newer version of Web authoring tools available. If there is, Word will prompt you to update to the latest version. If you choose not to, you can update at a later time by clicking **AutoUpdate (Tools menu)**.

MS 114197

Part 9 Use Office on the World Wide Web

Guidelines for Working with Web Pages

Add hyperlinks to jump from your Web page to other pages Click the **Insert Hyperlink** button. For more information on hyperlinks, see “Add Hyperlinks to Your Files,” page 444.



Insert Hyperlink button

Add a picture Click the **Insert Picture** button, and then select the picture you want to insert.



Insert Picture button

Add an “arty” horizontal line Click **Horizontal Line (Insert menu)**, and then click the line style you want.

Add picture bullets Select the text you want to apply bullets to, click **Bullets and Numbering (Format menu)**, and then click the picture bullet that you want.

Add a background color Click **Background (Format menu)**, and then click the color you want.

Add scrolling text Click **Scrolling Text (Format menu)**. On the **Scrolling Text Options** tab, type the text you want and set the options you want, such as background color and scrolling direction.

Add a table Click the **Tables and Borders** button. The **Draw Table** button will be active so that you can click and drag to create the size table you want. The gridlines you see when working with tables will not be displayed when your page is opened by a browser. For more information on the Draw Table tool, see “Create a Flyer,” page 222.



Tables and Borders button

Add a video Click **Video (Insert menu)**. In the **Video Source** box click **Browse** to search for the file you want, or type the address of the video file.

Add a background sound Click **Background Sound (Insert menu)**, click **Properties**, and then type the address of the sound file, or click **Browse** to search for the file you want.

Next Steps

<u>To</u>	<u>See</u>
Find out more about using Web pages on your intranet	“Office and the Web,” page 442
Create Web content by using Microsoft Excel	“Publish Microsoft Excel Tables and Charts on the Web,” page 448
Create a Web page by using Microsoft PowerPoint	“Create a Web Presentation with PowerPoint,” page 452
Create a Web page by using Microsoft Access	“Use Microsoft Access to Retrieve and Publish Data,” page 464



MS 114199

Use Microsoft Access to Retrieve and Publish Data

Suppose that you're responsible for updating product information for your company's sales force. Many of your suppliers have created sites on the World Wide Web for storing and updating information about their products. If you often jump to these Web sites, you can use Microsoft Access to store their hyperlink addresses in your database and to retrieve the product information you need. After you retrieve the latest information, you can convert it to Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) format and publish it to your company's intranet or to the World Wide Web.

You can use hyperlinks to jump to another Microsoft Access database object, to a file on your internal Web, or to a site on the World Wide Web.

Key Features

-  Hyperlinks
-  Publish to the Web Wizard

Intranet Document



My Company Monthly Report

Supplier	Internet Address
██████████	http://www.traders/
██████████	http://www.cajun/
██████████	http://www.grandma/
██████████	http://www.seafood/
██████████	http://www.inspired/

<http://www.traders/>

Welcome

- New Products
- Resellers
- Financial Information
- Employment Opportunities

Microsoft Access Table

Supplier	Internet Address
██████████	http://www.traders/
██████████	http://www.cajun/
██████████	http://www.grandma/
██████████	http://www.seafood/
██████████	http://www.inspired/

Use Microsoft Access to Retrieve and Publish Data

To complete the steps in this topic you need to have Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed.

Try it out The example in this topic uses the Northwind database and other sample files included with Microsoft Access. You can use the procedures described in this topic on the Northwind database or on your own database.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Microsoft Access and Web** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114201

Store a Hyperlink in a Table

Create a hyperlink field To make it easy to jump to your suppliers' Web sites, add a field to the Suppliers table in which you can store their hyperlink addresses. To create a hyperlink field, open the Suppliers table in table design view. In the database window, on the **Tables** tab, double-click **Suppliers**, and then click **Design View** (View menu).

Add a hyperlink to the table Click **Datasheet View** (View menu). Then, if you already know the hyperlink address, just type it in the field. Microsoft Access recognizes hyperlink protocols and automatically translates the text into a valid hyperlink address. If you don't know the hyperlink address, click in the field and click the **Insert Hyperlink** button to create a link to an Internet address, to a document or database on your hard disk, or to a document or database on an intranet.



Insert Hyperlink button

Jump to hyperlinks To jump to a hyperlink destination stored in your table, click on the hyperlink field.

Type a name for the field ...

Field Name	Data Type	Description
City	Text	
Region	Text	State or province.
PostalCode	Text	
Country	Text	
Phone	Text	Phone number includes country code or area code.
Fax	Text	Phone number includes country code or area code.
HomePage	Hyperlink	Supplier's home page.

Field Properties

General	Lookup
Format	
Caption	Home Page
Default Value	
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	No
Allow Zero Length	No

The data type determines the kind of values that users can store in the field. Press F1 for help on data types.

... then click in the **Data Type** column. Click the arrow, and then select **Hyperlink** from the list.

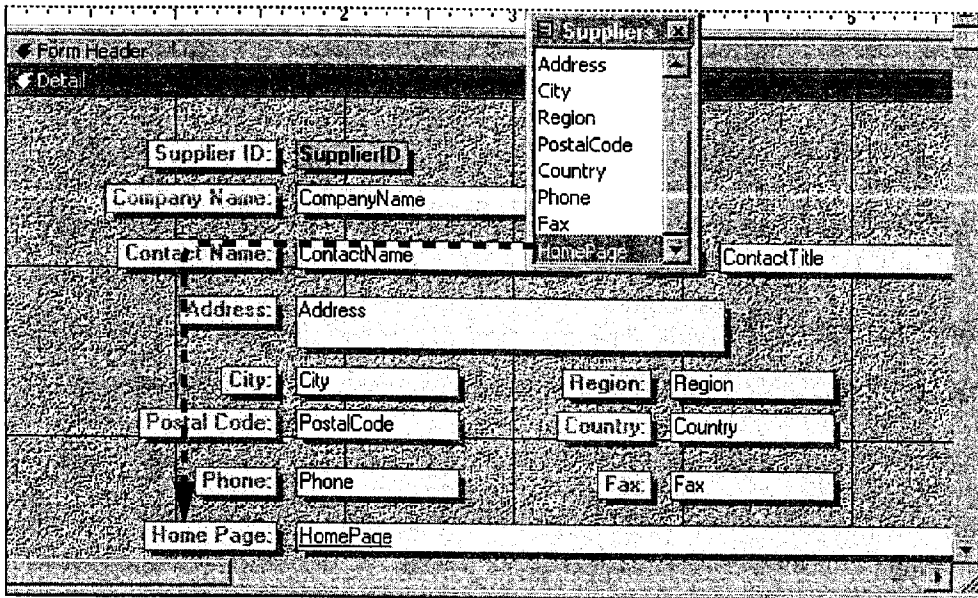


Need to modify a hyperlink address? In datasheet or form view, right-click the hyperlink field, click **Hyperlink** on the shortcut menu, and then click **Edit Hyperlink** on the submenu.

Display a Hyperlink on a Form

With Microsoft Access, it's also easy to add a hyperlink field to your Suppliers form. When you browse through individual supplier records on the form, the hyperlink address changes with each record to reflect the address of the selected supplier. To add a hyperlink field to the Suppliers form, open the form, click **Design View** (View menu), and then click **Field List**.

Select a hyperlink field from the list, and then drag it to a location on the form.



MS 114203

Part 9 Use Office on the World Wide Web



Want to add a hyperlink that doesn't change with each record? You can add a hyperlink to a form that always jumps to a specific document or database object. Click **Design View**, and then click the **Insert Hyperlink** button. In the **Insert Hyperlink** dialog box, specify a hyperlink path in the **Link to file or URL** box or specify a path to a database object in the same database in the **Named location in file** box.

Learn about the Microsoft Internet Information Server Click **Microsoft on the Web** (Help menu).



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Microsoft Access and Web** in Help.



Office Assistant button

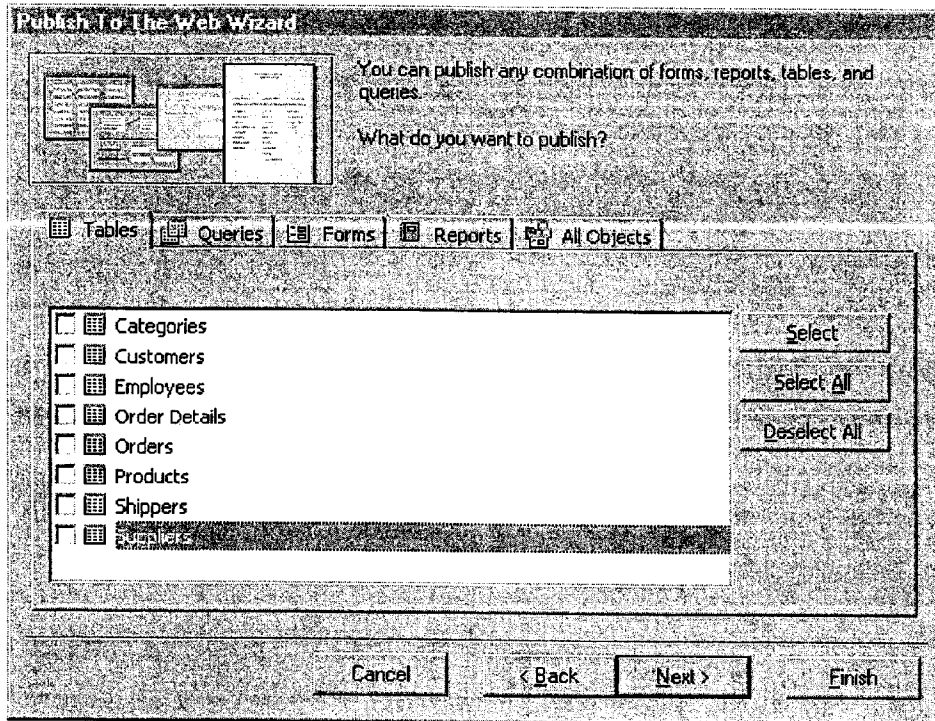
Publish Your Data

You can use the **Publish to the Web Wizard** to convert any combination of tables, queries, forms, or reports to HTML format and publish it to your intranet. You can even select a single HTML page

to use as a template so that your files share the same format.

To start the **Publish to the Web Wizard**, click **Save as HTML** (**File** menu).

Use the **Publish to the Web Wizard** to convert Microsoft Access data into HTML documents.




MS 114205

Open Web Addresses from Outlook

Suppose your team wants to share information that's located on your company's intranet, on a hard disk or server, or on the World Wide Web. In Outlook, you can easily add a *hyperlink* to an e-mail message or contact. A hyperlink is text or a graphic that jumps to a graphic, file, server, or Web page. You can also open your favorite Web pages from within Outlook.

Key Features

 Hyperlinks

InBox

Favorites

Contacts

To: Andrea Carlson; Bruce Bergstrom; Elliott Loren

Subject: New Company Home Page

Date: May 8, 1997

Please check our company home page.

<http://inspired/>

<http://cajun/>

Internet Shortcut

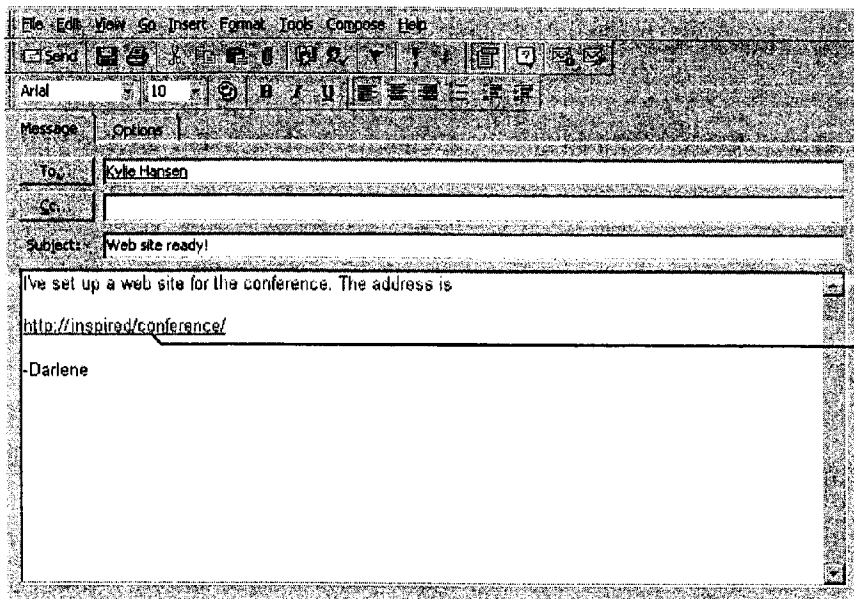
Internet Shortcut

Maria Anders
 Obere Str. 57
 Berlin
 12209 Germany
<http://manders/>

Include a Hyperlink in an E-mail Message

After you create a Web page, you want to send its address to your co-workers. When you type the hyperlink address in an e-mail message, recipients can click it to jump directly to the page.

When you type an address that begins with **http://**, **file://**, or **ftp://** in an e-mail message, Outlook turns it into a hyperlink.



Blue underlined text lets the recipients know that the address is a hyperlink.



Open a contact's Web page If you stored a Web address for a contact, click **Explore Web Page** to jump to the Web page.

Visit your favorite Web sites If you use Microsoft Internet Explorer as your browser, you can jump to Web pages that you have designated as "favorites" from within Outlook. Click **Other** in the **Outlook Bar**, and then click **Favorites** to view Web page addresses. You can create a custom view to organize the Web pages. For more information, see "Customize the Way You Display Information," page 366.

Search for files on an intranet You can use the Web Find Fast search page to locate files that your company has stored on its intranet. See your network administrator to obtain the Web Find Fast search page.



Explore Web Page button



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Outlook Web** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114207

Part 9 Use Office on the World Wide Web

Next Steps

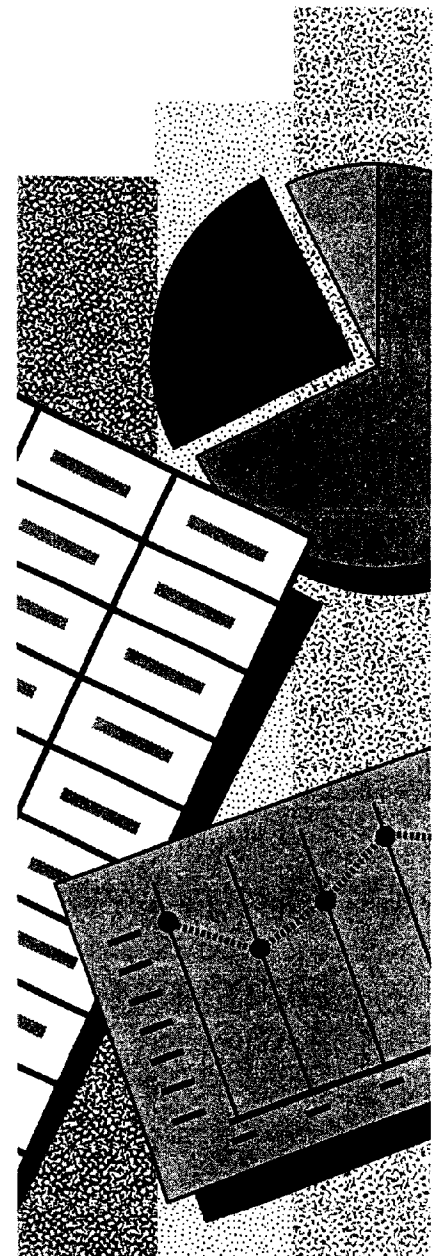
To	See
Learn more about Web add-ins that you can use with Outlook	Microsoft on the Web (Help menu)
Use public folders to share information	"Use Outlook to Share Folders," page 433

PART 10

Budget with Microsoft Excel

Contents

- Consolidate Budget Input 474
- Develop Budgeting Alternatives 482




MS 114209

Getting Results with Microsoft Office 473

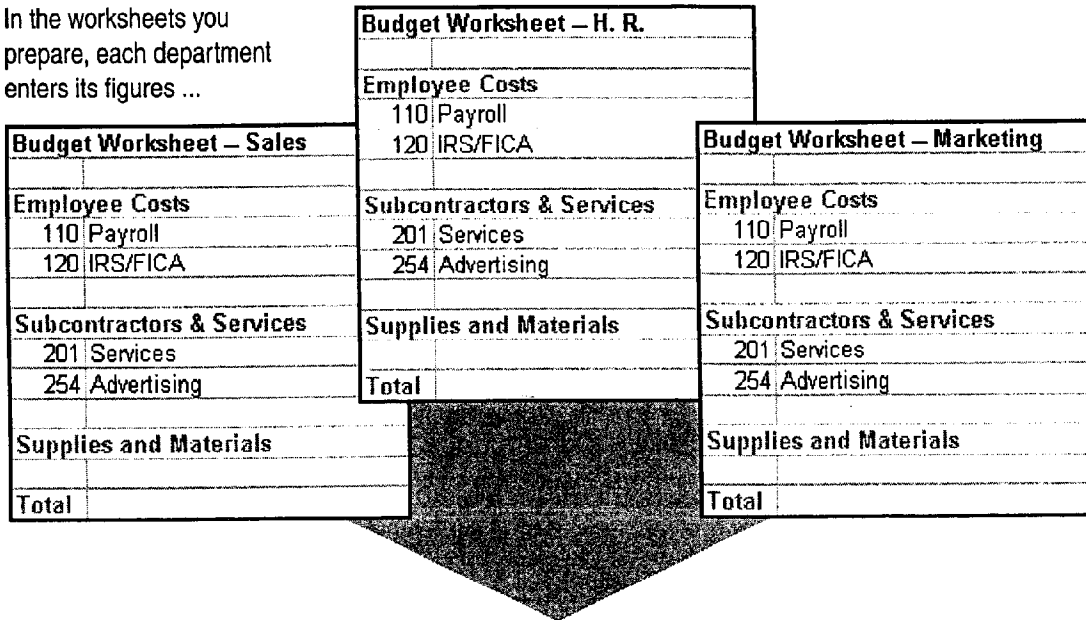
Consolidate Budget Input

Working up an overall budget requires combining the budgets for several groups or departments within your company. Determining how to allocate the available funds usually involves several rounds of proposals and reconsolidation. To project expenses and make adjustments, your department managers need worksheets from you that contain the right information. Design the worksheets so that you can easily roll up the figures you get from each department, as many times as they change.

Key Features

-  Copying Worksheets to Other Workbooks
- 3-D References

In the worksheets you prepare, each department enters its figures ...



Consolidated Budget Input	FY1997	FY1998
Employee Costs	164,146	?
Subcontractors & Services	58,035	?
Supplies and Materials	902	?
Total	223,083	?

... and you combine them in a summary, the consolidation.

Prepare Your Budget Worksheet

Prepare a worksheet to use as a template. List every account to be budgeted across all departments. You'll use the template both to gather input and to consolidate it.

Plan to include current figures for comparison.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Budget Input				
2					
3	Account		FY 1997 Actual	FY 1998 Projected	
4					
5	Employee Costs				
6		110 Payroll			
7		120 IRS/FICA/Wk comp/State/SDI			
8		140 Retirement Plan			
9		Subtotal			
10					
11	Subcontractors & Services				
12		201 Telecommunication Services			
13		254 Advertising			
14		Subtotal			
15					
16	Total				
18					

Here's where you'll consolidate the new budget information.

Budget Worksheet



Do you keep the current budget or actual figures in a database? Put the external data in a Microsoft Excel worksheet so that you can copy it into each department's worksheet. You don't have to retype the figures. For more information, see "Get Sales Information from a Database," page 548.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Consolidate** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114211

Part 10 Budget with Microsoft Excel

Get Budget Projections from Each Department

Each department fills in its estimates by using a copy of the template worksheet. For each department, include only the accounts needed, and provide the figures from the current year by copying them into each department's worksheet.

Keep all accounts in the same rows and columns. Maintaining the same information in the same position across all worksheets enables you to consolidate their contents.

Each department puts its figures into its own worksheet.

Budget Input -- Sales		FY 1997	FY 1998
Account		Actual	Projected
Employee Costs			
110 Payroll		97,845	
120 IRS/FICA/Wk comp/State/SDI		34,276	
140 Retirement Plan		8,824	
Subtotal		140,945	
Subcontractors & Services			
201 Telecommunication Services		1,649	
254 Advertising		0	
Subtotal		1,649	
Total		142,594	

A department doesn't have every account? Hide the rows that won't be used. Click **Hide** (Format menu, Row submenu).

Consolidate Budget Input



Prevent changes to the worksheet layout First, unlock only the cells to receive input. Select the cells, and then click **Cells (Format menu)**. On the **Protection** tab, clear the **Locked** check box. Then protect the worksheet by clicking **Protect Sheet (Tools menu, Protection submenu)**.

Save a shared workbook on a server Click **Shared Workbooks (Tools menu)** to make your workbook available to multiple users at the same time. For more information, see "Share a Workbook with a Co-Worker," page 412.

Send a workbook through electronic mail You can route the workbook to the departments, one at a time. For more information, see "Distribute Documents Online," page 396.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Consolidate** in Help.



Office Assistant button

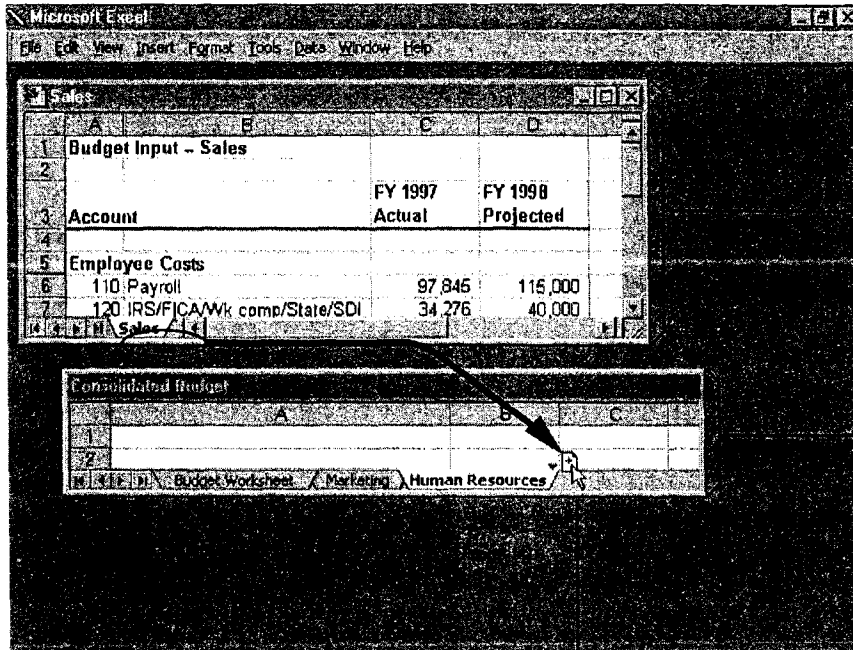
MS 114213

Part 10 Budget with Microsoft Excel

Combine the Input

As each department returns its completed worksheet, you need to add it to a workbook in which you can calculate the combined results. Copy each worksheet of budget projections into your consolidation workbook.

For easy access to the worksheet tabs, arrange the workbook windows horizontally.



The input from the Sales department

Your consolidation workbook

Hold down the CONTROL key and drag each worksheet into position in your workbook.



Make sure you get the right kinds of data For more control over the workbooks you distribute to your co-workers, you can set each cell to limit the allowable range of values, or to accept only a specific data type. This way you can avoid, for example, someone mistakenly entering a value that is too large for a given budget category. For more information, see "Validate Your Data as You Enter It," page 359.

View all your workbooks at once You can quickly arrange all the open workbooks on the screen by clicking **Arrange** (Window menu).

MS 114214

Consolidate the Combined Input

Use a copy of your template worksheet to set up the consolidation. First, create a formula using *3-D references* that totals projections for each account across all the departmental worksheets. Indicate the range of worksheets by specifying the first and last worksheet names in the formula, and include a reference to the cell on each worksheet to include in the consolidated total. The result appears on your consolidation worksheet.

First and last worksheets in the range to be consolidated, with a colon between the worksheet names

Separator

Cell reference

D6 =SUM(Marketing:Sales!D6)					
	A	B	C	D	E
1	FY 1998 Combined Budget Worksheet				
2					
3	Account		FY 1997 Actual	FY 1998 Projected	
4					
5	Employee Costs				
6	110	Payroll	164,146	199,000	
7	120	IRS/FICA/Wk comp/State/SDI	58,035	73,000	
8	140	Retirement Plan	17,138	20,500	
9		Subtotal	239,319	292,500	
10					
11	Subcontractors & Services				
12	201	Telecommunication Services	3,319	3,900	
13	254	Advertising	169	300	
14		Subtotal	3,488	4,200	
15					
16	Total		242,807	296,700	
17					

The consolidated total for all payroll accounts

The consolidated grand total

Marketing / Human Resources / Sales / Consolidated Budget

You're combining values from the worksheets in this range.

MS 114215

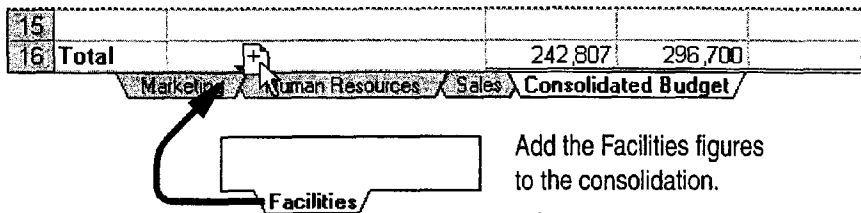
Part 10 Budget with Microsoft Excel



Enter the worksheet names in the formula Position the insertion point at the target location within the formula, and then click the appropriate worksheet tabs.

Copy formulas automatically After you've entered the formula to consolidate one account, you don't have to type similar formulas for the rest of the accounts. If you used a relative cell reference, dragging the fill handle or using the **Copy** and **Paste** commands (**Edit** menu) will adjust the cell references accordingly for your other formulas.

Cope with revisions and late returns If you get another departmental worksheet after you've already set up the consolidation, just drag a copy of the new worksheet between the tabs of the worksheets you refer to in the formula. The new worksheet is consolidated automatically. (Make sure you drag the new worksheet between the existing consolidated sheets. If you insert it outside the range, the new figures won't be included in the consolidation.)



Other Ways to Consolidate Your Figures

3-D references let you design your template worksheet any way you want. But they do require that the same information be in the same place on every worksheet.

Consolidate worksheets with different layouts If the worksheets have similar data but in different areas or positions, you can give the same name to the corresponding range of cells on each worksheet. You can then combine data from ranges with the same name on different worksheets by clicking **Consolidate** (**Data** menu).

Compare figures as well as combine them You can use a PivotTable to consolidate and compare multiple worksheets. For more information, see "Create a Sales Summary," page 563.

MS 114216

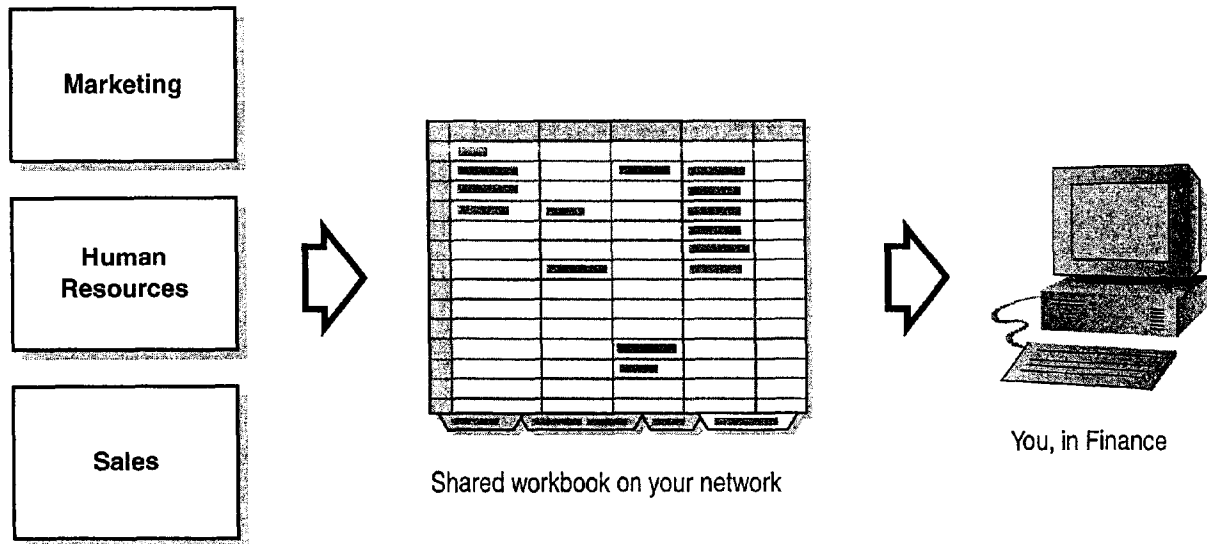
A Shared Workbook Makes Getting the Input Easier

If your departments are on a network, you can use a *shared workbook* to speed the input-gathering process.

Create the worksheets for each department in one workbook and share it on the network. Each department updates its worksheet in this workbook. All departments can work simultaneously,

and you can watch the input arrive and be consolidated. For more information, see “Share a Workbook with a Co-Worker,” page 412.

Important In a shared workbook, every authorized user in the workgroup can view all of the worksheets. So use this distribution method only if it’s acceptable for all departments to see each other’s figures.



Next Steps

To	See
Analyze the results of the consolidation	“Develop Budgeting Alternatives,” page 482
Share a workbook with others over a network	“Share a Workbook with a Co-Worker,” page 412


MS 114217

Develop Budgeting Alternatives

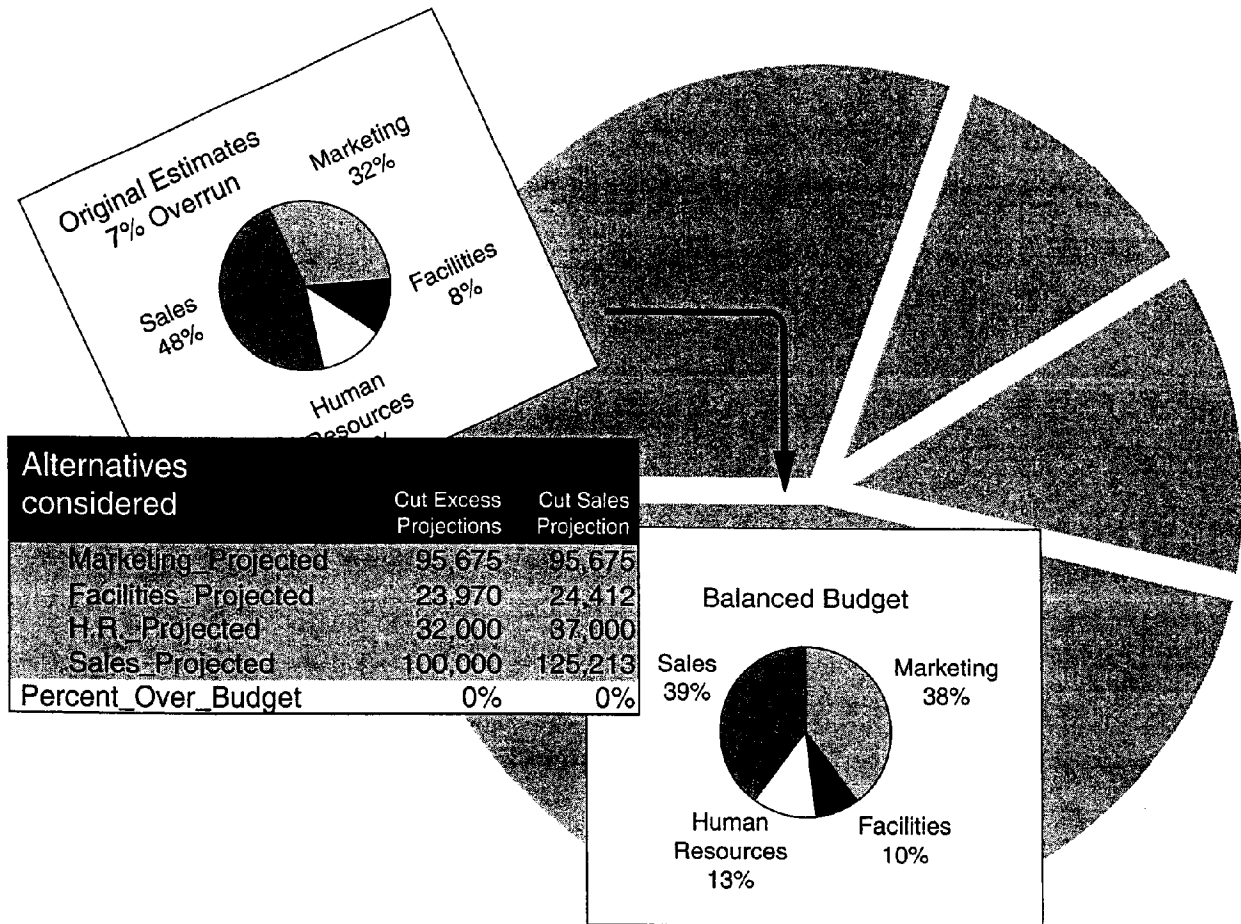
Work with What-If Assumptions in Microsoft Excel

To balance a budget, you must find the best way to allocate the available resources among departments. When initial projections exceed the available funds, you need to compare redistribution strategies. You can model different strategies in Microsoft Excel to analyze the pros and cons of different approaches. As you work through several rounds of negotiation and reallocation, you can adjust your models.

Key Features

-  Conditional Formatting
- Goal Seeking
- Scenarios
- Charts

By creating summaries and charts of the strategies you tried, you can demonstrate to your departments that you reached a fair allocation.



Find the Over- and Under-Budget Areas

You've rolled up account-by-account projections from several departments. Compare the projections to your target amounts: Can you correct some shortfalls by redistributing funds among accounts? Simply subtracting the allocations from the projections can show you the problem areas and the surplus funds.

Subtract the value in cell E5 from the value in cell D5 ...

		FY 1997	FY 1998		
Account		Actual	Projected	Allocated	Difference
5	110 Payroll	164,146	199,200	180,000	19,200
6	120 IRS/FICA/Wk comp/State/SDI	58,035	73,000	66,000	7,000
7	140 Retirement Plan	17,138	20,500	18,500	2,000
8	201 Telecommunication Services	3,319	3,900	4,300	(400)
9	254 Advertising	169	300	250	50
10	301 Office Supplies	4,048	4,500	4,250	250
11	304 Miscellaneous Supplies	902	1,075	1,000	75
12					
13	Total	247,757	302,475	274,300	28,175

... to see the discrepancies.



Sort it out Do you have a large number of accounts? Sort them to view the largest shortages. Click a cell that contains a shortfall amount, and then click the **Sort Ascending** button.



Sort Ascending button

More Power: The 10 Most Wanted List

If you work with long lists of data, you can use the Top 10 feature of the **AutoFilter** command (**Data** menu) to display only the 10 largest values in a column. For more information, see "Zero In on the Contacts You Want," page 357.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Budgeting** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114219

Part 10 Budget with Microsoft Excel

Set Up a Model

To determine the best resource allocation, you need to analyze where spending cuts will be most effective. For example, you might model the percentage of overrun by department and for the overall budget.

To build the formulas in your model, you can construct *natural language formulas*, using row and column labels to calculate the results. Natural language formulas are an alternative to using cell references, and can make your formulas easier to read. For more information, see “About Natural Language Formulas,” page 489.

FY 1998 Department Totals						
	FY 1997	FY 1998				
Account	Actual	Projected	Allocated	Difference	Percent	
Marketing	69,958	95,675	97,000	(1,325)	-1%	
Facilities	20,994	24,412	23,500	912	4%	
Human Resources	32,890	37,000	36,800	200	1%	
Sales	123,915	145,188	125,000	20,188	16%	
Totals	247,757	302,275	282,300	19,975	7%	

The calculated percentage over budget



Show numbers as percentages Use the Percent Style button.



Percent Style button

More Power: Shared Workbooks

You and your team can use the same workbook simultaneously over a network. For more information, see “Share a Workbook with a Co-Worker,” page 412.

MS 114220

Build Alarms into Your Model

Need to know right away when you reach your target or when your budget falls outside an acceptable range? You can use special formatting for values that meet the conditions you specify.

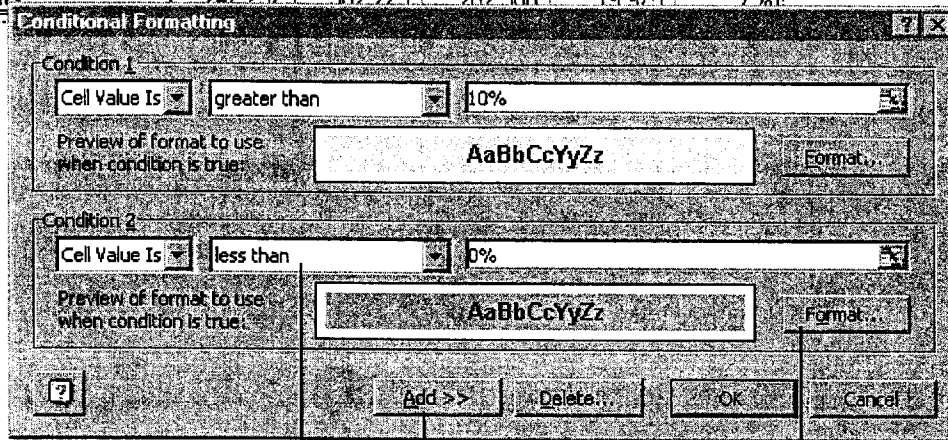
You want to know when percentages are outside the range of 0%–10%.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	FY 1998 Department Totals					
2						
3		FY 1997	FY 1998			
4	Account	Actual	Projected	Allocated	Difference	Percent
5	Marketing	69,958	95,675	97,000	(1,325)	1%
6	Facilities	20,994	24,412	23,500	912	4%
7	Human Resources	32,890	37,000	36,800	200	1%
8	Sales	123,915	145,188	125,000	20,188	16%
9						
10	Totals	247,757	302,275	282,300	19,975	7%

Click **Conditional Formatting** (Format menu).

This value meets Condition 2.

This value meets Condition 1.



Click here to specify the operator you want for this condition.

Click here to add more conditions.

Click here to specify the formatting you want for this condition.



Prevent false alarms It's easy to type an extra zero now and then, so make sure you don't set off your alarms because of incorrect data entry. Use *validation* to ensure that values are within specified limits. Select data-entry cells and click **Validation** (Data menu). For more information, see "Validate Your Data as You Enter It," page 359.

Create hyperlinks to source data Important data often deserves further explanation—especially when an alarm is triggered. Click the **Insert Hyperlink** button to create a hyperlink that jumps directly to a cell range, worksheet, or workbook containing additional information. You can even create a hyperlink to information located on the World Wide Web, or to documents created in other Office applications. For more information, see "Publish Microsoft Excel Tables and Charts on the Web," page 448.



Insert Hyperlink button

MS 114221

Part 10 Budget with Microsoft Excel

Test Alternative Strategies

You need to be able to see the effect of different reductions on each department and on the bottom line. Using *goal seeking*, you can adjust a projection to achieve a specific percentage over or under budget. Goal seeking lets you set a target value for a formula, then adjusts one of the cells used in the formula to calculate your target value. For example, determine how much you'd have to lower the sales projection to reduce the total budget overrun to zero. Try changing different projections to see what it takes to balance the budget.

Calculates the total percentage over budget for all departments

Sales_Projected	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
6	Sales	123,915	145,188	125,000	20,188	16%		
10	Totals	247,757	302,275	282,300	19,975	7%		

The value to be changed

Goal Seek

Set cell: F10


To value: 0

By changing cells: \$C\$8

OK Cancel

The result you want to get from changing the sales projection

Important The cell in which the contents will be adjusted (cell C8 in the preceding example) must contain a value, not a formula.

 **Change multiple values simultaneously** Use Microsoft Excel Solver to perform goal seeking on multiple values at the same time.

 **Want to know more?** Look up **Getting Results - Budgeting** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114222

Compare Alternatives

As you try different strategies to reduce over-budget projections, you need to compare and refine approaches. Perhaps you have done this by saving various copies of your worksheet and viewing them simultaneously.

Another way to compare is to save different sets of projections on a single worksheet, as scenarios. Enter your values, either by goal seeking or by typing the values. Save these original values as a scenario, then enter and save other sets of values to try out other reallocation strategies. You can view all the scenarios on the same worksheet.

Click **Scenarios** (**Tools** menu) to define and display scenarios.

Select the changing cells (the ones in which you try out different values).

To display a scenario that you've saved, select the name and then click **Show**.

	A	B	C
1	FY 1998 Department Totals		
2			
3		FY 1997	
4	Account	Actual	Projected
5	Marketing	69,958	91,000
6	Facilities	20,994	23,970
7	Human Resources	32,890	36,800
8	Sales	123,915	130,530
9			
10	Totals	247,757	282,300
11			
12			

Scenario Manager

Scenarios:

- Original Estimates
- Cut Sales Projection
- Sales Projections
- Cut Excess Projections

Changing cells: \$C\$5:\$C\$8

Comment: Created by Mark Dodge on 6/19/97

Buttons: Show, Close, Add, Delete, Edit..., Merge, Summary...

Click **Add** to create a new scenario.

MS 114223

Part 10 Budget with Microsoft Excel

Reallocate Fairly

After you decide how to balance the budget, use your model and scenarios to support the results. To show the departments how you reached a decision, create a summary report showing the scenarios you considered. Demonstrate the final distribution with a chart showing the division of resources. A pie chart is a good way to show the relationship of parts to a whole, so use this chart type to show how the allocation is divided among departments. For information on other chart types, see "Create a Chart from Worksheet Data," page 260.

The summary uses the names you gave to the cells in your model.

Scenario Summary				
	Original Estimates	Cut Sales Projection	Cut Excess Projections	Balanced Cuts
Changing Cells				
Marketing Projected	95,675	95,675	95,675	91,000
Facilities Projected	24,412	24,412	23,970	23,970
H.R. Projected	37,000	37,000	32,000	36,800
Sales Projected	145,188	125,213	100,000	130,530
Result Cells				
Total Projected	302,275			
Total Allocated	282,300			
Percent Over Budget	7%			

Create a summary by clicking **Scenarios (Tools menu)**, and then clicking the **Summary** button.

Create a chart of the new allocation.

Department	Percentage
Sales	39%
Marketing	38%
Human Resources	13%
Facilities	10%


 **Name the cells used in scenarios** When you create a scenario summary report, the titles shown for result cells and changing cells ordinarily consist of cell references, such as \$C\$6. It is helpful to assign names to these cells. For example, cell C6 is named "Marketing_Projected," and appears as such in the scenario summary report. To assign names to cells, click **Name (Insert menu)**, and then click **Define**.

Chart the original figures for comparison To justify your final choice of distribution, present the two charts together with the summary of the alternatives you tried.

 **Want to know more?** Look up **Getting Results - Budgeting** in Help.



Office Assistant button

About Natural Language Formulas

When building formulas, you often need to stop and think about cryptic cell-reference codes when you really should be thinking about the spreadsheet model. Instead of using cell references in your formulas, you can use the row and column labels in a table, such as the one shown below. For example, it is much easier to remember the meaning of "Actual Sales" than what is in cell "B8." This makes it easier to stay focused while constructing a model and to see what a formula does long after you're finished.

Try to make your table labels as short and self-evident as possible, to make them easier to use.

For example, type **=Projected Facilities** to refer to cell C6: the intersection of row 6 (Facilities) and column C (Projected).

Avoid typing labels To save yourself the trouble of typing long label names into your formulas, you can define label ranges before you start creating formulas. First, select all the labels you want to use in a row or column. Next, click **Name (Insert menu)**, and then click **Label**. After you define the label ranges, you can simply click cells and ranges you want to include in formulas, and the appropriate labels are inserted automatically.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	FY 1998 Department Totals					
2						
3		FY 1997	FY 1998			
4	Account	Actual	Projected	Allocated	Difference	Percent
5	Marketing	69,958	95,675	97,000	(1,325)	-1%
6	Facilities	20,994	24,412	23,500	912	4%
7	Human Resources	32,890	37,000	36,800	200	1%
8	Sales	123,915	145,188	125,000	20,188	16%
9						
10	Totals	247,757	302,275	282,300	19,975	7%

You can use row and column labels in formulas instead of cell references.

The formula shown above refers to this cell as the intersection of the Sales row and the Allocated column.

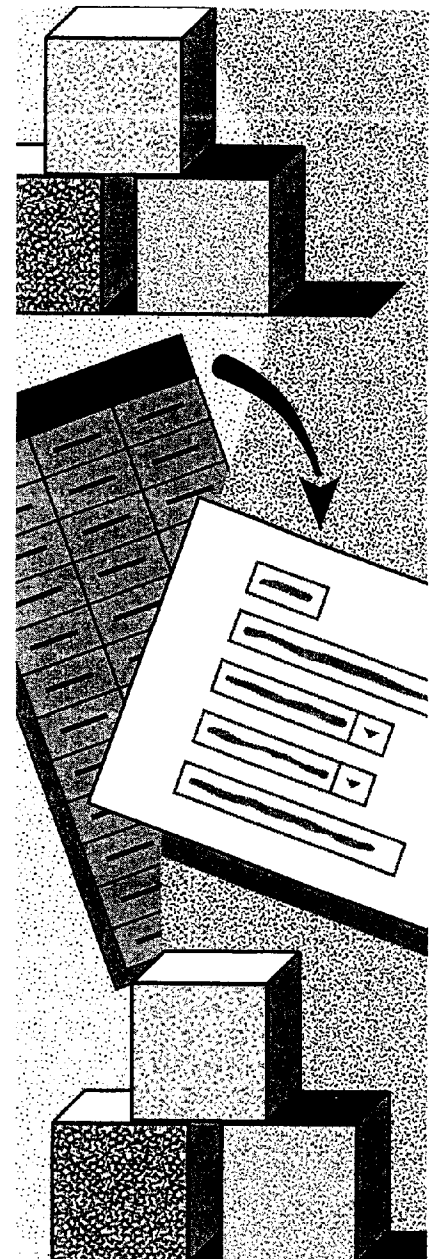
MS 114225

PART 11

Set Up a Custom Inventory System

Contents

- Design a Custom Inventory Database 492
- Move a Product List into Microsoft Access 493
- Create a Great-Looking Product Form 498
- Add a Suppliers Table to Your Inventory Database 505
- Make Data Entry Easy and Accurate 513
- Turn Your Inventory Database into an Application 519
- Create and Enhance an Inventory Report 525



MS 114226

Getting Results with Microsoft Office 491

AHL0123553

Design a Custom Inventory Database

Create a Database Application

You can create many common databases by using the Microsoft Access Database Wizard. If the wizard doesn't create the database you need, or if you have data that doesn't fit into the tables the wizard creates, you can create a database from scratch and then design an interface to tables and forms.

The topics in this part show you how to create a custom inventory database, but you can use the examples to create any type of database, or to customize an existing database. Use the following table to decide which topic to read for more information.

To	See
Create a database by moving data, such as a large product list stored in Microsoft Excel, into Microsoft Access tables	"Move a Product List into Microsoft Access," page 493
Add a table to your database to store additional information, such as a list of your company's suppliers	"Add a Suppliers Table to Your Inventory Database," page 505
Customize tables to make data entry easier and to help ensure that data is entered accurately	"Make Data Entry Easy and Accurate," page 513
Create an attractive form to help you enter data easily	"Create a Great-Looking Product Form," page 498
Create and print reports that summarize information stored in your database	"Create and Enhance an Inventory Report," page 525
Tie the tables, forms, and reports in your database together with a custom interface	"Turn Your Inventory Database into an Application," page 519





Want the Database Wizard to create a database for you? See "Track Your Business Contacts in Microsoft Access," page 360.

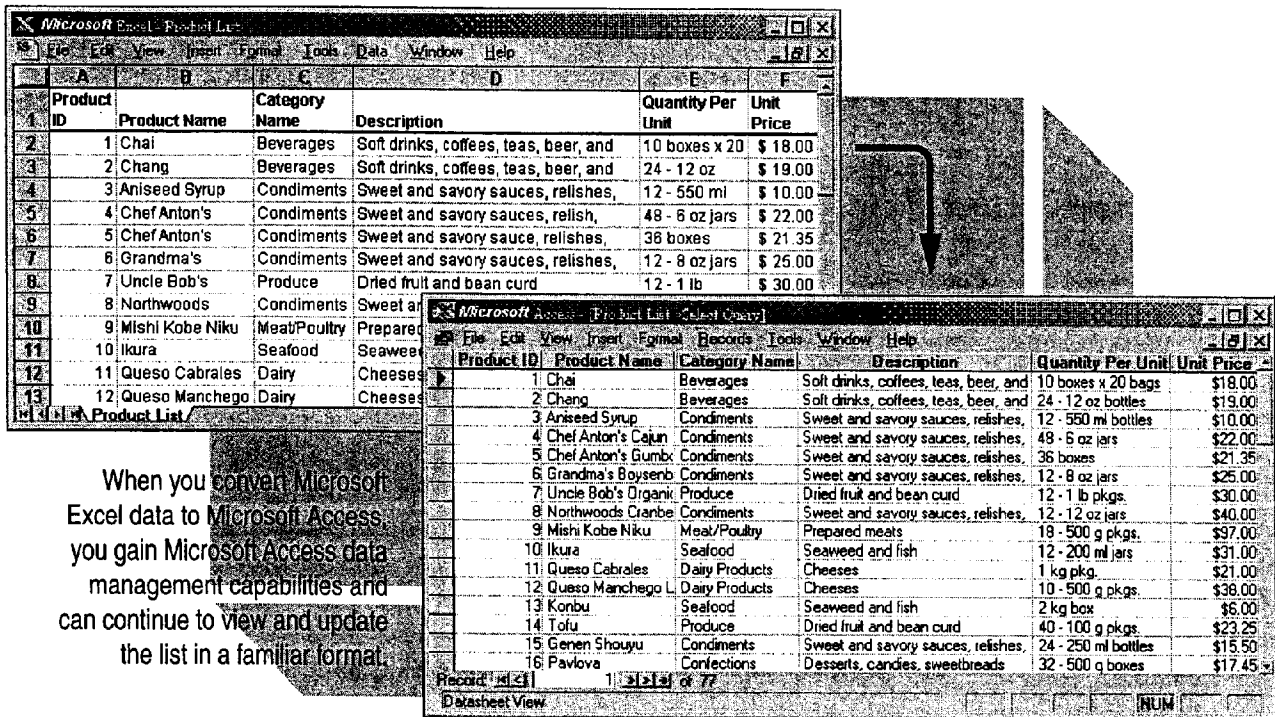
Move a Product List into Microsoft Access

Convert Data from Microsoft Excel to Microsoft Access

Suppose you're using a Microsoft Excel worksheet to maintain your company's list of products. A list of repeating data can grow too large and become very difficult to maintain in Microsoft Excel. For example, if you want to generate a report that includes your customers' addresses and phone numbers, you have to store the data in every row of the worksheet. You can make it easier to manage your product list by converting the worksheet to Microsoft Access and creating a database to add new entries. When you update information in one place, it's updated everywhere in the database. Microsoft Access also makes it possible for several users to work in the database at the same time. When one user updates records, the updated information is made available to all users.

Key Features

-  Convert to MS Access Command Import Spreadsheet Wizard
-  Table Analyzer Wizard



When you convert Microsoft Excel data to Microsoft Access, you gain Microsoft Access data management capabilities and can continue to view and update the list in a familiar format.

Product ID	Product Name	Category Name	Description	Quantity Per Unit	Unit Price
1	Chai	Beverages	Soft drinks, coffees, teas, beer, and	10 boxes x 20	\$ 18.00
2	Chang	Beverages	Soft drinks, coffees, teas, beer, and	24 - 12 oz	\$ 19.00
3	Aniseed Syrup	Condiments	Sweet and savory sauces, relishes,	12 - 550 ml	\$ 10.00
4	Chef Anton's	Condiments	Sweet and savory sauces, relish,	48 - 6 oz jars	\$ 22.00
5	Chef Anton's	Condiments	Sweet and savory sauce, relishes,	36 boxes	\$ 21.35
6	Grandma's	Condiments	Sweet and savory sauces, relishes,	12 - 8 oz jars	\$ 25.00
7	Uncle Bob's	Produce	Dried fruit and bean curd	12 - 1 lb	\$ 30.00
8	Northwoods	Condiments	Sweet and		
9	Mishi Kobe Niku	Meat/Poultry	Prepared		
10	Ikura	Seafood	Seaweed		
11	Queso Cabrales	Dairy	Cheeses		
12	Queso Manchego	Dairy	Cheeses		

To complete the steps in this topic you need Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed. You also need the Microsoft Excel AccessLinks add-in installed and enabled. Note that your Microsoft Excel worksheet must be set up as a list.

MS 114228

Part 11 Set Up a Custom Inventory System

Convert Your Worksheet to Microsoft Access

To begin converting the product list from Microsoft Excel to Microsoft Access, in Microsoft Excel, click anywhere in the worksheet and then click **Convert to MS Access (Data menu)**.

After the Import Spreadsheet Wizard converts the worksheet to Microsoft Access, you can have the Table Analyzer Wizard analyze the imported data and suggest the best way to organize it.

Click here to have the Table Analyzer Wizard analyze the imported data for duplicate information or misspellings. After the data is converted, the Table Analyzer Wizard is launched.

The wizard suggests the best way to organize tables and to create relationships between the tables to make them work together.

Product	Supplier ID	Supplier	Address
Ravioli Angelo	PAST	Pasta Buttiri s.r.l.	Via dei Gelsomini
Gnocchi di nonna	PAST	Pasta Buttiri s.r.l.	Via dei Gelsomini
Camarvon Tigers	PAVL	Pavlova, Ltd.	74 Rose St.
Outback Lager	PAVL	Pavlova, Ltd.	74 Rose St.
Pavlova	PAVL	Pavlova, Ltd.	74 Rose St.
Veggie-spread	PAVL	Pav. Ltd.	74 Rose St.

The Table Analyzer is looking at the problem. Your table or spreadsheet may store the same information many times. Duplicating information can cause problems. First, duplicating information wastes space. Second, duplicating information can lead to mistakes.

Save hard disk space by archiving the original Microsoft Excel worksheet Because you'll make all further changes directly in the new database, you won't need to use the original worksheet when you work with the database.

Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Move List** in Help.

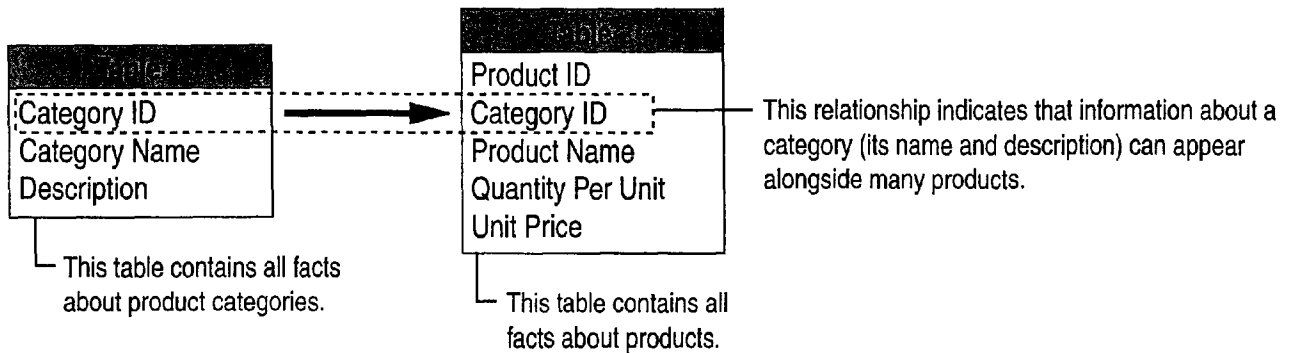
Office Assistant button

Use Tables to Organize Data in Your Database

After you select the Table Analyzer Wizard option, the wizard helps you organize your data into tables. For example, you can create one table to store pricing information, and another to store information about product categories. Using separate tables lets you save each fact in one place, making it easier to maintain accurate information. When you update a fact in one table, that information is updated wherever it appears throughout the database.

The wizard also suggests *relationships* between the tables to make them work together. Relationships define how the data in tables is shared. For more information, see “Use Your First Microsoft Access Database,” page 104, or “View Relationships Between Tables,” page 512.

The original Microsoft Excel worksheet column headings are now displayed as fields in the Microsoft Access tables.



MS 114230

Part 11 Set Up a Custom Inventory System

View and Update Your Data in Microsoft Access

After you accept the table and relationship options suggested by the Table Analyzer Wizard, the wizard splits your data into the appropriate tables and prompts you to correct errors in repeated data. Have the wizard create a *query* so that you can view and update product information in the list. Although the query looks like your worksheet, it provides the added capabilities and features of a Microsoft Access database. Change a repeating entry in one place, and it's updated in every affected record. When you enter a new product name in a new record, Microsoft Access assigns it a new, unique product ID automatically. Enter a product category name, and the associated description is displayed automatically. You can also use this query to create forms and reports.

The query has the same name as the original list.

Column headings from the original worksheet are now displayed as field names in Microsoft Access.

Product ID	Product Name	Category Name	Description	Quantity Per Unit
1	Chai	Beverages	Soft drinks, coffees, teas, beer, and	10 boxes x 20 bags
2	Chang	Beverages	Soft drinks, coffees, teas, beer, and	24 - 12 oz bottles
3	Aniseed Syrup	Condiments	Sweet and savory sauces, relishes,	12 - 550 ml bottles
4	Chef Anton's Cajun	Condiments	Sweet and savory sauces, relishes,	48 - 6 oz jars
5	Chef Anton's Gumbo	Condiments	Sweet and savory sauces, relishes,	36 boxes
6	Grandma's Boysenb	Condiments	Sweet and savory sauces, relishes,	12 - 8 oz jars
7	Uncle Bob's Organic	Produce	Dried fruit and bean curd	12 - 1 lb pkgs.
8	Northwoods Cranbe	Condiments	Sweet and savory sauces, relishes,	12 - 12 oz jars

Each row from the original worksheet is now displayed as a record in the query.

The repeating data is now the same in all locations.



Want to make sure your data is set up correctly? Compare the records in your new Microsoft Access database with your original Microsoft Excel list to make sure that you made the right corrections to your data. The database records may not appear in the same order as in your original list.

Want to add a new entry? In datasheet view, click **New Record**, and then begin typing.



New Record button

MS 114231

Other Ways to Import Data into Microsoft Access

What if the data isn't in a Microsoft Excel worksheet? You can import data into Microsoft Access from many popular formats, including dBASE, Paradox, and other database applications, and even plain text from a word processor.

If your data is in a text file, you can use the Microsoft Access Text Import Wizard to convert the data to Microsoft Access tables. Click **Get External Data** (File menu), and then click **Import**. Click the **Files of type** arrow, and then select **Text files** from the list. Finally, select the file you want, and then follow the instructions on the screen.

What if the data needs to be kept in a Microsoft Excel worksheet? You can create a link from a worksheet to a Microsoft Access database. Click **Get External Data**, and then click **Link Tables**.

The linked worksheet is included in your database as another table. You view and update the linked data just as you would data stored directly in Microsoft Access, but the linked data remains in the Microsoft Excel worksheet.

Next Steps

To	See
Add another table to your database	"Add a Suppliers Table to Your Inventory Database," page 505
Make it easier to add data to your database	"Make Data Entry Easy and Accurate," page 513
Use a query to create forms that make it easy to view information and enter new data	"Create a Great-Looking Product Form," page 498
Use a query to create reports that summarize your data	"Create and Enhance an Inventory Report," page 525


MS 114232

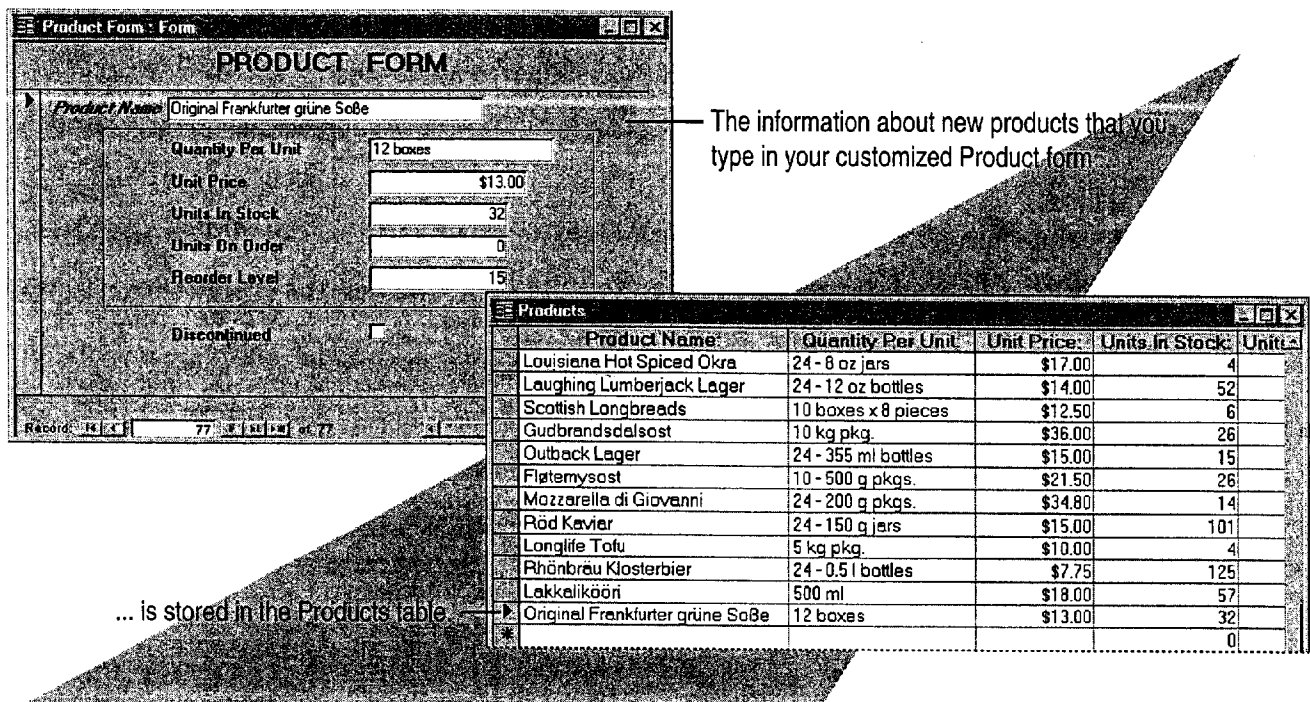
Create a Great-Looking Product Form

Create an Easy-to-Use Form to Add Data to Your Inventory Database

Suppose you've stored information about your product line in the Products table in the Inventory database. If you want a fast, efficient way for you and your co-workers to enter inventory data, you can create a Product form. A *form* displays one record at a time, so it's easy to see what to type and where to type it. To create the form quickly, use the Microsoft Access Form Wizard and then customize the form to make it even easier to work with.

Key Features

-  Form Wizard
- Form Design View
- Subforms



The information about new products that you type in your customized Product form

Product Name	Quantity Per Unit	Unit Price	Units In Stock	Units On Order	Reorder Level
Louisiana Hot Spiced Okra	24 - 8 oz jars	\$17.00	4		
Laughing Lumberjack Lager	24 - 12 oz bottles	\$14.00	52		
Scottish Longbreads	10 boxes x 8 pieces	\$12.50	6		
Gudbrandsdalsost	10 kg pkg.	\$36.00	26		
Outback Lager	24 - 355 ml bottles	\$15.00	15		
Fløtemysost	10 - 500 g pkgs.	\$21.50	26		
Mozzarella di Giovanni	24 - 200 g pkgs.	\$34.80	14		
Röd Kaviar	24 - 150 g jars	\$15.00	101		
Longlife Tofu	5 kg pkg.	\$10.00	4		
Rhönbräu Klosterbier	24 - 0.5 l bottles	\$7.75	125		
Lakkalikööri	500 ml	\$18.00	57		
Original Frankfurter grüne Soße	12 boxes	\$13.00	32		

... is stored in the Products table

To complete the steps in this topic you need to have either Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed. You also need to create a Products table by using the procedures in "Move a Product List into Microsoft Access," page 493, or by using the Table Wizard. However, you can use the basic techniques in this topic to create customized forms for any Microsoft Access table.

Create the Form

With the Microsoft Access Form Wizard, you can create a form quickly by choosing from a list of fields in your database and then adding them to the form. When the wizard is done, your form contains only the information you need, arranged and formatted to simplify data entry. To create a form, click the **New Object** arrow, click **Form**, and then double-click **Form Wizard**. Then, follow the instructions in the wizard.



New Object button

Click the arrow, and then select the Products table.

Which fields do you want on your form?
You can choose from more than one table or query.

Table: Products

Available Fields:

- ID
- ProductName
- SupplierID
- CategoryID
- Discontinued

Selected Fields:

- ProductID
- QuantityPerUnit
- UnitPrice
- UnitsInStock
- UnitsOnOrder
- ReorderLevel

Click a field on the left, and then click here to add the field to your form. Select fields in the order that you want them to appear on your form.

Your form contains only the fields you select.



View more than one record at a time Click **Datasheet** (**View** menu).

Want a quick way to open your form for data entry? After opening the database, drag the form from the database window to the Windows desktop. To open the form from the Windows desktop, double-click the form's icon.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Forms** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114234

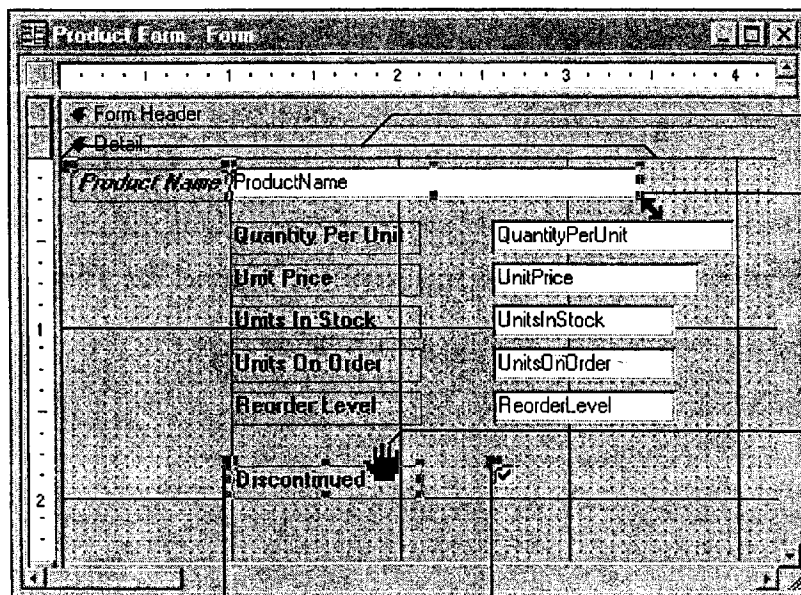
Adjust the Form's Layout

After the Form Wizard creates your product form, you can rearrange the *controls* on a form to group related items together. Anything that you add to a form—including text boxes, labels, list boxes, option buttons, command buttons, and lines—is a control. To adjust the form's layout, switch to form design view.

In the form, click the **View** arrow, and then click **Design View**. To select the control you want, click it, and then manipulate it to change the form's appearance. You can align controls to the grid, resize them, and adjust the horizontal and vertical spacing so that they are uniformly spaced.



View button



A control includes the label, or the field, or both.

Click and drag a handle to adjust the size of a control.

Click and drag a control to reposition it.

Click here to move only the label ...

... or here to move only the field.

Create a Great-Looking Product Form



Adjust the placement of a control Click the control, hold down the CONTROL key, and then use the arrow keys to move the control in small increments.

Want to move or realign more than one control at a time? Click next to one of the controls, and then drag the pointer around all of the controls to select them (a box appears around the controls as you drag the pointer). Point between any two handles on the selected controls. When the pointer changes to an open hand, hold the mouse button down and then drag the controls to a new location.

Need to add a field? Click the **Field List** button, and then drag the field you want from the list to the form.



Field List button



Office Assistant button



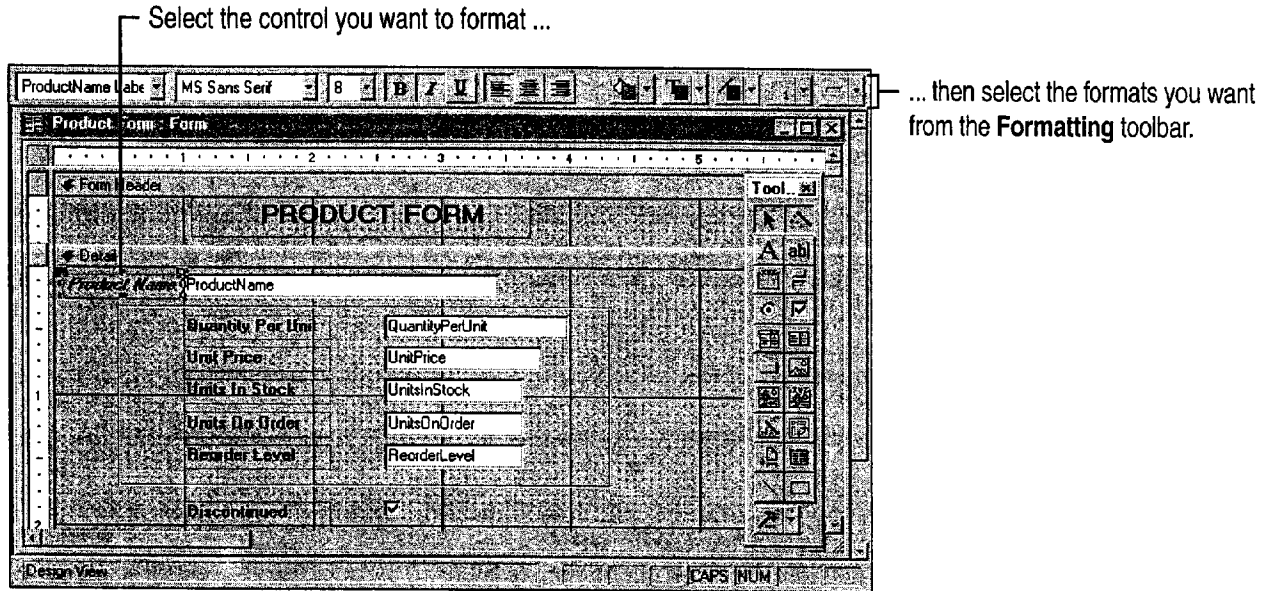
Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Forms** in Help.

MS 114236

Part 11 Set Up a Custom Inventory System

Emphasize Important Information

You can also make your form easier to read by changing the font, font size, and style of controls. For example, you can apply bold formatting to the most important labels and make the font size larger. To change the appearance of your labels, in form design view, select one label or group of labels. Then use the **Formatting** toolbar to apply the formatting options you want.



Guidelines for Customizing Forms

Add a title to your form In form design view, point to the top of the **Detail** section bar. When a two-headed arrow appears, click and drag the bar downward to create space between the Form Header section and the Detail section. If the **Control** toolbox isn't visible, click **Control Toolbox (View menu)**, and then click the **Label** tool. Click and drag in the **Form Header** section to create a box for the title, and then type the title in the box. To format the title, click the label to select it, and then select the options you want from the **Formatting** toolbar.

Add lines to your form In the **Control** toolbox, click the **Line** tool, click where you want the line to start, and then drag to draw it.

Copy a format quickly with the Format Painter Click the control whose format you want to copy, and then click the **Format Painter** button once to copy the format to a single control, or double-click the button to copy the format to multiple controls. Then, click each control you want to format. If you're formatting multiple controls, click the **Format Painter** button again to turn off formatting.



Detail section



Label tool



Line tool



Format Painter button

MS 114237

Create a Great-Looking Product Form

Change the appearance and alignment of all controls on the form with automatic formats Automatic formats include combinations such as bold lettering, etched field names, and borders. Click the **AutoFormat** button, and then choose the format you want.



AutoFormat button

Add a border around related controls to make them stand out In the **Control** toolbox, click the **Rectangle** tool, and then drag the pointer around the controls you want to include.



Rectangle tool



Office Assistant button



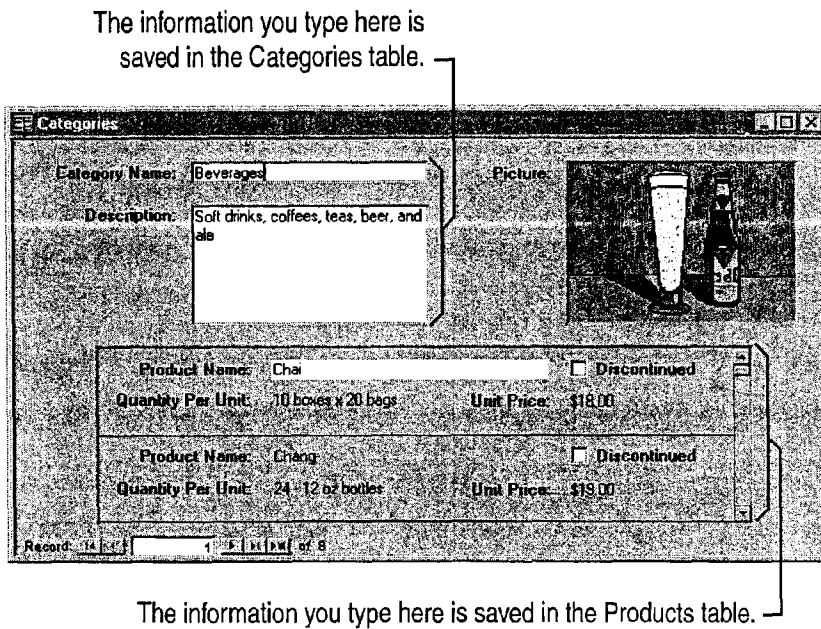
Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Forms** in Help.

MS 114238

Work with Data from More Than One Table

Take advantage of the relationship that you create between tables to make data entry more efficient. For example, after you create a relationship between the Categories table and the Products table, you can create *subforms* (forms within a form) so that when you enter the name of a

product category that is also a main form, such as Beverage, subforms show only the products in each subcategory. To create a form based on more than one table, click the **New Object** arrow, click **Form**, and then double-click **Form Wizard**. Follow the instructions in the wizard.



Next Steps


To	See
Learn more about creating relationships between tables	“Add a Suppliers Table to Your Inventory Database,” page 505
Find information contained in two or more tables	“Evaluate Sales Performance in a Microsoft Access Database,” page 582

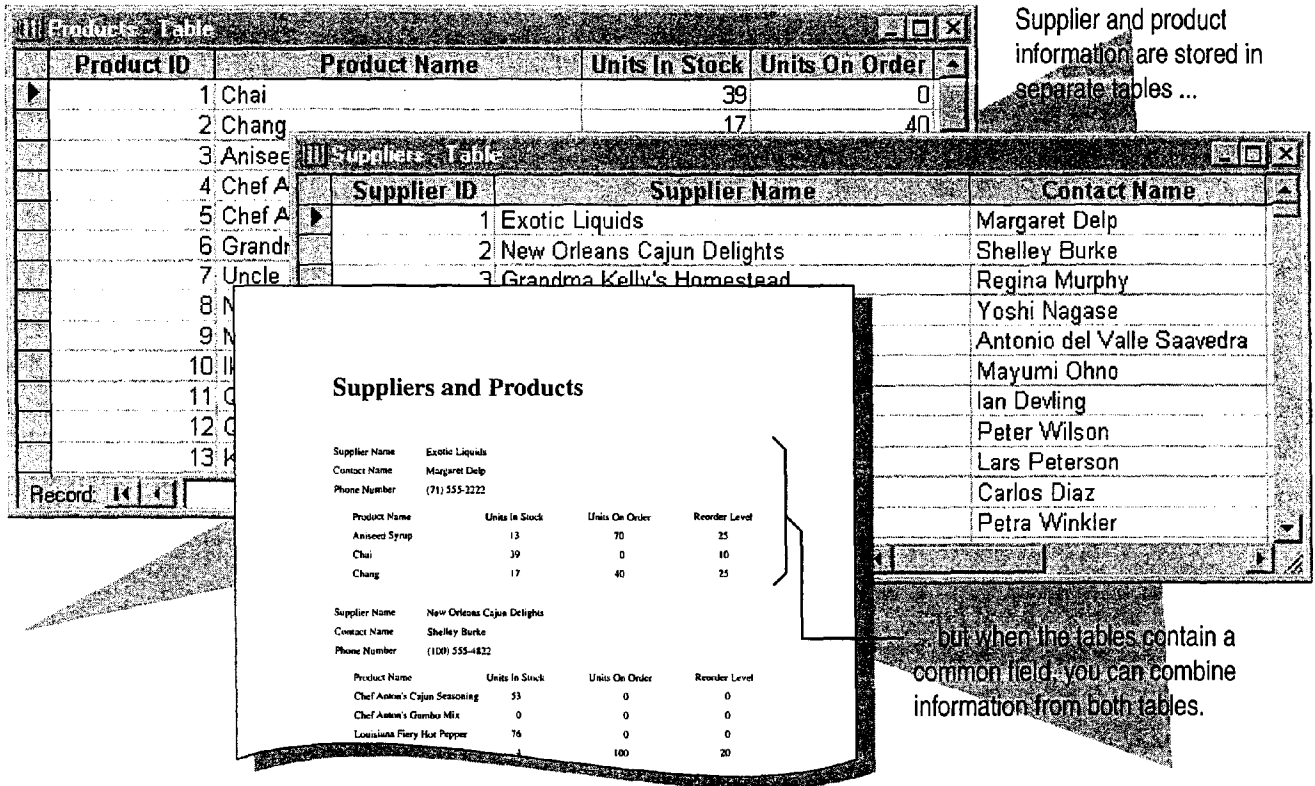
MS 114239

Add a Suppliers Table to Your Inventory Database

If you've followed the steps in the preceding topic, your inventory database contains all the tables you need to store product information. But suppose that you need to add information about the suppliers who make your products. You can create a new table with the Table Wizard and then connect this table to other tables in the database so that you can combine information from your tables in different ways.

Key Features

-  Table Wizard
- Lookup Wizard
- Relationships



Supplier and product information are stored in separate tables ...

Product ID	Product Name	Units In Stock	Units On Order
1	Chai	39	0
2	Chang	17	40
3	Anisee		
4	Chef A		
5	Chef A		
6	Grand		
7	Uncle		
8	N		
9	N		
10	Il		
11	C		
12	C		
13	K		

Supplier ID	Supplier Name	Contact Name
1	Exotic Liquids	Margaret Delp
2	New Orleans Cajun Delights	Shelley Burke
3	Grandma Kelly's Homestead	Regina Murphy
		Yoshi Nagase
		Antonio del Valle Saavedra
		Mayumi Ohno
		Ian Devling
		Peter Wilson
		Lars Peterson
		Carlos Diaz
		Petra Winkler

Supplier Name	Contact Name	Phone Number	Product Name	Units In Stock	Units On Order	Reorder Level
Exotic Liquids	Margaret Delp	(71) 555-3222	Aniseed Syrup	13	70	25
			Chai	39	0	10
			Chang	17	40	25
New Orleans Cajun Delights	Shelley Burke	(109) 555-4832	Chef Anton's Cajun Seasoning	53	0	0
			Chef Anton's Gumbo Mix	0	0	0
			Louisiana Fiery Hot Pepper	76	0	0
					100	20

... but when the tables contain a common field, you can combine information from both tables.

To complete the steps in this topic you need Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed. You also need to create the Products and Categories tables, as described in "Move a Product List into Microsoft Access," page 493. However, you can follow the basic steps in this topic to add any table to a database.

MS 114240

Part 11 Set Up a Custom Inventory System

Create the Suppliers Table

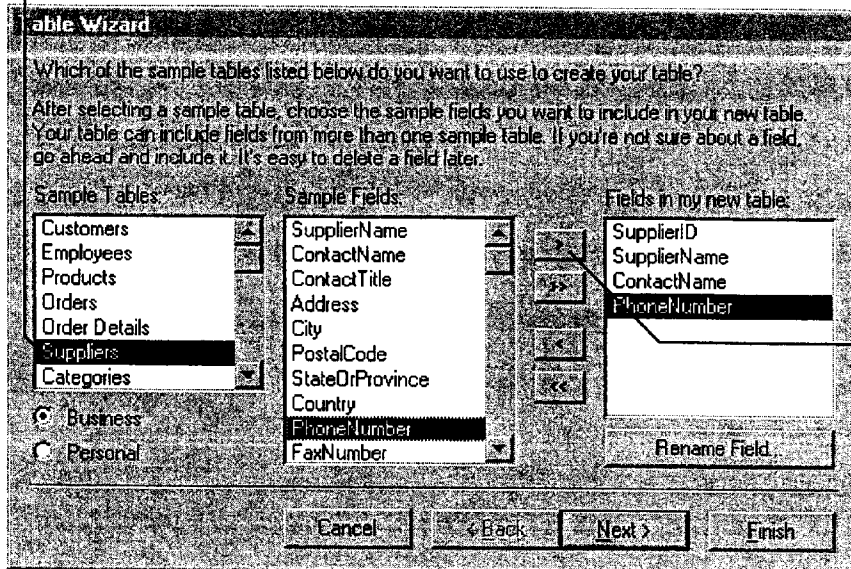
When you're ready to add information about suppliers to your inventory database, create a table to store the data. The Table Wizard makes it easy to create a table. When you use the wizard, you can choose from a variety of tables and associated fields.

To use the Table Wizard, in the database window, click the **New Object** arrow, click **New Table**, and then double-click **Table Wizard**. Select **Suppliers** from the **Sample Tables** list, and then add the fields you want. After the wizard creates the Suppliers table, click **Save (File menu)** to add the table to your database.



New Object button

Click **Suppliers** to see the fields you can use for the table.



Click a field on the left, and then click here to add the field to your table. Add fields in the order in which you want them to appear in the table.

MS 114241

Add a Suppliers Table to Your Inventory Database



Does the table have fields in common with an existing table in your database? When the Database Wizard creates your table, you can set options to specify a relationship. For more information, see "View Relationships Between Tables," page 512.

Can't find the type of table you want in the Table Wizard? If the Table Wizard list doesn't include the table you want to create, click the **New Object** arrow, click **New Table**, and then double-click **Datasheet View**. Type the field names and data in the blank datasheet.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Add Suppliers** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114242

Add Supplier Information

After the Table Wizard creates your table, it opens the table in datasheet view. Work in this view to type information about your suppliers.

Supplier ID	Supplier Name	Contact Name
1	Exotic Liquids	Margaret Delp
2	New Orleans Cajun Delights	Shelley Burke
3	Grandma Kelly's Homestead	Regina Murphy
4	Tokyo Traders	Yoshi Nagase
*	(AutoNumber)	

Datasheet view displays more than one record at a time.

To add a new supplier to the table, type information about the supplier in the blank record at the end of the datasheet.

Important When you follow this example, be sure to add data to the Suppliers table that you create. You'll need this information to complete the next step in this topic.



Import existing data to your table To add data that is in another application or format, click **Get External Data (File menu)**, and then click **Import**.

Change a field name Double-click the column header in the datasheet and type a new name. Be sure to do this before you create queries, forms, and reports, or you will have to change the field names in those, too.

Need to add another field? If you forgot to include a field, or if the Table Wizard list doesn't include a field you need, add it by clicking the header of the column that will follow the new field and then clicking **Column (Insert menu)**.

MS 114243

Connect Supplier and Product Information

After you create the Suppliers table, you can use the information about your suppliers to update the Products table already in the database. To connect the Suppliers table to the Products table, use the Lookup Wizard to add a *lookup field* to the Products table. The lookup field displays a list of suppliers names from the Suppliers table. With a lookup field, you don't have to spend time typing suppliers' names when you update the Products table. Instead, just select the supplier name from the lookup list to add it to the table.

While working in the Suppliers table, click the **Database Window** button. On the **Tables** tab, double-click **Products** to open the Products table and to use the Lookup Wizard. Click **Supplier ID**, and then click **Lookup Column (Insert menu)** to start the wizard. You'll be prompted to specify the source for the information to be included in the lookup field. Set options to have the wizard retrieve the information from the Suppliers table. When the wizard prompts you for the fields to be included in the lookup column, add the SupplierName field.



Database Window button

The Lookup Wizard adds this column to the Products table. The column displays a list of suppliers from the Suppliers table.

Product ID	Product Name	Supplier ID
1	Chai	Exotic Liquids
2	Chang	Exotic Liquids
3	Aniseed Syrup	Exotic Liquids
4	Chef Anton's Cajun Seasoning	New Orleans Cajun Delights
5	Chef Anton's Gumbo Mix	New Orleans Cajun Delights
6	Grandma's Boysenberry Spread	Grandma Kelly's Homestead
7	Uncle Bob's Organic Dried Pears	Grandma Kelly's Homestead
8	Northwoods Cranberry Sauce	Grandma Kelly's Homestead
9	Mishi Kobe Niku	Tokyo Traders
10	Ikura	Tokyo Traders
(AutoNumber)		

These names were selected from the list of suppliers below, and added to the column.

To display the list of suppliers, click the arrow. Select a supplier from the list to add it to the column.

MS 114244

Part 11 Set Up a Custom Inventory System



Don't see anything in the list? If you haven't entered information in the Suppliers table, your list will be empty. Add information about your suppliers to the Suppliers table before using the list.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Add Suppliers** in Help.



Office Assistant button

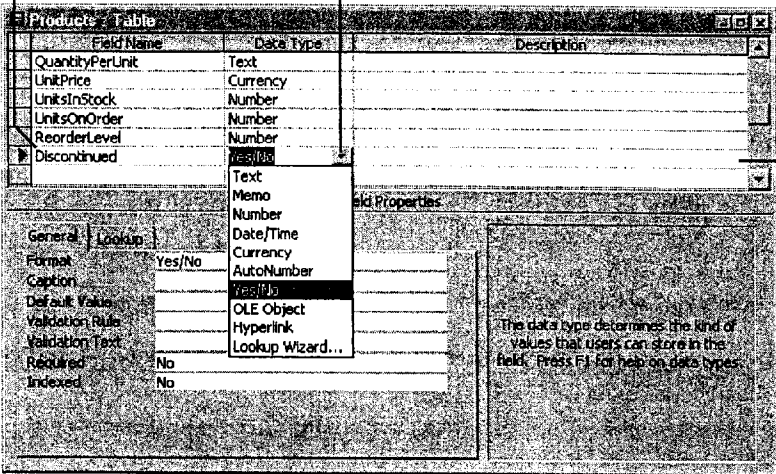
MS 114245

Add Fields to a Table

Suppose you need to add fields to a table after you create it. For example, if you want to use the Products table to track inventory levels, you can add the following four fields: UnitsInStock, ReorderLevel, UnitsOnOrder, and Discontinued. To add a field to a table, click **Design View (View menu)**.

Click the first blank row at the end of the table, and then type the name of the field you want to add.

Click the arrow, and then select a data type from the list.



You can also type a product description. The product description you add is displayed on the status bar when you add data to the field.



Insert a field in a specific location within the table Suppose you want to insert a row for a new field between two existing fields, rather than at the end of the table. When you click an existing field and then click the **Insert Rows** button, Microsoft Access inserts a blank row immediately above that field.



Insert Rows button

MS 114246

View Relationships Between Tables

When you add a lookup field, Microsoft Access creates a *relationship* between the two tables, making them part of a unified database. When tables are related, you can combine data from each table in queries, forms, and reports.

You can see the tables in your database and the relationships between them in the relationships window. To open this window, in the database window, click the **Relationships** button.

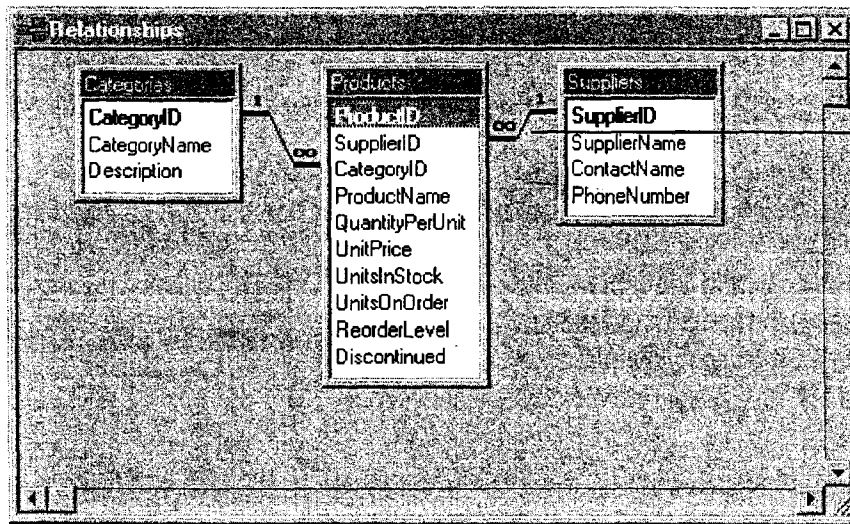
Each table is represented by a field list. The lines that connect field lists show the relationships between tables. To see a table in the relationships window, you have to add it. To add the Suppliers table, click **Show Table (Relationships menu)**, select **Suppliers**, and then click **Add**.

For more information, see “Use Your First Microsoft Access Database,” page 104.



Relationships button

The relationships window shows how the tables in your database are related.



To set options for a relationship, double-click the relationship line.

Next Steps


To	See
Customize tables for quick and accurate data entry	“Make Data Entry Easy and Accurate,” page 513
Create attractive forms to present online data	“Create a Great-Looking Product Form,” page 498
Create custom reports to summarize and print information contained in your database	“Create and Enhance an Inventory Report,” page 525

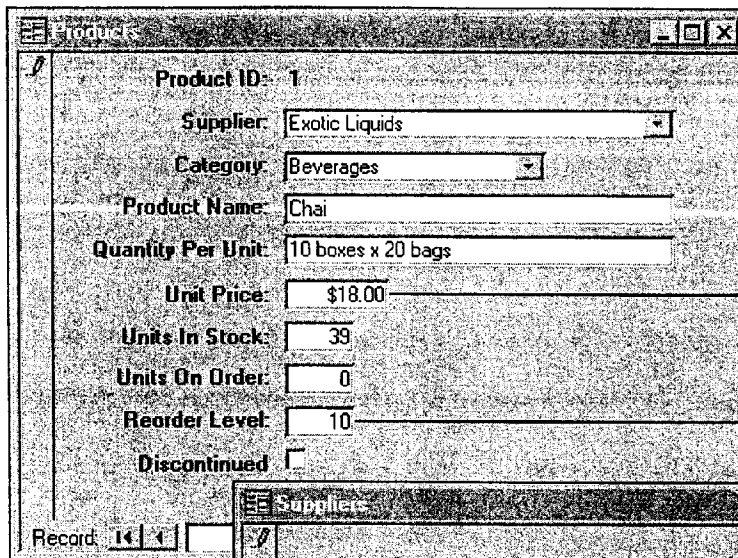
MS 114247

Make Data Entry Easy and Accurate

After you create an inventory database that includes all the tables you need, you can make data entry consistent, accurate, and easy by setting *field properties* for your tables. Field properties control how a field behaves or looks. When you set field properties for a table, all forms and datasheets that use information from that table will use the same settings.

Key Features

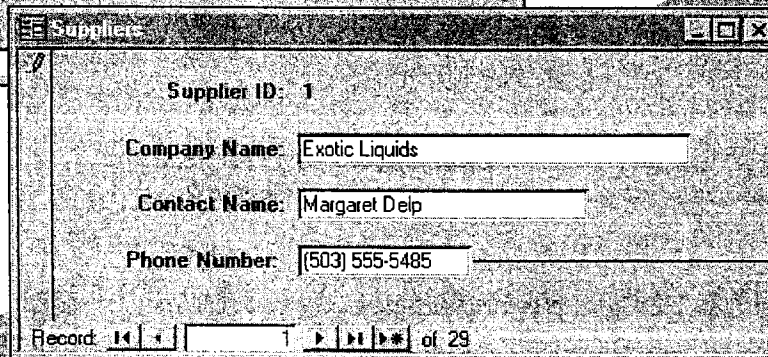
-  Field Properties
- Default Values
- Validation Rules
- Input Masks



Product ID: 1
 Supplier: Exotic Liquids
 Category: Beverages
 Product Name: Chai
 Quantity Per Unit: 10 boxes x 20 bags
 Unit Price: \$18.00
 Units In Stock: 39
 Units On Order: 0
 Reorder Level: 10
 Discontinued:

Let Microsoft Access ensure that the number typed here is in the right range ...

... fill in this field when a new product is added ...



Supplier ID: 1
 Company Name: Exotic Liquids
 Contact Name: Margaret Delp
 Phone Number: (503) 555-5485

... and add the parentheses and hyphens to phone numbers.

To complete the steps in this topic you need to have either Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed. You must also create the Products, Categories, and Suppliers tables in "Move a Product List into Microsoft Access," page 493, and "Add a Suppliers Table to Your Inventory Database," page 505. However, you can follow the basic steps in this topic to make data entry easier for any table you create.

MS 114248

Part 11 Set Up a Custom Inventory System

Set Field Properties to Control Data Entry

Each field in a table has a set of properties that you can customize to determine how data is handled. You can set field properties for a table while working in table design view. To open a table in table design view, click **Database Window**. On the **Tables** tab, click the table whose fields you want to customize, and then click **Design**. When you're done, click the **Save** button.

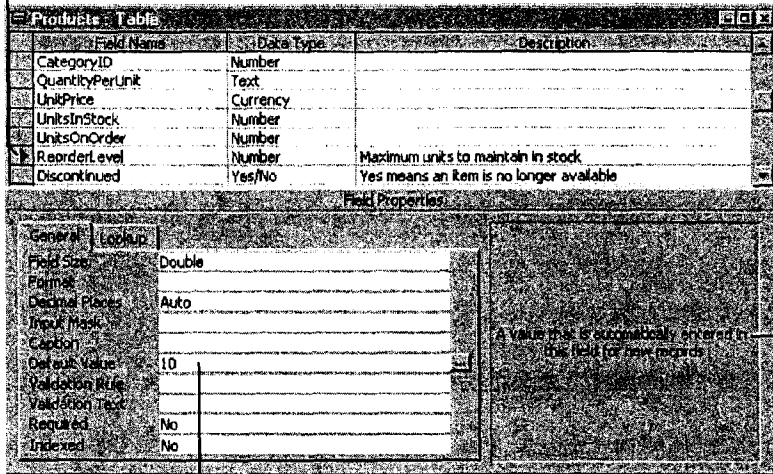


Database Window button



Save button

To set field properties, click a field ...



Microsoft Access displays a brief description of the selected property.

... click a property, and then type the new setting.

Important Set properties for a table before you create forms, reports, or queries based on that table. If you set table properties after creating forms, reports, or queries, some of the settings won't apply to the forms.



Create a form that uses your new property settings Save the table, click the **New Object** arrow, and then click **AutoForm**.



New Object button



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Field Properties** in Help.



Office Assistant button

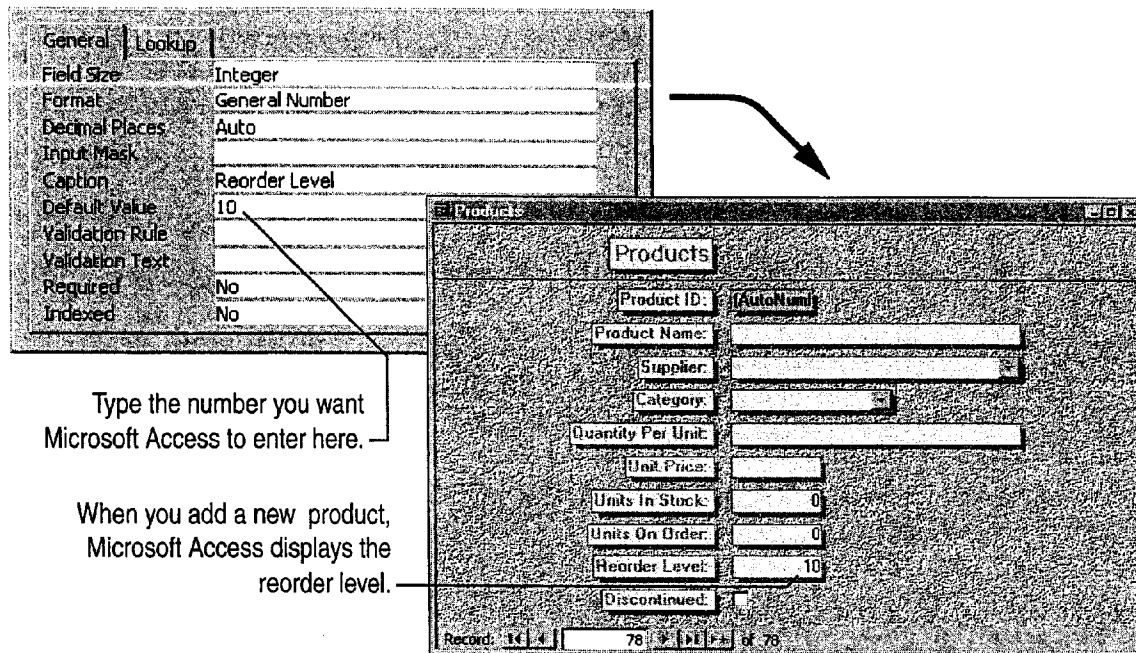
MS 114249

Make Data Entry Easy and Accurate

Let Microsoft Access Enter Information for You

After you set properties for a field, you can use Microsoft Access to automatically enter data. When you set a *default value* for a field, Microsoft Access enters that value when you add a new record to the database. For example, suppose that you usually reorder any product when there are only 10 items left in stock. You can customize your Products table so that whenever you or your co-workers enter a new product into the database, Microsoft Access automatically enters 10 in the Reorder Level box.

Open the Products table, click **Design View** (View menu), and then click the **Reorder Level** field to display its properties.



Want to undo a change you made to a default value in a field?

Microsoft Access lets you accept a default value or type a new value over it. If you type over a default value and then decide you want to undo your change, press CONTROL+Z.

Enter the current date automatically If you want to enter the current date in the Date field, click the **Default Value** property box and then type `=Date()`.

MS 114250

Part 11 Set Up a Custom Inventory System

Use Validation Rules to Minimize Data Entry Errors

Suppose that you want to minimize data entry errors. For example, you want to make sure that the value entered for the unit price of a product is always between 0 and 1000. You can set the Validation Rule property to make sure that all values entered in the Unit Price field fall within this range. If the data you enter does not meet the conditions set by the *validation rule*, Microsoft Access displays a message.

Open the Products table, click **Design View** (View menu), and then click the Unit Price field to display its properties.

Type the limits for the field here.

General	Lookup
Format	Currency
Decimal Places	Auto
Input Mask	
Caption	Unit Price
Default Value	
Validation Rule	>0 And <1000
Validation Text	Enter a value greater than \$0 and less than \$1000
Required	No
Indexed	No
Filter Lookup	Database Default

If you want to display a custom message when someone enters a number that is too small or too large, type it here.

When someone enters an invalid unit price ...

... Microsoft Access asks for a price in the right range.

Want to make sure that a field always contains a value? In the field's **Required** property box, click **Yes**.

Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Field Properties** in Help.



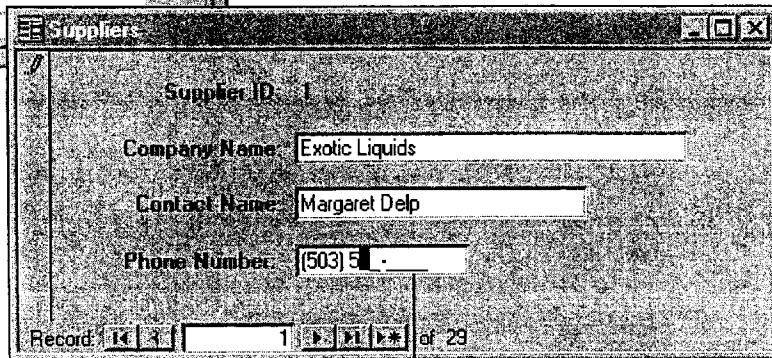
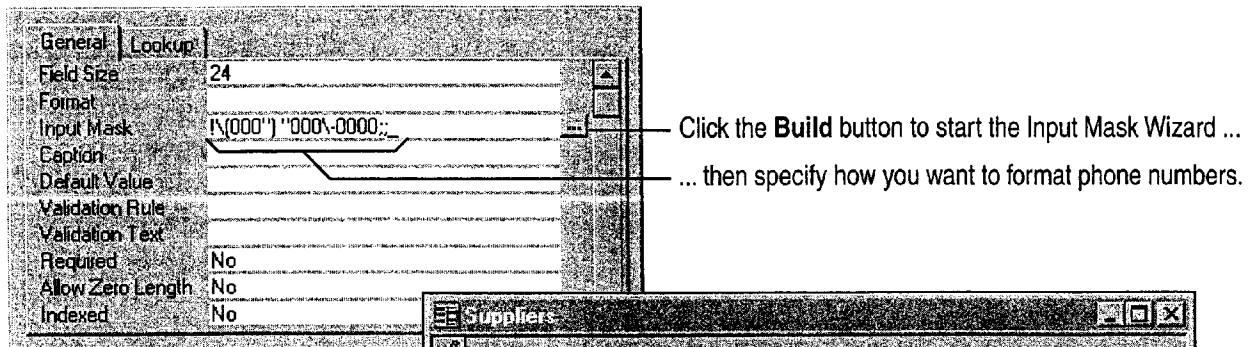
Office Assistant button

MS 114251

Simplify Typing Phone Numbers

Suppose that you always include parentheses and a hyphen when you enter a supplier's phone number, like this: (503) 555-5485. Save time by creating an *input mask* that lets Microsoft Access automatically add the parentheses and hyphen for you. An input mask controls how data is entered in a field.

Open the Suppliers table, click **Design View**, and then click the Phone field to display its properties.



Microsoft Access adds the parentheses and hyphen and ensures that you or your co-workers type the correct number of digits.



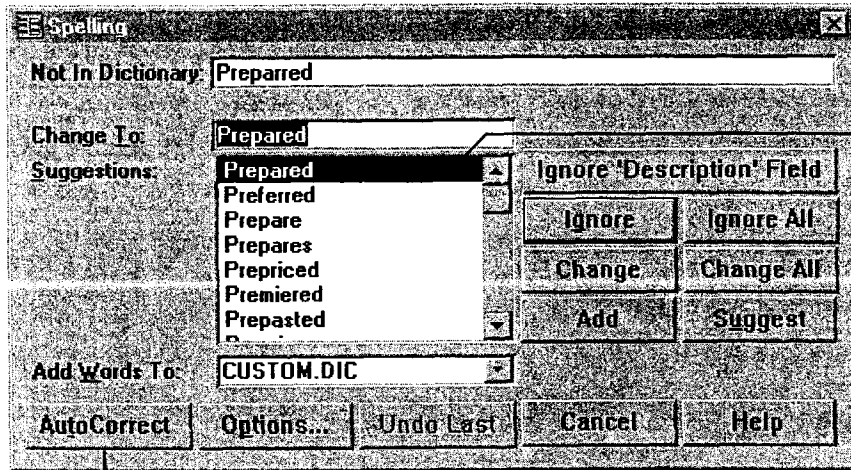
Do you have other data with formatted characters? You can have Microsoft Access automatically add formatted characters for other types of data, such as social security numbers or postal codes.

MS 114252

Check Spelling and Correct Mistakes

To prevent spelling mistakes that can compromise the integrity of your database, let Microsoft Access check your spelling. Microsoft Access can even automatically correct words that you frequently mistype.

To check spelling, click the form or datasheet that you want to review and then click **Spelling** (Tools menu). You can check spelling for fields that store text, but not numbers or other types of data.



Double-click the word you want, or type the correct spelling.

Click here to add the word to the list that Microsoft Access automatically corrects while you type.

Next Steps

To	See
Create attractive forms that present data on the screen in your own way	"Create a Great-Looking Product Form," page 498
Create custom reports to summarize and print information	"Create and Enhance an Inventory Report," page 525
Save typing by selecting information from a Suppliers list	"Add a Suppliers Table to Your Inventory Database," page 505

MS 114253


Turn Your Inventory Database into an Application

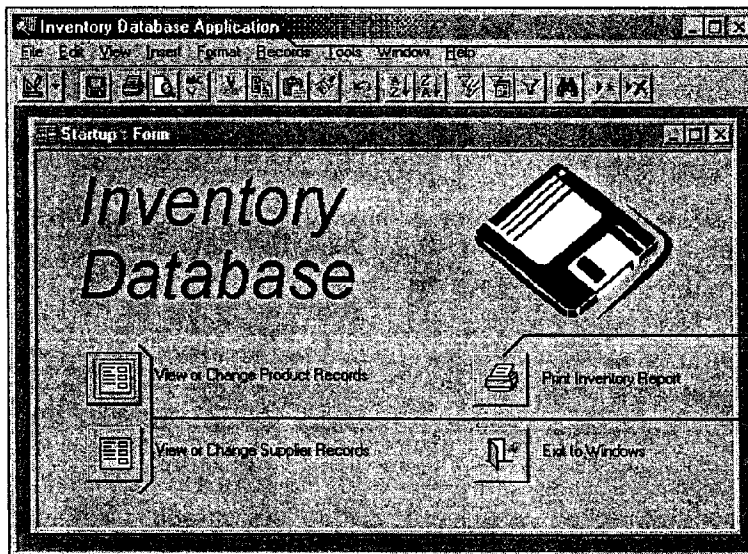
Make a Database Easy for Others to Use

Make it easy for co-workers to use your inventory database by creating a simple startup form that appears each time someone opens the database. You can add buttons to the startup form so that your co-workers can easily open the forms and print the reports they use most frequently. Then, secure your database from unauthorized use by creating a password.

By creating a startup form that appears when someone opens the database application, you can make it easier for your co-workers to get their work done.

Key Features

-  Startup Form
- Command Button Wizard
- Database Passwords



Display your database application's title in the title bar.

Click here to print the inventory report.

Click these buttons to open the forms in your database application.

To complete the steps in this topic you need to have either Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed. You also must create a Product form and an Inventory report as described in "Create a Great-Looking Product Form," page 498, and "Create and Enhance an Inventory Report," page 525.

MS 114254

Part 11 Set Up a Custom Inventory System

Create a Startup Form

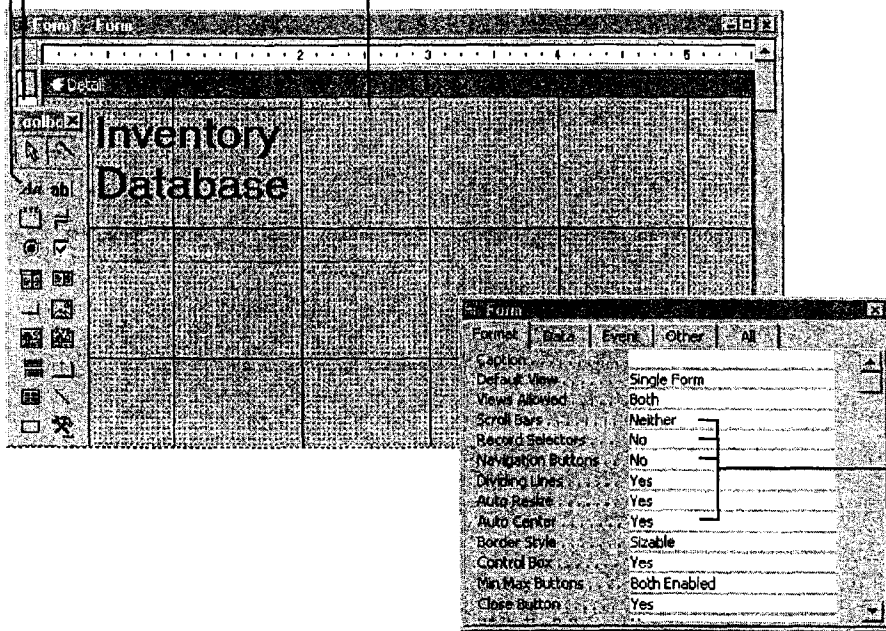
The first step in turning your database into a custom application is to create a *startup* form. This form appears whenever someone opens your database. Although a startup form looks like any database form, it can include special text to identify the database and to welcome users.

To begin creating a startup form, click the **New Object** arrow, and then click **New Form**. Double-click **Design View**, and then create a label on the form.



New Object button

Click the **Label** tool ...
 Form selector
 click where you want to put the label, and then drag to adjust the size of the label box. In the label box, type text.



Click the form selector, and on the **Format** tab, change the default properties so that they match the properties shown here. These changes make the form look like a dialog box.



Want to change the appearance of a label? Click the label to select it, and then select formatting options from the **Formatting** toolbar.

Add a logo or clip art to the startup form Click **Picture** (Insert menu).



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Create Application** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114255

Add Buttons That Open Forms and Reports

While working in form design view, use the Command Button Wizard to add buttons to the form. Users can click them to navigate to tables and forms in the database and to print reports.

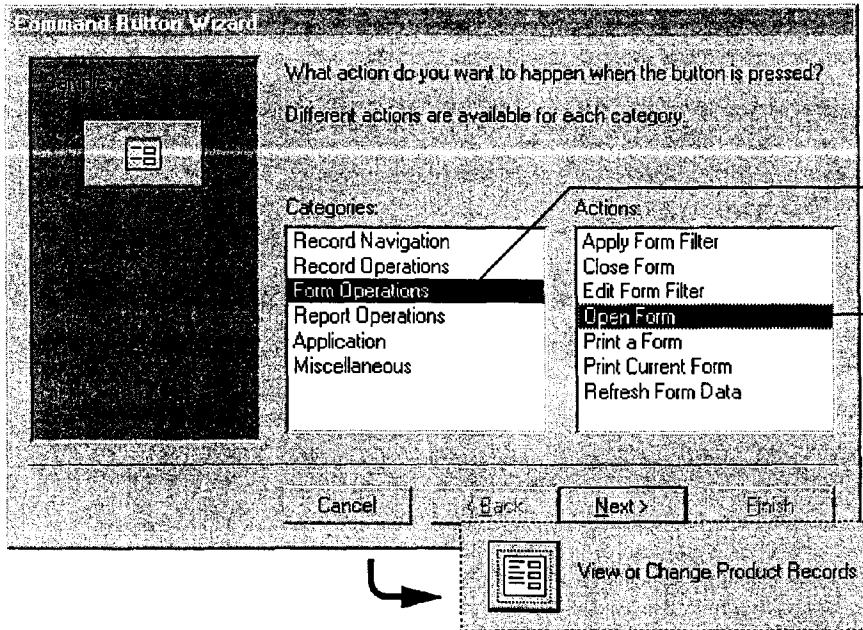
If the toolbox isn't visible, click **Control Toolbox (View menu)** to display it. Click the **Command Button** tool, and then click the **Control Wizards** tool if it isn't already selected. In the Product form, position the button where you want it, and then follow the instructions in the wizard.



Command Button tool



Control Wizards tool



Click the type of action that you want the button to perform ...

... then tell the Command Button Wizard what you want the button to do.

The wizard creates the button for you.



Create command buttons to automate simple tasks You can use the Command Button Wizard to automate other tasks, as well. For more information, see "Add a Command Button That Prints a Report," page 652.

Want to put text instead of a picture on a button? When the Command Button Wizard prompts you to select a text or picture, click **Text**, and then accept the default text or type your own.

Want to add a description for a button? Use the **Label** tool in the **Control Toolbox**.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Create Application** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114256

Part 11 Set Up a Custom Inventory System

Display the Startup Form Automatically

After you create the startup form, have Microsoft Access display the form automatically whenever someone opens your inventory database. Then, customize the database by adding a title to the startup form's title bar, by adding an icon, and by selecting menu bar items. Click **Startup** (Tools menu), and then set options in the **Startup** dialog box.

Select your startup form from the list.

Type a title for your application here.

If you don't want the screen to display the database window or the status bar, clear these check boxes.



Want to bypass the startup form and go directly to the database window? Hold down the SHIFT key when you open your database.

Create Custom Toolbars and Menu

If you want to control which commands are available in your database, or if you want to provide an easy way to run macros or Visual Basic programs, create custom toolbars or menus.

For more information, see “Customize Office,” page 636.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Create Application** in Help.



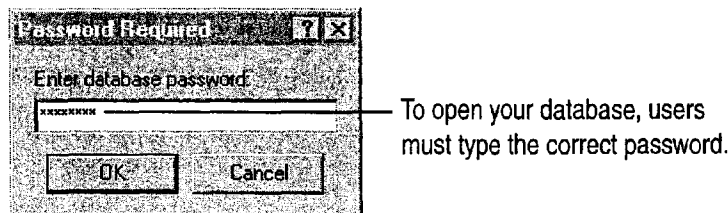
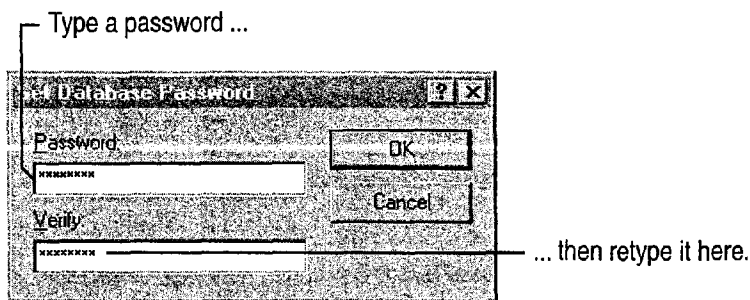
Office Assistant button

MS 114257

Protect Your Database with a Password

If your inventory database contains confidential information, create a password to prevent unauthorized users from opening it.

To create a password, you must open the database for exclusive access. To do so, close the database, click **Open Database (File menu)**, and select your database. Click **Exclusive**, and then click **Open**. After you open the database for exclusive access, click **Security**, click **Set Database Password (Tools menu)**, and then type the password.



For added security, change the password occasionally Click **Security (Tools menu)**, click **Unset Database Password**, and then type a new password.

Need more sophisticated security? You can give each user in your workgroup permission to view or change a different set of objects and data. To set up workgroup permissions, click **Security** and then click **User and Group Permissions (Tools menu)**.

MS 114258

Part 11 Set Up a Custom Inventory System

Next Steps

To	See
See examples of Startup and Main Switchboard forms	Startup and Main Switchboard forms in the Northwind sample database
Create a simple database application by using the Database Wizard	“Track Orders in a Shared Database,” page 427
Learn about Visual Basic programming and read more about creating your own database applications using Microsoft Access	<i>Building Applications with Microsoft Access 97</i> , available directly from Microsoft with the order form provided in your Microsoft Office package

MS 114259

Create and Enhance an Inventory Report

Summarize Inventory Data in a Microsoft Access Report

Business is booming, and as a result you've greatly increased your inventory. To keep track of inventory flow, you want to create a monthly inventory report.

With the Microsoft Access Report Wizard, you can quickly create a polished report that calculates the total units in stock and the percentage of the total made up by each product category. Each month, just open the report to get the latest facts and figures. When you update the database, Microsoft Access automatically updates the report data.

Key Features



Report Wizard

Report Design View

Inventory Report			
Product Name	Units in Stock	Units on Order	Reorder Level
Beverages 17.92% of total units in stock			
Chartreuse Verte	69	0	5
Chang	17	40	25
Guaraná Fantástica	20	0	0
Sasquatch Ale	111	0	15
Steeleye Stout	20	0	15
Chai	39	0	10
Côte de Blaye	17	0	15
Ipoh Coffee	17	10	25
Laughing Lumberjack Lager	52	0	10
Lakkalikööri	57	0	30
Outback Lager	15	10	25
Rhônebräu Klosterbier	125	0	
Total:	559		

To complete the steps in this topic you need Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed. You also need to create the Categories and Products tables by using the steps in "Move a Product List into Microsoft Access," page 493, or by using the Microsoft Access Table Wizard. However, you can use the techniques in this topic to create other Microsoft Access reports.

MS 114260

Begin the Report

Suppose you want to create a report that reflects your current inventory. You can organize the report by product category (such as Beverages), and include each product name, the number of units in stock, the number of units on order, and the product's reorder level. Also, include the total number of units in stock for each category, and the percentage of the total units made up by each category. To retrieve this information from your inventory database and present it in an attractive format, you can use the Report Wizard.

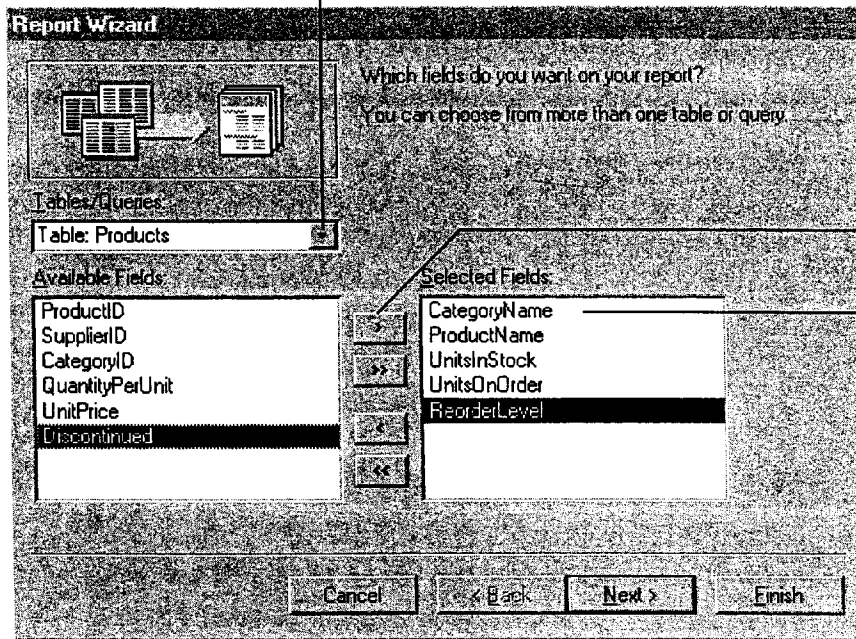
To start the Report Wizard, click the **New Object** arrow, click **Report**, and then double-click **Report Wizard**. Then, follow the instructions in the wizard.



New Object button

Select fields from the Categories and Products tables to create a new report.

Click the arrow, and then select a table. Make sure to select the Categories table first.



Click a field on the left, and then click here to add the field to your report.

Make sure to add the CategoryName field first. That way, the Report Wizard can organize products by category.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Inventory Report** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114261

Calculate Totals

Next, when the wizard prompts you for the name of the field you want to group on, accept the proposed field, **CategoryName**. The following screen displays sort order options. Add **ProductName** to the first sorting box. Then click **Summary Options**, and for the **UnitsInStock** field, click **Sum**. Finally, click **Calculate percent of total for sums**.

When you're finished, follow the instructions in the wizard to choose the style you want for your report, and then name it.

The image shows two overlapping dialog boxes from a software application. The top dialog is titled "Report Wizard" and asks "What sort order and summary information do you want for detail records?". It contains a preview of a report table and two dropdown menus for sorting. The first dropdown is set to "ProductName". The second dropdown is empty. The bottom dialog is titled "Summary Options" and asks "What summary values would you like calculated?". It features a table with columns for "Field", "Sum", "Avg", "Min", and "Max". The "UnitsInStock" field has "Sum" selected. Below the table are radio buttons for "Detail and Summary" and "Summary Only", and a checked checkbox for "Calculate percent of total for sums". Annotations with arrows point to these specific elements.

Click the arrow, select **ProductName** from the list, and then click **Summary Options**.

Click here to calculate the percentage of the total made up by each product category.

Click here to total the number of units in stock.



Want to see category totals without details about individual products?
In the Report Wizard, on the screen that calculates totals and summaries, click **Summary Only**.

MS 114262



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Inventory Report** in Help.



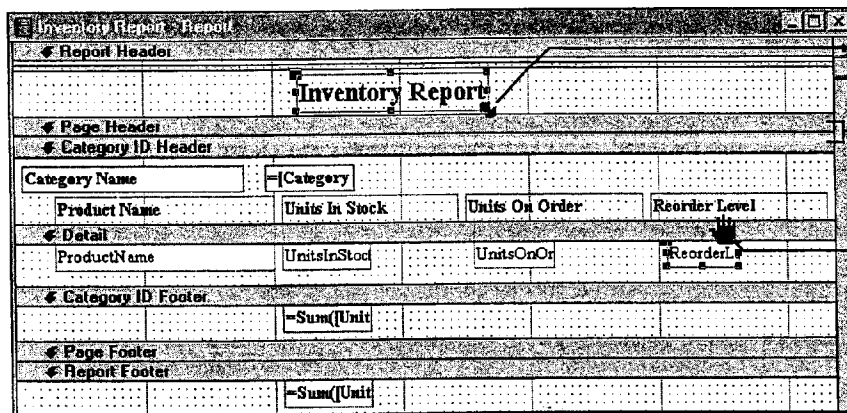
Office Assistant button

Customize the Appearance of Your Report

The Report Wizard automatically displays the report in print preview. After you see how the report will look when it's printed, you can adjust the layout before you print it (for example, you can center the title of the report).

To realign controls in a report, switch to report design view by clicking the **View** arrow and then clicking **Design View**.

In report design view, you see each element of your report on a grid that shows the relative position of that element on the page.



- Click and drag a handle to adjust the size of a control.
- Size a section by placing the pointer on the bottom edge of the section and then dragging it up or down.
- Click and drag a control to reposition it.

Guidelines for Customizing Reports

Format headings so that they stand out Select the text box that contains the category name, and then select formatting options from the **Formatting** toolbar.

Copy a format quickly with the Format Painter Click the control whose format you want to copy, and then click the **Format Painter** button once to copy the format to a single control, or double-click the button to copy the format to multiple controls. Then click each control you want to format. If you're formatting multiple controls, click the **Format Painter** button again to turn off formatting.



Format Painter button

Add labels for the fields in your report If the **Control** toolbox is not visible, click **Control Toolbox (View menu)** to display it, and then click the **Label** tool. Position the pointer where you want the upper left corner of the label to appear, and then click to insert the label box. Type text for the label in the box.



Label tool

MS 114263

Create and Enhance an Inventory Report



See how your layout changes will look when the report is printed
After you finish working in report design view, switch back to print preview by clicking the **Print Preview** button. If you need to make more layout adjustments, click the **Close** button to return to report design view.

Eliminate blank pages Check to see that the combined width of the report and the margins doesn't exceed the paper size selected in the **Page Setup** dialog box.



Print Preview
button



Close button

Next Steps

To	See
Get specific facts about your inventory, such as which products are on order	“Evaluate Sales Performance in a Microsoft Access Database,” page 582

MS 114264

PART 12

Prepare Customer Bids

Contents

Create a Price List 532

Prepare a Customer Quote 539



MS 114265



Getting Results with Microsoft Office 531

Create a Price List

Create a Microsoft Access Report That Helps Sell Your Products

Suppose you own a company known as Northwind Traders, and you want to create a price list that promotes your company and its products. You can store product and price information in a Microsoft Access database, and then use the Report Wizard to produce a professional-looking price list. As prices change, you can update your price list by reprinting the report.


Key Features

-  Report Wizard
-  Report Design View

Product Price List

Beverages

Soft drinks, coffees, teas, beer, and ale



Product Name	Product ID	Quantity Per Unit	Unit Price
Chartreuse verte	39	750 cc per bottle	\$18.00
Chang	2	24 - 12 oz bottles	\$19.00
Garaná Fantástica	24	12 - 355 mL cans	\$4.50
Sasquatch Ale	34	24 - 12 oz bottles	\$14.00
Steeleye Stout	35	24 - 12 oz bottles	\$18.00
Chai	1	10 boxes x 20 bags	\$18.00
Côte de Blaye	38	12 - 75 cl bottles	\$263.50
Ispoh Coffee	43	16 - 500 g tins	\$46.00
Laughing Lumberjack Lager	67	24 - 12 oz bottles	\$14.00
Lakkalikööri	76	500 ml	\$18.00
Outback Lager	70	24 - 355 ml bottles	\$15.00
Röhnbräu Klosterbier	75	24 - 0.5 l bottles	\$7.75
Sir Rodney's Marmalade	20	30 gift boxes	\$81.00

Lakkalik

Outback

Lager

inä Fantástica

in Klosterbier

To complete the steps in this topic you need Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed.

Try it out The example in this topic uses the Northwind database included with Microsoft Access. You can follow the steps in the topic by opening this database, or you can create your own by using the Database Wizard.

MS 114266

Begin the Report

You want your price list to include all the details your customers need to place an order—the product name and number, the quantity per unit, and the unit price—organized by category. When you use the Report Wizard, it's easy to gather and organize the information from your database and to display it in an attractive format.

In the database window, on the **Reports** tab, click **New**. Double-click **Report Wizard**, and then follow the instructions in the wizard. By using the Report Wizard, you can select fields from the tables and queries that contain the information you want to include in the price list. After selecting the information you want to include, select grouping, sorting, and summary options, and a format, style, and title for the report.

Select the Categories table first, and then select the Products table.

For each table, select the fields you want ...

... and then click here to add each field to your report.

When you select the Categories table, make sure to add the CategoryName field first so that the wizard organizes your products by category.



Create a report from data stored in a Microsoft Excel worksheet In Microsoft Excel, click the worksheet, and then click **MS Access Report** (Data menu).



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Price List** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114267

Adjust the Report Layout

The Report Wizard produces an attractive price list, but you might want to move and realign information to reduce the space between items in your list. The wizard automatically displays the report it creates in Print Preview. To change the layout of your price list, click **Report Design View (View menu)** in the open report. You can adjust the layout of a report by resizing a *control* (such as a text box or a label) or by moving it to another position on the report. Each field you select in the wizard is represented by a control on the report.

- If you don't need a control included by the Report Wizard, click the control, and then press DELETE.
- To see how your layout changes will appear in the report, in report design view, click the **View** arrow and then select **Layout Preview**. If you need to make more adjustments, click the **Close Window** button to return to report design view.

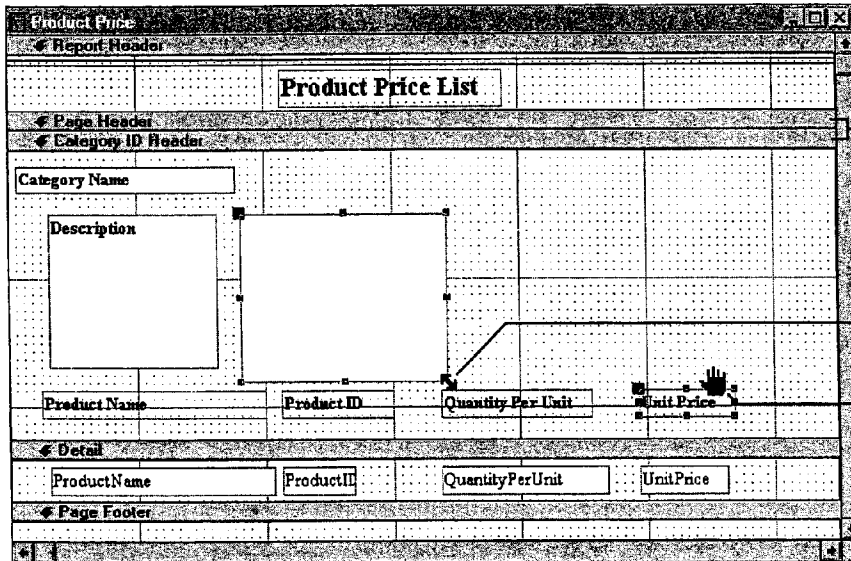


View button



Close Window button

In report design view, you see each element of your report on a grid that shows the relative position of that element on the page.



Size a section by placing the pointer on the bottom edge of the section and then dragging it up or down.

Click and drag a handle to adjust the size of a control.

Click and drag a control to reposition it.

MS 114268

Create a Price List



Customize the report Use the **Formatting** toolbar to change text or add a border, background color, and other effects to a control.

Copy a format from one control to another Select the control with the format you want to copy. Click the **Format Painter** button once to copy the format to one control, or double-click the button to copy the format to several controls. Then click the control(s) you want to format.

Format several controls at once Select the controls you want to format, and then select an option from the **Formatting** toolbar.



Format Painter button



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Price List** in Help.



Office Assistant button

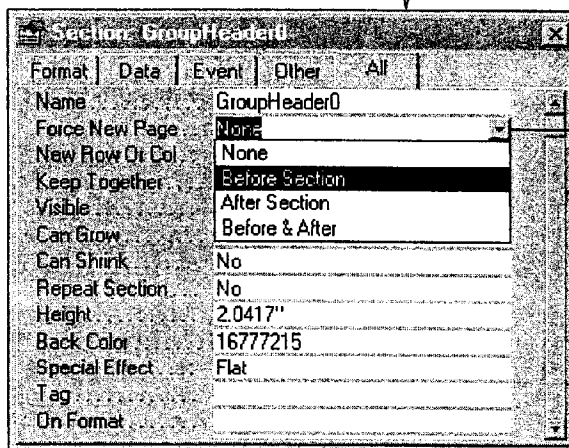
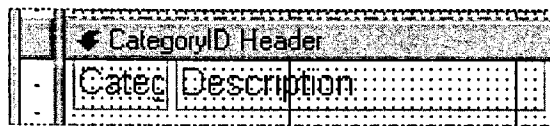
MS 114269

Print One Category Per Page

Now you can make it easier for your customers to find specific products by starting each product category on a new page.

If you're not already working in report design view, click **Report Design View (View menu)**. Double-click the *section selector* that appears to the left of the **CategoryID** section bar to open that section's property sheet. In the **Force New Page** property box, click **Before Section**. To see how this change affects the appearance of the report, click the **Report View** arrow, and then select **Layout Preview**.

Double-click the section selector to open the property sheet for a section.



Click the arrow to display the properties list in the **Force New Page** property box, and then click **Before Section**.



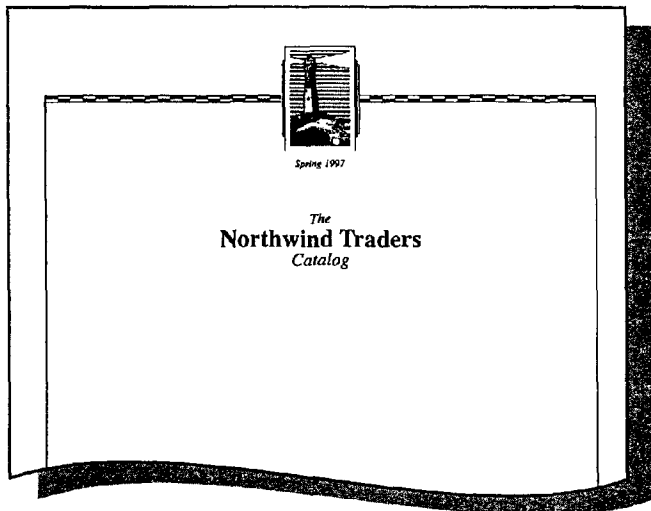
Want to see how the report will look when it's printed? In report design view, click the **Report View** arrow, and then click **Print Preview**.

MS 114270

Add a Cover Sheet to Your Report

If you have a cover sheet saved as a Microsoft Word file, you can use it for your report. In the database window, on the **Reports** tab, click the name of the report, and then click **Design**. Select the **Report Header** section, and then click **Insert Object (Insert menu)**. Click **Create from File**, click **Browse**, and then select the Word file that contains your cover sheet.

To print the cover on a separate page, double-click the section selector to the left of the **Report Header** section bar. In the property sheet, click **All**, click the **ForceNewPage** box, and then click the arrow. Select **After Section** from the list. To make the border of the cover disappear, click the **Format** tab, click in the **BorderStyle** property box, and then select **Transparent** from the list.



Guidelines for Formatting a Cover Sheet in Word

Before you import the cover sheet to Microsoft Access, you need to set page layout options in the document so that its size and orientation fall within the print area of your report. For example, suppose you want to set up your Microsoft Access report to print on 8.5-by-11-inch paper, portrait orientation, with one-inch margins on the top, bottom, left, and right sides.

MS 114271

Part 12 Prepare Customer Bids

In Microsoft Word, click **Page Setup** (**File** menu). On the **Paper Size** tab, click **Portrait**.

- Set the width to 6.5 inches, which is the width of your paper (8.5 inches) minus the sum of the left and right margins (2 inches).
- Set the height to 9 inches, which is the height of your paper (11 inches) minus the sum of the top and bottom margins (2 inches).

For more information on creating cover sheets or importing objects from Word, see “Create Letterhead and Matching Envelopes,” on page 195.

Next Steps

To	See
Create a database by using the Database Wizard	“About Creating and Opening Documents and Databases,” page 48
Create a report from a query	“Evaluate Sales Performance in a Microsoft Access Database,” page 582
Save your report in a format that you can publish to the World Wide Web	“Use Microsoft Access to Retrieve and Publish Data,” page 464


MS 114272


Prepare a Customer Quote

Get Information from a Price List and Calculate Discounts

To get the customer's order, you need to put together a quote that showcases your company's products. You want to tailor the product offerings and discounts to the customer's needs. But you must also consider how much profit your company makes on the order. Microsoft Excel makes it easy for you to put together the information for your quote and present it to your client.

Key Features

-  LOOKUP Functions
- Advanced Filtering



Quote No. 4719101585

One Portals Way, Twin Points, VA 38128
 Phone: 1-206-555-1417 Fax: 1-206-555-5938

SALES QUOTE

Customer

Name: Bergstad's Scandinavian Grocery

Address: 41 S. Marion St., Suite 2

City/State/Zip: Seattle, WA 98104

Phone: 206-555-3453

Date: Dec 8, 1997

Sales Rep: N. Davolio

Accept/Reject: _____

Description	Unit Price	11-50	51-100	101-500
Fish Roe, 12-200 ml jars	\$31.00	\$29.45	\$27.90	\$26.35
White Chocolate, 12-100 g bars <i>20% discount at quantity 101-500</i>	\$18.25	\$15.44	\$14.63	\$13.81

Terms and Conditions

Quote good for 30 days. Orders in excess of 50 units subject to availability.
 Shipment F.O.B. port of Seattle, VA. Terms 2% net 15.

This quote is proprietary and confidential.

Look up prices for the products your customer needs.

Figure discounts that meet your company's profitability requirements.

Can you offer a special discount to make your quote more attractive?

MS 114273

Part 12 Prepare Customer Bids

Look Up Prices

The first step is to get the product and pricing information for your quote. You know your product lines, and you know that prices fluctuate. Your company frequently updates its standard price list.

Here's a fast and easy way to check on prices.

When you specify a product name in cell B1, the VLOOKUP function in cell B3 searches for the product in the price list below.

B3		=VLOOKUP(\$B\$1,price_list,2,FALSE)			
	A	B	C	D	E
1	Select Product Name:	Malaysian Coffee			
2					
3	Quantity:	16 - 500 g tins			
4	Unit Price:	\$ 46.00			
5	Margin:	17%			
6					
7	Product Name	Quantity Per Unit	Unit Price	Margin	
8	Alice Springs Lamb	20 - 1 kg tins	\$ 39.00	40%	
9	Angelo Ravioli	24 - 250 g pkgs.	\$ 19.50	33%	
10	Boston Crab Meat	24 - 4 oz tins	\$ 18.40	32%	
11	Cabrales Cheese	1 kg pkg.	\$ 21.00	15%	
12	Chef Anton's Gumbo Mix	36 boxes	\$ 31.35	28%	
13	Cloudberry Liqueur	500 ml	\$ 18.00	32%	
14	Côte de Blaye (Red Bordeaux)	12 - 75 cl bottles	\$ 263.50	20%	
15	Courdavault Raclette Cheese	5 kg pkg.	\$ 55.00	35%	
16	Fish Roe	12 - 200 ml jars	\$ 31.00	32%	
17	Malaysian Coffee	16 - 500 g tins	\$ 46.00	17%	
18					
19					

The function returns the information for this product from column 2, Quantity Per Unit.

Similar formulas find the price and profit margin information for you.

Cell range named price_list

Use the Name box to define and use range names.

Column 2 of the range named price_list

MS 114274



Use the Paste Function button to enter the VLOOKUP function Click the **Paste Function** button, and then click the **VLOOKUP** function. Follow the instructions on the screen.



Paste Function button

Use the Lookup Wizard The Lookup Wizard is an add-in that helps make using the LOOKUP functions easier. Click **Add-Ins (Tools menu)**, and then select **Lookup Wizard**. If the Lookup Wizard does not appear in the list of add-ins, you'll need to rerun Office Setup. For more information, see "Install and Start Microsoft Office," page 28.

Use named ranges to make your formulas easier to read Select the range you want—for example, A7:D17 in the illustration on the previous page, and then type the name you want to use, such as price_list, in the **Name** box.

Create a drop-down list You could use data validation to create a drop-down list of product names in cell B1. For more information, see "Validate Your Data as You Enter It," page 359.

Is Your Price List Stored in a Database?

Use the Query Wizard to get the data from your company's database into a worksheet. Query can read most database formats and update the data for you as it changes. For more information, see "Get Sales Information from a Database," page 548.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Customer Quote** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114275

Part 12 Prepare Customer Bids

Select Products that Meet Profit Requirements

Do you want to quote only products in a certain price or profitability range? You can filter your price list to show only products that meet your requirements. Just type the column heading and criteria in two unused cells. Then click anywhere in the price list, click **Advanced Filter** (**Data** menu, **Filter** submenu), and specify the criteria range you just typed.

Filter the Margin column to see only the rows for products that return a 25 percent or greater profit.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Select Product Name:	Fish Roe			
2					
3	Quantity:	12 - 200 ml jars			
4	Unit Price:	\$ 31.00			
5	Margin:	32%			
6					
7	Product Name	Quantity Per Unit	Unit Price	Margin	
8	Alice Springs Lamb	20 - 1 kg tins	\$ 39.00	40%	
9	Angelo Ravioli	24 - 250 g pkgs.	\$ 19.50	33%	
10	Boston Crab Meat	24 - 4 oz tins	\$ 18.40	32%	
12	Chef Anton's Gumbo Mix	36 boxes	\$ 31.35	28%	
13	Cloudberry Liqueur	500 ml	\$ 18.00	32%	
15	Courdavault Raclette Cheese	5 kg pkg.	\$ 55.00	35%	
16	Fish Roe	12 - 200 ml jars	\$ 31.00	32%	
18					
19					
20					
21					
22					

Price List



Do you have simple filtering criteria? If you're using uncomplicated criteria, you can use **AutoFilter** (**Data** menu, **Filter** submenu) to filter your list.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Customer Quote** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114276

Extract and Quote the Prices

What discounts can you offer and still turn a profit? Given a base price and profit margin, you can construct a simple model that will answer this question. Using information from your price list, calculate the effects of different discounts. Then copy the product information and discount prices to your customer quote form.

Copy the product name, unit price, and margin from your price list to cells B1, B2, and B3.

	B6	=Unit Price*(100%-A6)				
	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	Product	Fish Roe				
2	Unit Price	\$ 31.00				
3	Margin	32%				
4						
5	Discount	Price	Margin			
6	5%	\$ 29.45	27%			
7	10%	\$ 27.90	22%			
8	15%	\$ 26.35	17%			

In cell B6, multiply the unit price by the discounted percentage in cell A6.

The formulas in these cells subtract the discount percentage from the margin.

Microsoft Excel automatically determines that the name "Unit Price" refers to cell B2, the cell directly to the right of the label of the same name.

Next Steps

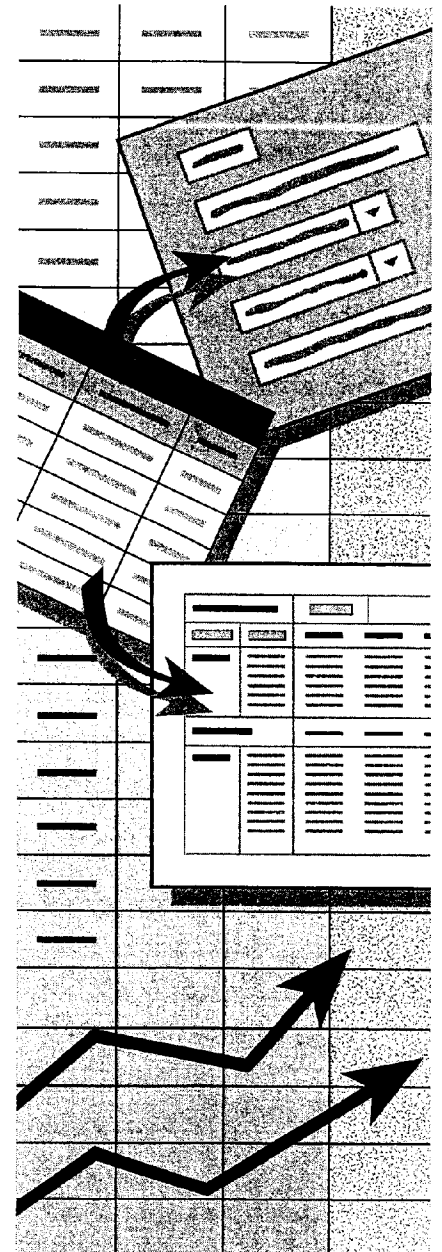
To	See
Use an online form to write up the quote	"Create a Form for Online Invoices," page 250
Fax the quote to your customer	"Create a Fax Cover Sheet and Send a Fax," page 192

MS 114277

Analyze and Report Sales Data

Contents

- What Method Should You Use to Analyze Your Sales Data? 546
- Get Sales Information from a Database 548
- Create a Detailed Sales Report 556
- Create a Sales Summary 563
- Create a Sales Forecast 571
- Create a Sales Summary from a Microsoft Access Database 576
- Evaluate Sales Performance in a Microsoft Access Database 582



MS 114278

Getting Results with Microsoft Office 545

What Method Should You Use to Analyze Your Sales Data?

Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Access provide you with complete flexibility to analyze and summarize data. Regardless of where your data originates, you can use all of the powerful features of both applications to create the summaries, reports, and charts you need.

The next few topics show you how to proceed, depending on where your data is stored initially. Topics in other parts of this book and in Help show you other analysis methods that you can apply to data, sales or otherwise.

For Data Stored in Microsoft Access

Use the following table to decide which topics to read for more information.

If you want to	Do this
Create a detailed report that organizes, subtotals, and summarizes your data	Run the Microsoft Access Report Wizard. For more information, see “Create a Price List,” page 532.
Create a chart that summarizes your data graphically	Run the Microsoft Access Chart Wizard. See “Create a Chart from a Database,” page 272.
Create a Microsoft Excel summary table that lets you change your view of the data dynamically	Create a Microsoft Excel PivotTable. For more information, see “Create a Sales Summary from a Microsoft Access Database,” page 576.
Organize, subtotal, and summarize the data by using Microsoft Excel	In Microsoft Access, click Office Links (Tools menu), and then click Analyze It With MS Excel to export a snapshot of the data to a Microsoft Excel worksheet. Then see “Create a Detailed Sales Report,” page 556. When your data changes, you must repeat these steps for updated results.

MS 114279

What Method Should You Use to Analyze Your Sales Data?

For Data Stored in Microsoft Excel

Use the following table to decide which topics to read for more information.

If you want to	Do this
Create a detailed report that organizes, subtotals, and summarizes your data	Add automatic subtotals to your data. For more information, see “Create a Detailed Sales Report,” page 556.
Create a chart that summarizes your data graphically	Run the Microsoft Excel Chart Wizard. For more information, see “Create a Chart from Worksheet Data,” page 260.
Create a summary table that lets you change your view of the data dynamically	Create a Microsoft Excel PivotTable. For more information, see “Create a Sales Summary,” page 563.
Create a detailed Microsoft Access report without making changes to your original worksheet	Run the Microsoft Access Report Wizard directly from your Microsoft Excel worksheet. Click MS Access Report (Data menu) . This command appears only if the AccessLinks add-in is installed and available. Click Add-Ins (Tools menu) , and then click AccessLinks Add-In . If this option does not appear, rerun Setup and install the Data Access options. For more information, see “Install and Start Microsoft Office,” page 28.

If Your Data Is Stored Somewhere Other Than in Microsoft Access or Microsoft Excel

Both Microsoft Access and Microsoft Excel let you work with data from external sources.

Import files into or link files to your Microsoft Access database

Importing a file copies a snapshot of its contents into your database. Creating a link allows you to work with a file that continues to be maintained in its originating application. For more information, see “Use Office Applications Together,” page 169.

Bring data into your Microsoft Excel worksheet by using Microsoft Query You can analyze external data in Microsoft Excel and refresh the data in your worksheet when it changes. See “Get Sales Information from a Database,” page 548.

MS 114280

Get Sales Information from a Database

Bring Data from Almost Anywhere to Your Microsoft Excel Worksheet



Chances are you sometimes work with data that isn't stored on your computer. For example, your company may compile sales statistics in a database located on a networked mainframe.

Out of mountains of detailed data in the corporate database, extract just what is relevant to your work by using a *query*—a method of extracting specific data from a database. Then you can use familiar spreadsheet analysis tools on that data, without retyping it.

Select just the data you need, and return it to Microsoft Excel for further analysis.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Last Name	Order Date	Order Amount	Product Name	Category Name
2	Suyama	5/12/97 0:00	135	Alice Mutton	Meat/Poultry
3	Callahan	5/15/97 0:00	1316.95	Boston Crab Meat	Seafood
4	Callahan	5/17/97 0:00	498.18	Carnarvon Tigers	Seafood
5	Leverling	5/18/97 0:00	3194.2	Thuringer Rostbratwurst	Meat/Poultry
6	Callahan	5/23/97 0:00	87.2	Konbu	Seafood
7	Peacock	5/24/97 0:00	1405	Perth Pasties	Meat/Poultry
8	Suyama	5/31/97 0:00	589.05	Carnarvon Tigers	Seafood
9	Suyama	6/1/97 0:00	589.05	Inlagd Sill	Seafood
10	Suyama	6/1/97 0:00	1057.6	Boston Crab Meat	Seafood
11	Leverling	6/2/97 0:00	560.4	Jack's New England Clai	Seafood
12	Peacock	6/5/97 0:00	192.1	Carnarvon Tigers	Seafood

Key Features

-  Microsoft Query
-  Query Wizard


Before you start you need to install and enable Microsoft Query and the correct Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) driver for your data source. If you chose the Minimum or Typical installation, you need to run Setup again to install Microsoft Query. See your database manager to find out which ODBC driver you need.

MS 114281

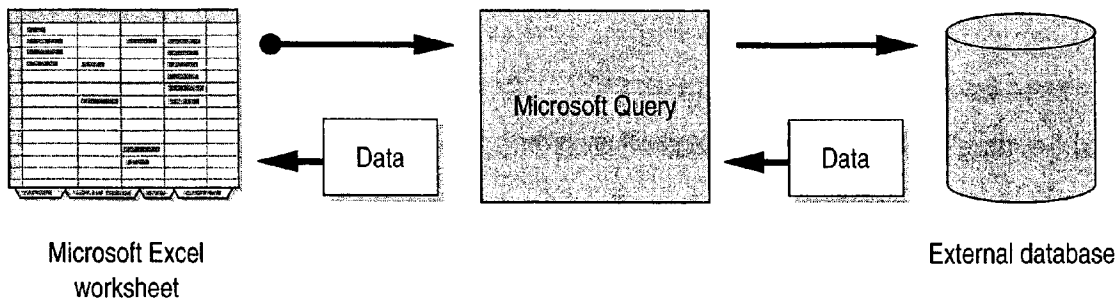
Set Up a Link to Your Database

The first time you get the external data, you need to open a new workbook and set up a connection to your database: Starting with a blank worksheet, click **Create New Query (Data menu, Get External Data submenu)** to define your database as a *data source*. A data source can be a database file, a Microsoft Excel workbook, or a text file. When you name a new data source, you associate your database with one of the ODBC drivers installed on your machine.

In the **Choose Data Source** dialog box, make sure the **Use the Query Wizard to create/edit queries** check box is selected. Select **New Data Source**, click **OK**, and then go through the four steps in the **Create a New Data Source** dialog box.

 For Help on dialog box options, click this button and then click the option.

You use Microsoft Query both to contact your external database and to return the data to your worksheet.



Important Each data source has different requirements. For example, your data source might require you to enter a password. For information on these requirements, contact the manager of the database.



Run Web queries Gather information from locations on the World Wide Web, or from your company's intranet. Click **Run Web Query (Data menu, Get External Data submenu)**.

MS 114282

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

Need to Get Data from Different Databases?

You can work with just about any popular mainframe or microcomputer database format. You can open dBASE .dbf files directly into Microsoft Excel worksheets. Or, by using the method described in this topic, you can use ODBC drivers to tap databases like Microsoft Access, SQL Server, FoxPro, and Paradox.

Missing the driver you need? Check with Microsoft, because new ones frequently become available. Your database vendor also might know about additional drivers. If you have Internet access, you can check the Microsoft Web site by clicking **Microsoft on the Web (Help menu)**.

When all else fails See whether you can get a text-only version of the data. Import the text file into Microsoft Excel by clicking **Open (File menu)** and then selecting **Text Files** from the **Files of type** list.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Get Sales Information** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114283

Get the Data from the Database

The Query Wizard is the best way to create simple queries in Microsoft Excel. The wizard guides you through the process of setting up a query by listing the *database tables* and the data they contain. Each table is a grid much like a worksheet. Columns are fields (categories); rows are data records.

Suppose you want to know how many orders each salesperson is getting for each product category. Find the columns you want in the **Tables and Columns Available** list, and then add them to the **Columns Selected** list.

Click here to expand the table name to show the columns it contains.

Click here to add the selected column name to the **Columns Selected** list.

Select a column name and click these buttons to change the order of columns.



If your query is very complex you can bypass the Query Wizard and use Microsoft Query instead. In the **Create a New Data Source** dialog box, clear the **Use Query Wizard to create/edit queries** check box. For more information, see "For More Power, Use Microsoft Query," page 554.

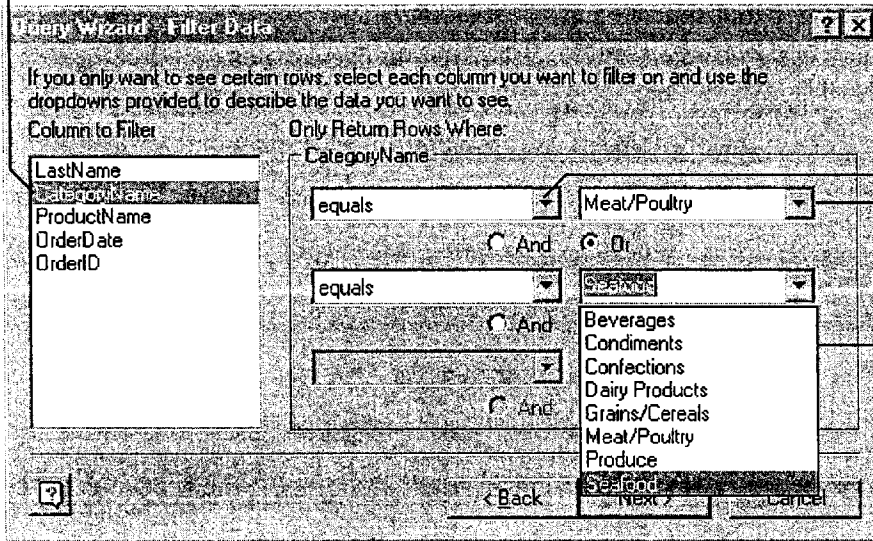
MS 114284

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

Filter the Data and Return It to the Worksheet

Your database might have more records than the 65,535-row limit of your worksheet. You'll want to exclude data you don't need, such as products tracked by other sales managers.

Click the name of the column you want to filter.



Click here to select an operator from the list.

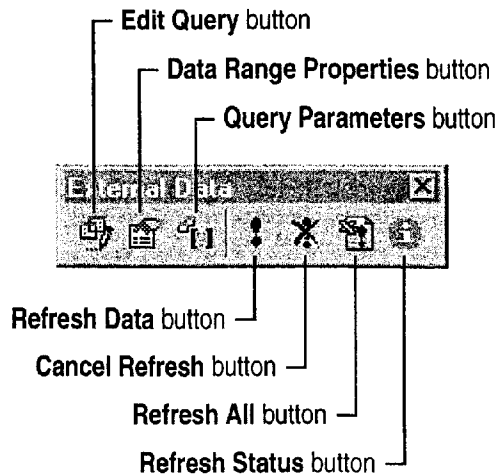
Database records containing the value you select here are returned to the worksheet.

Sort it out The next step of the Query Wizard, the **Sort Order** dialog box, allows you to specify the order in which you want the data sorted before it is returned to the worksheet.

MS 114285



Check the status of your query Returning data to your worksheet might take awhile, depending on the size of the database and the complexity of your query. Click the **Refresh Status** button on the **External Data** toolbar, which appears automatically after you finish your query.



Try it out If you have Microsoft Access, you can query the Northwind sample database. The example illustrated here uses the Northwind database as the data source.

Save Your Queries

Click **Save Query** in the **Finish** dialog box of the Query Wizard if you want to run the same query again later. Saved database queries appear on the **Queries** tab of the **Choose Data Source** dialog box, or appear when you click **Run Database Query (Data menu)**.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Get Sales Information** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114286

For More Power, Use Microsoft Query

If you want to go beyond the capabilities of the Query Wizard and employ complex queries and parameters to extract data from your database, use Microsoft Query.

Click **Create New Query** (**Data** menu). In the **Choose Data Source** dialog box, make sure that the **Use the Query Wizard to create/edit queries** check box is cleared.

Select your data source, and then click **OK** to display the **Add Tables** dialog box, in which you specify the database tables you want to use.

Drag to the lower part of the Query window each field that has data you want.

If you want to narrow even further the list of data returned to the worksheet, click **Add Criteria** (**Criteria** menu). Select a database field, operator, and target value, and then click **Add** for each criterion you want to add.

Click **Return Data** when you're ready to return the data to your Microsoft Excel worksheet for further analysis.

For more information, click **Microsoft Query Help** (**Help** menu) while Microsoft Query is active.

The Query window lets you view and select external data.

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Query window with four tables: EMPLOYEES, ORDERS, PRODUCTS, and CATEGORIES. The EMPLOYEES table has fields: Employee ID, Extension, First Name, Hire Date, Home Phone, Last Name. The ORDERS table has: Customer ID, Employee ID, Freight, Order Amount, Order Date. The PRODUCTS table has: Category ID, Discontinued, English Name, Product ID, Product Name. The CATEGORIES table has: Category ID, Description, Picture. Lines connect the Order Amount field in ORDERS to the Product Name field in PRODUCTS, and the Product Name field in PRODUCTS to the Category Name field in CATEGORIES. Below the tables is a data grid with the following data:

Last Name	Order Date	Order Am	Product Name	Category Name
Suyama	1997-05-12 00:00:00	135	Alice Mutton	Meat/Poultry
Callahan	1997-05-15 00:00:00	1316.95	NuNuCa Nuß-Nougat-Creme	Confections
Callahan	1997-05-15 00:00:00	1316.95	Boston Crab Meat	Seafood
Callahan	1997-05-15 00:00:00	1316.95	Raclette Courdavault	Dairy Products
Callahan	1997-05-15 00:00:00	1316.95	Wimmers gute Semmelknödel	Grains/Cereals
Leverling	1997-05-16 00:00:00	731.8	Gorgonzola Telino	Dairy Products
Leverling	1997-05-16 00:00:00	731.8	Chartreuse verte	Beverages

MS 114287

Next Steps

To	See
Format the data	“Make Your Microsoft Excel Worksheet Look Great,” page 148
Analyze the data	“Create a Sales Summary,” page 563

MS 114288

Getting Results with Microsoft Office 555

Create a Detailed Sales Report

Insert Subtotals on Your Detail Worksheet

Do you have detailed data and want to see totals? For example, suppose you receive information about orders as each is filled over the course of several months. You might need to calculate the total sales for each region and the total product sales across the regions. Microsoft Excel can rapidly organize and sum up this kind of data for you.

Key Features



Sorting

Subtotals

Grouping and Outlining

Your order information is compiled day by day ... but you need totals by region.

	A	B	C	D
1	Date	Product	Region	Amount
2	12-May-97	Produce	UK	135.00
3	15-May-97	Produce	Spain	1,316.05
4	16-May-97	Dairy	Sweden	73.00
5	18-May-97	Produce	Italy	3,194.00
6	22-May-97	Dairy	Norway	173.00
7	23-May-97	Grain	Sweden	87.00
8	24-May-97	Grain	Germany	1,408.00
9	25-May-97	Dairy	France	1,171.00
10	26-May-97	Produce	Denmark	1,530.00
11	31-May-97	Produce	Netherlands	595.05
12	12-Jun-97	Grain	Spain	1,078.00
13	13-Jun-97	Produce	Sweden	87.00

Region	Amount
Denmark Total	4,101.50
Finland Total	1,103.50
France Total	1,171.00
Germany Total	5,606.38
Italy Total	7,265.26
Netherlands Total	595.05
Norway Total	6,766.59
Spain Total	11,773.00
Sweden Total	10,027.54
UK Total	10,911.71
Grand Total	\$ 59,321.53
Number of Grain Orders	24
Total Grain Orders	\$ 16,900.87

With Microsoft Excel you can get the totals easily, without tedious calculation or complex programming.

MS 114289

Create a Detailed Sales Report

Arrange the Data by Product and Region

First group together the data you want to total. Click **Sort (Data menu)**, and sort the data by region.

Sorting both alphabetizes the regions and groups the orders for each region together.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Date	Product	Region	Amount			
2	9-Jun-97	Dairy	Denmark	1,148.00			
3	26-May-97	Produce	Denmark	1,530.00			
4	7-Jun-97	Produce	Denmark	1,423.50			
5	5-Jun-97	Dairy	Finland	192.10			
6	12-Jul-97	Dairy	Finland	351.00			
7	2-Jun-97	Grain	Finland	560.40			
8	17-May-97	Dairy	Germany	498.18			
9	30-May-97	Dairy	Germany	470.00			
10	7-Jul-97	Dairy	Germany	747.00			
11	24-May-97	Grain	Germany	1,405.00			
12	30-May-97	Grain	Germany	470.00			
13	30-May-97	Produce	Germany	470.00			
14	26-Jun-97	Produce	Germany	17.40			
15							



You don't have to select the list before sorting Just click any cell in the column you want to sort, and then sort. Microsoft Excel automatically determines where your data starts and ends. For more information about setting up lists that are easy to sort, see "Create a Business Contact List in Microsoft Excel," page 353.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Subtotals** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114290

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

Subtotal Each Region

With regional data grouped together, you can total each region's sales in a single operation. Click **Subtotals (Data menu)**. In the **Subtotal** dialog box, at each change in region, use the **SUM** function, and add a subtotal to the **Amount** column.

Outline symbols show how your data is grouped.

With one command, you can add a total for each region.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Date	Product	Region	Amount	
2	9-Jun-97	Dairy	Denmark	1,148.00	
3	26-May-97	Produce	Denmark	1,530.00	
4	7-Jun-97	Produce	Denmark	1,423.50	
5			Denmark Total	\$ 4,101.50	
6	5-Jun-97	Dairy	Finland	192.10	
7	12-Jul-97	Dairy	Finland	351.00	
8	2-Jun-97	Grain	Finland	560.40	
9			Finland Total	\$ 1,103.50	
10	25-May-97	Dairy	France	1,171.00	
89	3-Jul-97	Produce	UK	909.91	
90	6-Jul-97	Produce	UK	850.50	
91			UK Total	\$ 10,911.71	
92			Grand Total	\$ 59,321.53	

You can also calculate the grand total at the end of the list.



Want to subtotal selected parts of your data? Filter the data first. For example, you might want to see subtotals for only some of the regions. By clicking **AutoFilter (Data menu, Filter submenu)**, you can filter the regions and then calculate subtotals. For more information, see "Zero In on the Contacts You Want," page 357.

MS 114291

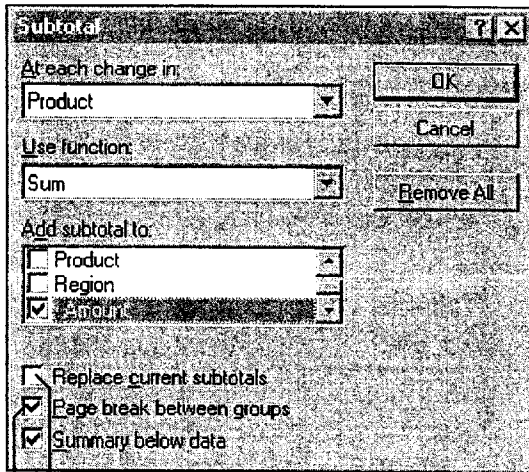
More Power

Want to total product sales within each region? You can add product totals in addition to the regional totals and grand total. First click **Sort (Data menu)** to sort the data by two columns: Sort by region, and then by product. Then create subtotals for the regions.

Create nested subtotals Repeat the **Subtotals** command at each change in product, but don't replace the current (regional) subtotals.

Add averages, counts, and other summaries The **Use function** list in the **Subtotal** dialog box gives you a choice of functions you can use to summarize your data.

Print each subtotaled group on a separate page If you want, Microsoft Excel will automatically insert page breaks when you create the totals.



To nest the subtotals, clear this check box the second time you subtotal.

Check here to print each subtotaled group on a separate page.

MS 114292

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

View the Summary Without the Detail

In a long list of data, it's inconvenient to have to scroll to see the subtotals. When you add subtotals, your worksheet is outlined for you automatically. Outlining lets you choose the level of detail to view, so you can show exactly the information you need.

When you click here, you see only the region totals.
 Click here to view the detail again ...

	C	D	E
1	Region	Amount	
5	Denmark Total	\$ 4,101.50	
9	Finland Total	\$ 1,103.50	
12	France Total	\$ 1,171.00	
24	Germany Total	\$ 5,606.38	
29	Italy Total	\$ 7,265.26	
31	Netherlands Total	\$ 595.05	
41	Norway Total	\$ 6,766.59	
52	Spain Total	\$ 11,773.00	
76	Sweden		
91	UK Total		
92	Grand Total		

... or click to display the detail for a particular region.

	C	D	E
1	Region	Amount	
5	Denmark Total	\$ 4,101.50	
9	Finland Total	\$ 1,103.50	
12	France Total	\$ 1,171.00	
24	Germany Total	\$ 5,606.38	
25	Italy	3,194.20	
26	Italy	438.43	
27	Italy	3,194.20	
28	Italy	438.43	
29	Italy Total	\$ 7,265.26	
31	Netherlands Total	\$ 595.05	
41	Norway Total	\$ 6,766.59	
52	Spain Total	\$ 11,773.00	
76	Sweden Total	\$ 10,027.54	
91	UK Total	\$ 10,911.71	
92	Grand Total	\$ 59,321.53	



Use a PivotTable instead of outlining For more information, see "Create a Sales Summary," page 563.

Hide columns that you don't want to see Select a column to hide, and then click **Hide** (Format menu, Column submenu).



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Subtotals** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114293

Count Orders for a Product Across Regions

Suppose you also want to know how many orders were filled for a particular product, but the products sell across regions, so the data isn't grouped together. With the COUNTIF function, you can count the rows that contain a particular product name.

With the **Paste Function** button, it's easy to set this up.



Paste Function button

In this example, the formula in cell D94 counts the number of rows that contain the word "Grain" in column B.

Enter the range of cells that contains the product names.

For the criteria, type the name of the product that you want to count.

	A	B	C	D	E
89	3-Jul-97	Produce	UK	909.91	
90	6-Jul-97	Produce	UK	850.50	
91			UK Total	\$ 10,911.71	
92			Grand Total	\$ 59,321.53	
93					
94			Number of Grain Orders	24	

Your COUNTIF formula counts only the rows for grain orders.



Want to know which regions are over quota? COUNTIF can compare each row with the amount of your sales quota. For example, if the quota is \$3,000 per region, you could use the following formula:

```
=COUNTIF(D2:D90, ">3000").
```

Want to count empty cells too? Use the COUNTBLANK function to calculate the total number of empty cells in a range.

Total the orders for each product The SUMIF function adds only the amounts for the criteria you specify in the formula. For example, you could calculate the total grain orders by using the following formula:

```
=SUMIF(B3:B90, "Grain", D3:D90).
```

Find errors in formulas quickly If a cell in which you've entered a formula displays an error message, such as DIV/0!, Microsoft Excel can show you where the error is. Use the **Auditing** toolbar. Click **Show Auditing Toolbar** (**Tools** menu, **Auditing** submenu) to find the source of the error.

MS 114294

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

Next Steps

To	See
Create a chart	“Create a Chart from Worksheet Data,” page 260
Chart regional sales on a map	“Display Data on a Map,” page 287



Create a Sales Summary

Use PivotTables to Summarize Sales Data

Chances are, you have all the detailed data you need to make decisions, but it isn't always presented in a way that makes it easy to draw conclusions from it. For example, suppose what you want is the big picture: How is each product selling? Who is selling the most of each product?

From the same data, you can create several instant summaries, called *PivotTables*, to answer your questions. If you work with sales figures or other similar business data, Microsoft Excel can rapidly produce the summaries you want from the details you have.

Key Features

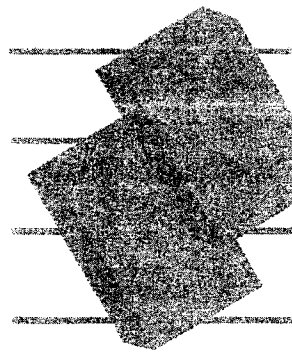
-  PivotTable Wizard
-  Chart Wizard

Given the date, amount, and product for each order ...

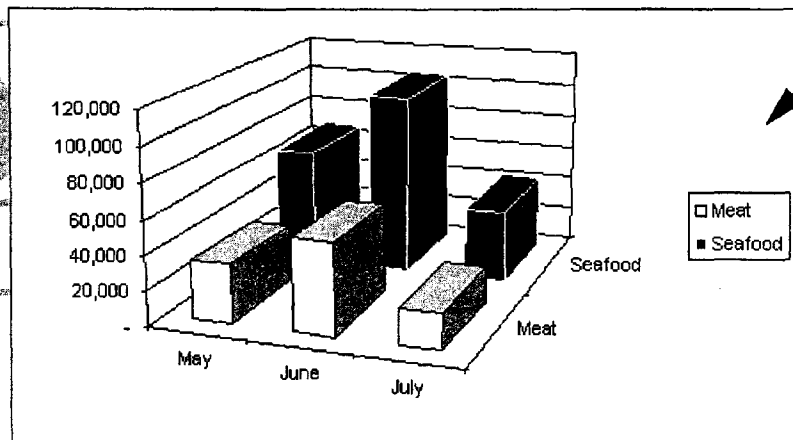
	A	B	C	D	E
1	Name	Order Amount	Order Date	Product	
2	Annabella Dodsworth	\$ 135.00	12-May-97	Meat	
3	Michael Suyama	\$ 1,316.95	15-May-97	Meat	
4	Andrew Fuller	\$ 731.80	16-May-97	Seafood	
5	Michael Suyama	\$ 498.18	17-May-97	Meat	
6	Andrew Fuller				
7	Linda Callahan				
8	Michael Suyama				

... summarize how each product is selling by creating a PivotTable — no formulas to enter.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Sum of Order Amount	Order Date			
2	Product	May	Jun	Jul	Grand Total
3	Meat	33,905.34	52,824.09	21,246.03	\$107,975.46
4	Seafood	67,810.68	105,648.18	42,492.06	\$215,950.92
5	Grand Total	\$101,716.02	\$158,472.27	\$63,738.09	\$323,926.38



You can also compare the results visually, with a chart.



MS 114296

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

What Information Is Buried in Your Data?

Your company probably keeps a separate record describing each order processed. Scanning the list shows hundreds of orders just for the products you are responsible for tracking. You want a fast way to see how much each representative has sold of each product.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Name	Order Amount	Order Date	Product	
2	Annabella Dodsworth	\$ 135.00	12-May-97	Meat	}
3	Michael Suyama	\$ 1,316.95	15-May-97	Meat	
4	Andrew Fuller	\$ 731.80	16-May-97	Seafood	
5	Michael Suyama	\$ 498.18	17-May-97	Meat	
6	Andrew Fuller	\$ 3,194.20	18-May-97	Seafood	
7	Linda Callahan	\$ 173.40	22-May-97	Seafood	
8	Michael Suyama	\$ 87.20	23-May-97	Seafood	
9	Janice Leverling	\$ 1,405.00	24-May-97	Meat	
10	Andrew Fuller	\$ 1,171.00	25-May-97	Meat	
11	Michael Suyama	\$ 1,530.00	26-May-97	Seafood	
12	Michael Suyama	\$ 470.00	30-May-97	Meat	

You have a row of facts for every order.

There's too much detail to see what's going on; you want total orders per sales rep, not a list of every order.

You're interested in monthly totals rather than day-by-day sales.

Guidelines: Setting Up Data for a PivotTable

Label your columns PivotTables use your column labels to cross-tabulate your data. For example, you can summarize orders by product or by sales representative.

Use one worksheet row for each record A PivotTable summarizes data stored in rows.

Make sure any dates are in date format Select any column with dates, and click **Cells (Format menu)**. On the **Number** tab, click the **Date** category, and then select the date type you want.

If a column contains repeating information, spell each entry the same way each time Entries that are the same, such as entries for seafood or meat in a product column, can be grouped together automatically in the PivotTable.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Sales Summary** in Help.




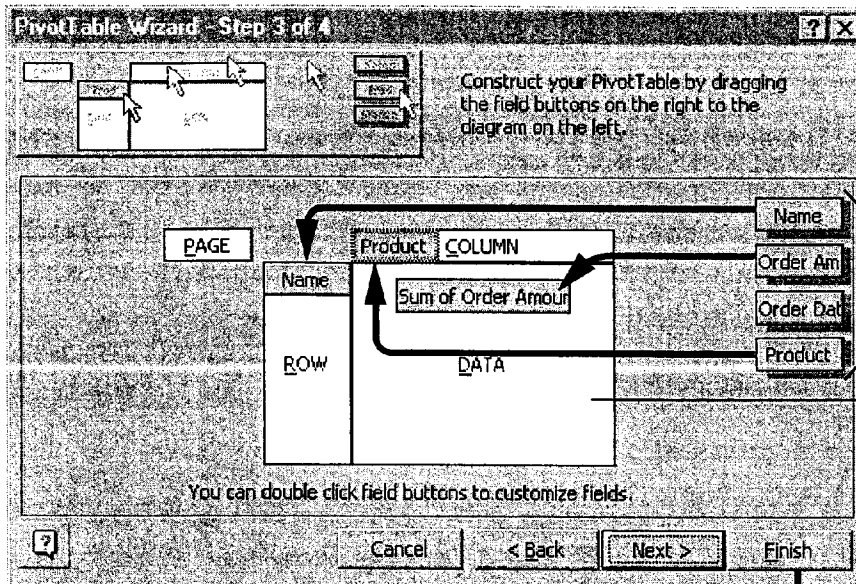
Office Assistant button

MS 114297

Who Is Selling the Most Product?

A PivotTable can answer this question in a flash. Select a cell in your source data. Click **PivotTable Report (Data menu)**, and then follow the instructions in the wizard.

 For Help on dialog box options, click this button and then click the option.



The wizard lists your column labels as *field buttons*.

To summarize the sales of each product by sales rep, drag the field buttons into position. Only fields containing numbers can be dragged to the DATA area.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Sum of Order Amount	Product			
2	Name	Meat	Seafood	Grand Total	
3	Andrew Fuller	27,086.64	54,173.28	81,259.92	
4	Annabella Dodsworth	22,280.34	44,560.68	66,841.02	
5	Janice Leverling	20,932.35	41,864.70	62,797.05	
6	Linda Callahan	20,658.00	41,316.00	61,974.00	
7	Michael Suyama	17,018.13	34,036.26	51,054.39	
8	Grand Total	\$107,975.46	\$215,950.92	\$323,926.38	

Sales Summary

The finished result cross-tabulates and totals the sales for you.



Add commas or currency signs, or adjust the decimal places Select a number in the DATA area of the PivotTable. On the **PivotTable** toolbar (which appears automatically when a PivotTable is active) click **Field**, and then click the **Number** button to apply number formatting.



PivotTable Field button

To pivot the table, just drag the gray field buttons You don't need to start the PivotTable Wizard again to change the layout of your summary. For example, you could switch the positions of the **Name** and **Product** buttons in the PivotTable to view the products in the rows and the sales representatives in the columns.

MS 114298

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

How Well Are Products Selling over Time?

To review product sales, use the PivotTable Wizard to create a PivotTable showing the sales performance of each product (ROW area) by order date (COLUMN area). If this view still has too much detail and too many columns to see at once, you'll want to see monthly totals instead of daily details. A PivotTable can quickly group the dates by month.

When you run the PivotTable Wizard to create a different summary, first select the **Another PivotTable** option in step 1. Then, select the **New worksheet** option in step 4. Because Microsoft Excel reuses the data from your first PivotTable, your workbook stays smaller and the changes you make to your source data are reflected faster in your PivotTables.

The **Group** command lets you group dates automatically by weeks, months, quarters, or years.

Sum of Order Amount	Order Date				
Product	12-May-97	15-May-97	16-May-97	17-May-97	18-May-97
Meat	405	3950.85	2195.4	1494.54	9582.6
Seafood	810	7901.7	4390.8	2989.08	19165.2
Grand Total	1215	11852.55	6586.2	4483.62	28747.8

Select this button, and then click **Group (Data menu, Group and Outline submenu)**.

Product Summary



Dates are now grouped by months.

Sum of Order Amount	Order Date				
Product	May	Jun	Jul	Grand Total	
Meat	33905.34	52824.09	21246.03	107975.46	
Seafood	67810.68	105648.18	42492.06	215950.92	
Grand Total	101716.02	158472.27	63738.09	323926.38	

Product Summary



Select a field button when you click a field button, the entire field is selected automatically. To select the button without selecting the entire field, click again.



Update automatically When you make changes to the original data, your PivotTables can be updated automatically and can grow and expand. On the **PivotTable** toolbar, click **Options (PivotTable menu)**, and then click **Refresh on open**. Or you can click the **Refresh Data** button on the **PivotTable** toolbar at any time.



Refresh Data button

Make a PivotTable directly from external data When you use data outside your worksheet, your PivotTable can be updated automatically when the data changes. If you have Microsoft Query installed with the appropriate ODBC drivers to access external data sources, select the **External data source** option in step 1 of the wizard. For more information on installing Microsoft Query, see “Get Sales Information from a Database,” page 548.

Add calculated fields and items You can add calculated fields and items to your PivotTables. Select a field or item in your PivotTable. On the **PivotTable** toolbar, click **Formulas (PivotTable menu)**, and then click **Calculated Field** or **Calculated Item**.

MS 114300

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

Page Fields: Another Way to Group Information

A single PivotTable can generate several related reports by using *page fields*. A page field lets you display your data in three dimensions.

For example, you could edit the Sales by Product PivotTable to use the Name column as a page field. This field lets you view the sales by product for each sales representative, or for all representatives combined.

Click here to view the summary for each salesperson, or for all combined.

Name	Linda Callahan	
Sum of Order Amount	Order Date	
Product	May	Jun
Meat	520.20	6,337.20
Seafood	1,040.40	12,674.40
Grand Total	1,560.60	19,011.60

As you change the salesperson, the amounts change to show that salesperson's results.

For PivotTables with many fields, page fields are a great way to keep your tables compact and readable.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Sales Summary** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114301

Compare Sales Results Graphically

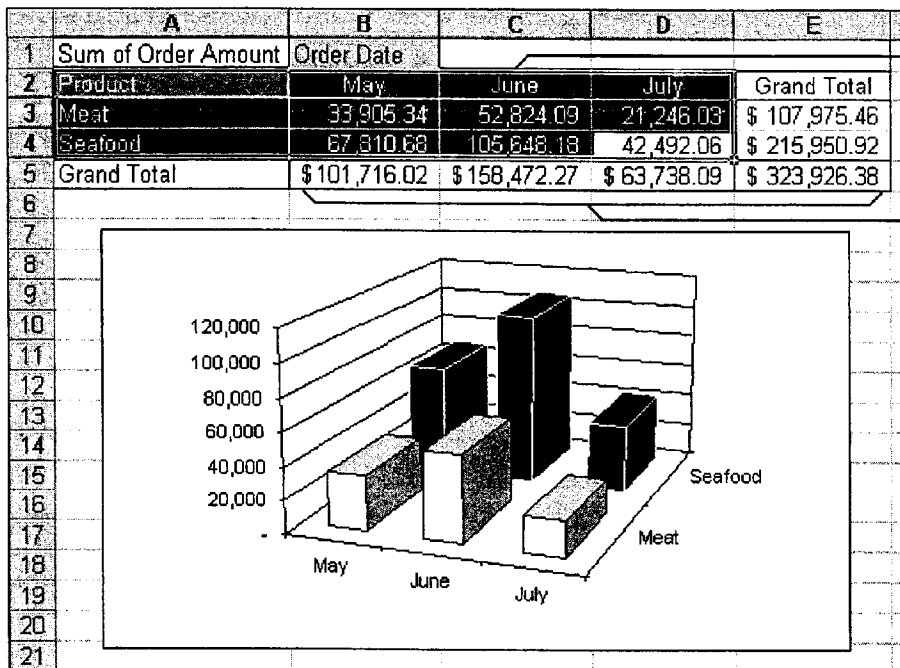
Your product summary lets you consider the totals, but there's a better way to compare the two product lines. You can create a chart from a PivotTable as you would from any data. As you make changes to the PivotTable or refresh the underlying data, the chart is updated too.

To create a chart, first select the entire PivotTable, and then use the Chart Wizard to select the options you want. For more information, see "Create a Chart from Worksheet Data," page 260.



Chart Wizard button

A column chart compares data over time, showing variations.



Click anywhere in the PivotTable, and then run the Chart Wizard.

In step 2 of the Chart Wizard, select the data and labels, omitting the totals.

Select data that includes a field button You can select data such as cell A2 in the illustration above: On the **PivotTable** toolbar, click **Select (PivotTable menu)**, and make sure the **Enable Selection** button is not pressed in. Then drag from the lower-right to the upper-left corner to select the data you want.



Is your sales data broken down geographically? You can view where your sales are concentrated on a map of your region or country. For more information, see "Display Data on a Map," page 287.

MS 114302

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

Next Steps

To

See

Forecast future sales based on your recent results

“Create a Sales Forecast,” page 571


MS 114303

Create a Sales Forecast

You collect and analyze sales figures not just to see how you're doing, but in the hope of predicting future results. What are the trends in your recent sales, and how can you expect them to affect future sales?

With Microsoft Excel forecasting functions, you can apply sophisticated statistical analysis techniques to your data. And you don't have to be a statistician or study involved mathematics to create realistic sales projections. You can also use these techniques to project expenses, inventory requirements, stock prices, and other business trends.

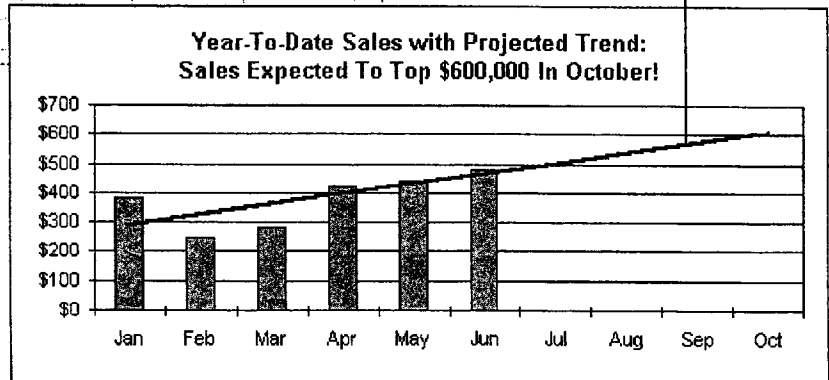
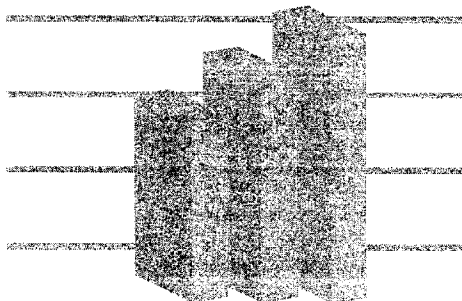
Key Features

-  FORECAST Function
- TREND Function
- Trendlines in Charts

Forecast sales one month ahead, or several months.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Projected Sales, Second Half of 1997				in thousands of dollars		
2							
3	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec	
4	498.07	532.75	567.44	602.12	636.81	671.50	
5							
6							

Figure the sales trend and show it graphically. See when you're likely to reach your goals.



MS 114304

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

Forecast Next Month's Sales

To predict next month's sales based on the results in recent months, use the FORECAST function. The **Paste Function** button makes it easy to enter the formula.



Paste Function button

Double-click a cell, and then click the **Paste Function** button.

Next month

Your sales totals

The months for which you have sales figures

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	Month	Sales	Product 1					
2	1		322.00					
3	2		214.00					
4	3		244.00					
5	4		356.00					
6	5		375.00					
7	6		410.00					
8	7		=FORECAST(A8,B2:B7,A2:A7)					
9								
10								
11								

FORECAST

X: A8 = 7

Known Y's: B2:B7 = {322;214;244;356;375;410}

Known X's: A2:A7 = {1;2;3;4;5;6}

Result: = 423.6666667

Returns a value along a linear trend.

X is the data point for which you want to predict a value.

Click for more information. [?] Formula result = 423.67 [OK] [Cancel]

The resulting forecast for next month



Learn more about functions If you want more detail than the **Paste Function** dialog box provides, click the question mark button in the lower-left corner for full reference information about the function.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Forecast** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114305

Determine Sales Trends

Will sales continue to go up or down, and how fast? You can calculate the likely direction using the TREND function.

You can use a TREND formula to predict the results for the next several months, even if you don't have actual results for recent months. A formula that calculates several values at once uses a range of cells, called an *array*, to display the set of results. Before entering the function, select enough cells for all of the results.

Forecast results for the next six months.

Results from the first six months

When you finish building the formula, press the array-entry keystroke to enter the formula as an array.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	Sales Trend -- Product 2											
2												
3	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
4	379	252	287	419	441	482	{1,12}}					
5												
6												
7												



2												
3	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
4	379	252	287	419	441	482	498	533	567	602	637	671
5												
6												
7												

The formula places the results in the array of cells you selected.



What is the array-entry keystroke? Press CONTROL+SHIFT+ENTER to enter an array formula.

Calculate a trend quickly using AutoFill Select your data for previous months, drag the *fill handle* with the right mouse button, and then click **Linear Trend** (to project growth along a straight line), or **Growth Trend** (to project growth along an exponential curve) from the shortcut menu.



Fill handle



Office Assistant button



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Forecast** in Help.

MS 114306

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

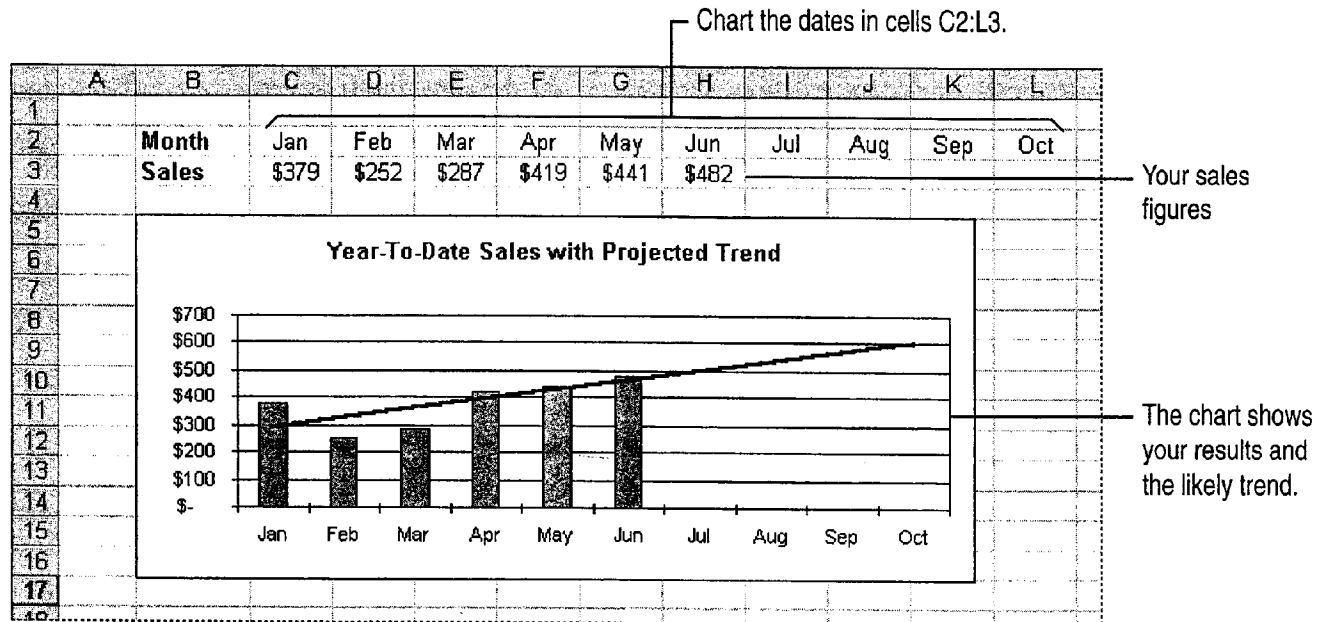
Chart a Trendline

Another way to project a trend is to chart a *trendline*. A trendline shows the direction of your sales visually.

First, use the Chart Wizard to create a column chart. Then, click the chart, and then click the first column. Click **Add Trendline** (Chart menu), and then select the type of trendline you want. For more information about creating charts, see “Create a Chart from Worksheet Data,” page 260.



Chart Wizard button



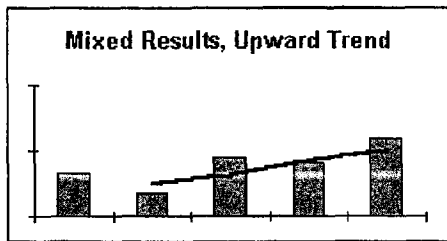
Change the look of your chart For more information, see “Customize the Look of a Chart,” page 276.

MS 114307

What If Sales Don't Follow a Simple Trend?

Trendlines describe future sales well when you have a simple, linear increase or decrease. If your data doesn't conform to this type of pattern, one of the following charting methods might work better.

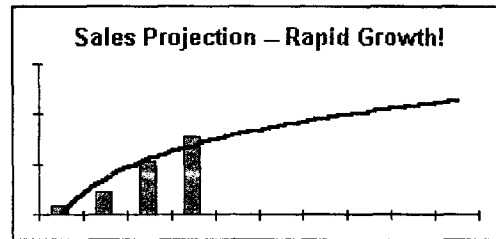
First sales are up, then they're down To see the trend in all the spikes and dips, add a *moving average trendline* to your chart. This trendline



Moving average trendline

smooths out the fluctuations to show the overall growth pattern more clearly.

Sales are really taking off If your sales are doubling or tripling, you're seeing exponential growth. Use the **GROWTH** function instead of **TREND** to forecast this kind of expansion.



Logarithmic trendline

Next Steps

To	See
Include your forecasts in a report	"Create a Business Report," page 228
Perform a complete statistical analysis of your sales figures	The Analysis ToolPak add-in. Also, see "Analyze Data from an Experiment," page 592




MS 114308

Create a Sales Summary from a Microsoft Access Database

Use Microsoft Excel PivotTables to Summarize Microsoft Access Data

If you're working on a sales report, you can create an overview of sales results to see how well sales representatives are doing and which products are selling the most. To do so, store details about each order in a Microsoft Access sales database, and then switch to Microsoft Excel to summarize the data. Microsoft Excel can automatically create an interactive table, called a *PivotTable*, that summarizes large amounts of data. The PivotTable stays current because whenever you change information in the sales database, it's automatically updated in the PivotTable as well.

Key Features

-  Simple Query Wizard
-  PivotTable Wizard
-  PivotTables

Combine your detailed sales figures into a summary ...

Last Name	Product Name	Order Date	Order Amount
Leverling	Chocolate	02-Jan-97	\$86.70
Leverling	Sirop d'érable	02-Jan-97	\$726.75
Davolio	Chang	02-Jan-97	\$182.40
Leverling	Jack's New England Clam Chowder	02-Jan-97	\$193.00
Davolio	Spegesild	02-Jan-97	\$420.00
Leverling	Ipoh Coffee	02-Jan-97	\$782.00
Fuller	Geitost	02-Jan-97	\$40.00
Leverling	Boston Crab Meat		
Leverling	Tarte au sucre		
Leverling	Côte de Blaye		
Peacock	Côte de Blaye		

... compare who is selling the most of each product ...

First Quarter Sales		Sold By				Grand Total
Product Name		Buchanan	Callahan	Davolio	Doc	
Alice Mutton	\$585.00	\$234.00	\$2,702.70	\$1,192.00	\$4,713.70	
Aniseed Syrup		\$300.00	\$40.00	\$1,192.00	\$1,532.00	
Boston Crab Meat		\$512.00	\$73.60	\$1,192.00	\$1,677.60	
Camembert Pierrot	\$693.60	\$1,847.20	\$1,362.72	\$1,192.00	\$5,095.52	
Carnarvon Tigers	\$498.18	\$2,723.50	\$1,192.00	\$1,192.00	\$5,605.68	
Grand Total	\$28,896.55	\$74,487.76	\$80,273.63	\$46,707.00	\$579,292.95	

and then see the total results.

To complete the steps in this topic you need to have Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed. You also need to have sales data stored in a Microsoft Access database.

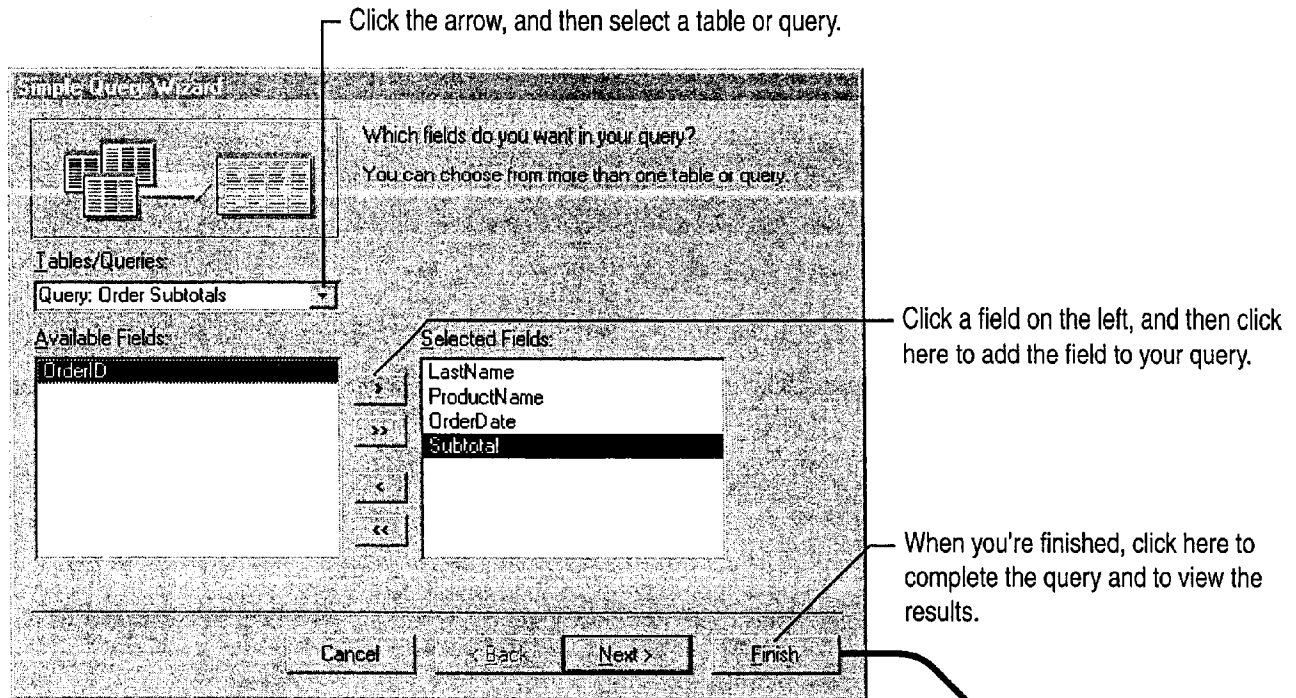
MS 114309

Create a Sales Summary from a Microsoft Access Database

Choose the Data You Want to Analyze

Start by finding out how much each sales representative has sold. For each product, you need the name of the sales representative, the name of the product, the amount sold, and the dates of the orders. To retrieve this information from the database, create a query. In the database window, on the **Query** tab, click **New**, and then double-click **Simple Query Wizard**.

Select fields from the Employees, Products, and Orders tables, and the Order Subtotals query to create a new query.



Last Name	Product Name	Order Date	Subtotal
Buchanan	Singaporean Hokkien Fried Mee	01-Jul-97	\$440.00
Buchanan	Mozzarella di Giovanni	01-Jul-97	\$440.00
Buchanan	Quaso Cabrales	01-Jul-97	\$440.00
Suyama	Tofu	02-Jul-97	\$1,863.40
Suyama	Manjimup Dried Apples	02-Jul-97	\$1,863.40
Peacock	Louisiana Fiery Hot Pepper Sauce	05-Jul-97	\$1,552.60
Peacock	Jack's New England Clam Chowder	05-Jul-97	\$1,552.60
Peacock	Manjimup Dried Apples	05-Jul-97	\$1,552.60
Leverling	Louisiana Fiery Hot Pepper Sauce	05-Jul-97	\$654.00
Leverling	Gustaf's Knäckebröd	05-Jul-97	\$654.00
Leverling	Ravioli Angelo	05-Jul-97	\$654.00
Peacock	Sir Rodney's Marmalade	06-Jul-97	\$3,597.90
Peacock	Gaitost	06-Jul-97	\$3,597.90
Peacock	Camembert Pierrot	06-Jul-97	\$3,597.90
Leverling	Maxilaku	07-Jul-97	\$1,444.80
Leverling	Chartreuse verte	07-Jul-97	\$1,444.80
Leverling	Gorgonzola Telino	07-Jul-97	\$1,444.80

MS 114310

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

Summarize Data by Product and Salesperson

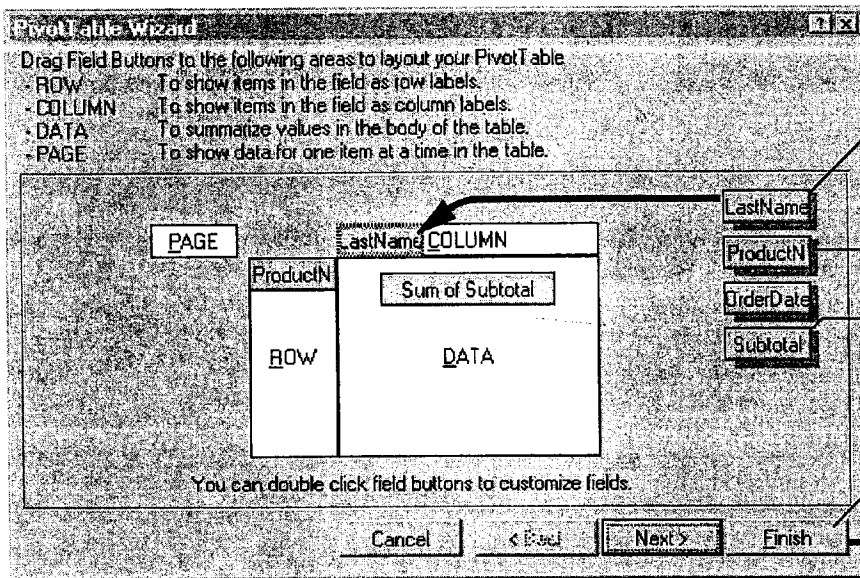
Now that you have the raw data you need, you want to total and compare the amount of each product sold by each sales representative. While working in Microsoft Access, you can use Microsoft Excel to summarize this information.

In the database window, click the **New Object** button, click **Form**, and then click **PivotTable Wizard**. Select your query and the fields you want to summarize. When the wizard finishes, the PivotTable appears as a Microsoft Excel object inserted in a Microsoft Access form.



New Object button

To create the PivotTable, drag the field buttons on the right to the diagram on the left.



Use the last names of your sales representatives for the column headings.

List the products down the rows.

Show the total orders for each sales representative and product. Only fields containing numbers can be dragged to the data area.

Click here to create the PivotTable.

The resulting PivotTable summarizes the sales figures for you.

Sum of Subtotal	LastName				
ProductName	Buchanan	Callahan	Davolio	Dodsworth	Fuller
Alice Mutton	9423.65	8489	6360.8	1979.23	14358
Aniseed Syrup	0	2048.22	2468.22	7717.82	
Boston Crab Meat	7724.5	2647.7	5959.36	2367.69	305
Camembert Pierrot	14342.11	6525.82	25677.58	2679.9	19250
Carnarvon Tigers	0	6575.55	8927.01	6915.8	10579
Chai	2188	2418.8	2215.86	1788	14387



Can't read some field names? Double-click a long field name so that you can view all of its characters.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Microsoft Access Sales Summary** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114311

Create a Sales Summary from a Microsoft Access Database

Analyze the Data in Different Ways

After the wizard creates the PivotTable, you can change the layout so that products are displayed across the columns, and sales representatives are listed down each row. Unlike a Microsoft Access table, the PivotTable is dynamic; you can transpose its rows and columns to see different summaries of the data.

You edit the table in Microsoft Excel by clicking the **Edit PivotTable** button on the form. The PivotTable opens in a separate window with Microsoft Excel commands and toolbars displayed.

Click the **Refresh Data** button to update the data in the table.

To display the sales representatives by row and the total amount sold of each product by column, drag the row and column headings to switch their positions.

Sum of Subtotal	ProductName			
LastName	Buchanan	Callahan	Davolio	Dodsworth
Alice Mutton	9423.65	6489	6360.8	1979.23
Aniseed Syrup	0	2048.22	2468.22	7717.82
Boston Crab Meat	7724.5	2647.7	6959.36	2367.69
Camembert Pierrot	14342.11	6525.82	25677.58	2679.8
Carnarvon Tigers	0	6575.55	6927.01	6915.8
Chai	2188	2418.8	2215.66	1788



The PivotTable displays the data based on the new arrangement.

Sum of Subtotal	ProductName	
LastName	Alice Mutton	Aniseed Syrup
Buchanan	9423.65	0
Callahan	6489	2048.22
Davolio	6360.8	2468.22
Dodsworth	1979.23	7717.82
Fuller	14358.45	0
King	7260.91	479.4



Finished editing in Microsoft Excel? Click **Exit** (File menu) to save your changes and return to Microsoft Access.

Want to reactivate Microsoft Excel for further editing? Open the Microsoft Access form, and then double-click the PivotTable.

MS 114312

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

View Sales Data by Quarter

Suppose you want to compare the total sales figures of each product by quarter. You can have the PivotTable Wizard create another PivotTable from the same query that displays the sales performance of each product (ROW area) by order date (COLUMN area). When the wizard finishes, edit the PivotTable to group the data by quarter.

To summarize the data by quarter, right-click the column heading, and then click **Group (Group and Outline menu)**.

Select **Quarters** from the list in the **Grouping** dialog box.



Now sales figures for each product are totaled by quarter.

Sum of Subtotal	OrderDate			
Product Name	Qtr1	Qtr2	Qtr3	Qtr4
Alice Mutton	24085.78	16792.06	15194.45	21385.33
Aniseed Syrup	5000.04	18197.42	1291.9	5734
Boston Crab Meat	29900.76	10785.12	27109.46	5968.77
Camembert Pierrot	32392.29	28552.82	33034.06	29439.67
Carnarvon Tigers	14558.09	12922.05	12982.3	18174.11
Chai	16720.43	12415.62	18785.26	5790.4



Display specific products; hide those you don't need Click the **Edit Pivot Table** button on the form, select the rows of products that you want to hide, click **Row**, and then click **Hide (Format menu)**.

Rank products from most to least sold Click **Edit Pivot Table**, select the products you want to sort, and then click the **Sort Descending** button.



Sort Descending button

MS 114313

Create a Sales Summary from a Microsoft Access Database

Next Steps

To	See
Learn more about queries	“Evaluate Sales Performance in a Microsoft Access Database,” page 582
Display data visually	“Create a Chart from a Database,” page 272


MS 114314

Evaluate Sales Performance in a Microsoft Access Database

Use a Query to Find Out How Well Your Sales Force Is Doing

Suppose you want to review sales figures for your company, Northwind Traders, for September. In particular, you want to see how your sales force is doing and who the top performers are. To retrieve this information, you can create a *query*, a question about data that is stored in more than one table.

Key Features

-  Simple Query
- Expressions
- Sorting Records

September Orders

Last Name	First Name	Total
Leverling	Janet	\$611.90
Peacock	Margaret	\$558.70
Davolio	Nancy	\$377.40
Dodsworth	Anne	\$301.20
Callahan	Laura	\$240.45
King	Robert	\$193.79
Fuller	Andrew	\$169.30
Suyama	Michael	\$168.90

Employees

Top Employees

Leverling	Janet	\$611.90
Peacock	Margaret	\$558.70
Davolio	Nancy	\$377.40

To complete the steps in this topic you need to have Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed. You also need to use the Table Wizard to create the Employees, Orders, and Order Details tables shown in this topic.

MS 114315

Begin the Query

To see how well your sales force is doing, you want to review sales figures. More specifically, you want to see who received each order, the date the order was received, and the amount charged for each order. This information is stored in three tables: Employees, Orders, and Order Details.

To find information that meets specific criteria (such as details on all orders received in September), create a query in design view so that you can define criteria in the query design grid. In the database window, on the **Queries** tab, click **New**, and then click **Design View**.

On the **Tables** tab, click each table that contains the fields you need ...

... and then click here to add it to the query.

To determine how much each employee sold, create a calculated field that multiplies Quantity by UnitPrice. To create the calculated field, right-click the blank cell to the right of the **OrderDate** field, and then click **Build**.

Click to select a field from the field list, and then drag it to the design query grid.

Table	LastName	FirstName	OrderDate	[Order Details Extended][Quantity] * [Order Details Extended][UnitPrice]
Employees	Employees	Employees	Orders	Order Details
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data



Want to add all the fields from a table? Double-click the title bar on the field list and then drag all the fields to the grid, or double-click the asterisk (*) on the field list. When you use the asterisk, the query automatically includes fields that you add or delete from an underlying table.

Don't Need to Limit the Information the Query Returns?

Use the Simple Query Wizard to retrieve information that you don't need to refine or limit. For example, you can use the Simple Query Wizard to retrieve the names and phone numbers of all employees in an organization. In the database window, click **Queries**, click **New**, and then double-click **Simple Query Wizard**. However, if you want to retrieve the names and phone numbers of employees hired after a specific date, you need to create the query in query design view.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Evaluate Sales** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114317

Evaluate Sales Performance in a Microsoft Access Database

Show Only Last Month's Orders

To find details on all orders received in September, you need to limit your query so that it searches for the data that applies to this specified time period. To do so, type the beginning and ending dates (an *expression*) in the **Criteria** row for the OrderDate field, as shown in the following illustration.

Type the beginning and ending dates here.
Date expressions are enclosed in number (#) signs.

Field:	LastName	FirstName	OrderDate	Expr1: [Order Details].[Quantity]*[Order D
Table:	Employees	Employees	Orders	
Sort:				
Show:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Criteria:			Between #9/1/97# And #9/30/97#	

Last Name	First Name	Order Date	Expr1
Suyama	Michael	01-Sep-97	\$69.75
Suyama	Michael	01-Sep-97	\$544.60
Suyama	Michael	01-Sep-97	\$57.00
Fuller	Andrew	01-Sep-97	\$775.00
Fuller	Andrew	01-Sep-97	\$231.60
Fuller	Andrew	01-Sep-97	\$540.00
Fuller	Andrew	01-Sep-97	\$95.00
Fuller	Andrew	01-Sep-97	\$1,710.00
Fuller	Andrew	01-Sep-97	\$1,020.00
Peacock	Margaret	02-Sep-97	\$600.00
Peacock	Margaret	02-Sep-97	\$1,288.00
Peacock	Margaret	02-Sep-97	\$1,870.00
Peacock	Margaret	02-Sep-97	\$910.00
King	Robert	02-Sep-97	\$250.00
King	Robert	02-Sep-97	\$441.60
King	Robert	02-Sep-97	\$600.00
Callahan	Laura	05-Sep-97	\$1,701.00
King	Robert	06-Sep-97	\$54.00

You can change the name of a field by double-clicking it and then typing a new name, such as "Amount".

Click the **View** arrow and then select **Datasheet View** from the list to see orders filled in September.



View button

MS 114318

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data



Did you make a mistake when you set up the query? In datasheet view, click the **View** arrow to return to the query design grid. You can change the query by adding or deleting fields, or by changing the criteria.

Want to see orders for another range of dates? Change the dates in the Between expression.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Evaluate Sales** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114319

Calculate Total Orders Per Employee

After your query finds every order received by each employee during the month of September, you can modify the query to calculate the total orders received by each employee. Click the **Totals** button to add a Total row to the query design grid, and then select the calculation you want in the Total cell for that field.



Totals button

Click the **Total** cell under the OrderDate column. Click the arrow, and then select **Where** to have Microsoft Access find orders for which the date is between 9/1/97 and 9/30/97.

Field:	OrderDate	Expr1: [Order Details].[Quantity]*[Order Details].[UnitPrice]
Table:	Orders	
Total:	Where	Sum
Sort:		Sum
Show:		
Criteria:	Between #9/1/97# And #9/30/97#	Avg
or:		Min
		Max
		Count
		StDev
		Var
		First

Under the calculated field you created, click the **Total** cell. Click the arrow, and then select **Sum** to have Microsoft Access total the orders filled by each employee.



Want to find an average value for a field? In the Total cell for the field you want to calculate, click the arrow, and then select the calculation you want from the list.

Want to find the minimum and maximum values for the same field? Add the field to the query design grid twice, and then click the calculation you want in the Total cell. For example, you can add the Amount field and then click **Min** in the Total cell. In another column, add the Amount field again and then click **Max**.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Evaluate Sales** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114320

Part 13 Analyze and Report Sales Data

Rank Your Sales Staff

Now that you know how much each employee has sold, you can rank your sales force. To sort employees by the amount of orders for September, click in the Sort cell of the Amount field. Then select the order in which you want the information sorted. You can rank employees by sorting the grand totals in descending order.

Field:	OrderDate	Expr1: [Order Details].[Quantity]*[Order Details].[UnitPrice]
Table:	Orders	
Total:	Where	Sum
Sort:		Descending
Show:		Ascending
Criteria:	Between #9/1/97# And #9/30/97#	Descending
or:		[not sorted]

Click here, and then click **Descending ...**



	Last Name	First Name	Expr1
	Fuller	Andrew	\$19,787.05
	King	Robert	\$13,839.29
	Peacock	Margaret	\$12,183.85
	Dodsworth	Anne	\$10,412.40
	Davolio	Nancy	\$8,845.00
	Leverling	Janet	\$3,595.50
	Callahan	Laura	\$2,361.00
	Buchanan	Steven	\$1,423.00
	Suyama	Michael	\$671.35

... to rank employees by sales totals.



Want to sort by more than one field? Microsoft Access sorts fields from left to right. In the query design grid, arrange the fields in the order in which you want the sorts performed, and then click the sort order for each field.

Want to use the same query again? Save the query so you can reuse it. Click **Save (File menu)**.

Create a report from a query In datasheet view, click the **New Object** arrow, and then click **New Report** to create a report based on the query.



New Object button

MS 114321

Next Steps

To	See
Learn more about sorting records	“Use Your First Microsoft Access Database,” page 104
Create a query by using the Simple Query Wizard	“Create a Sales Summary,” page 563

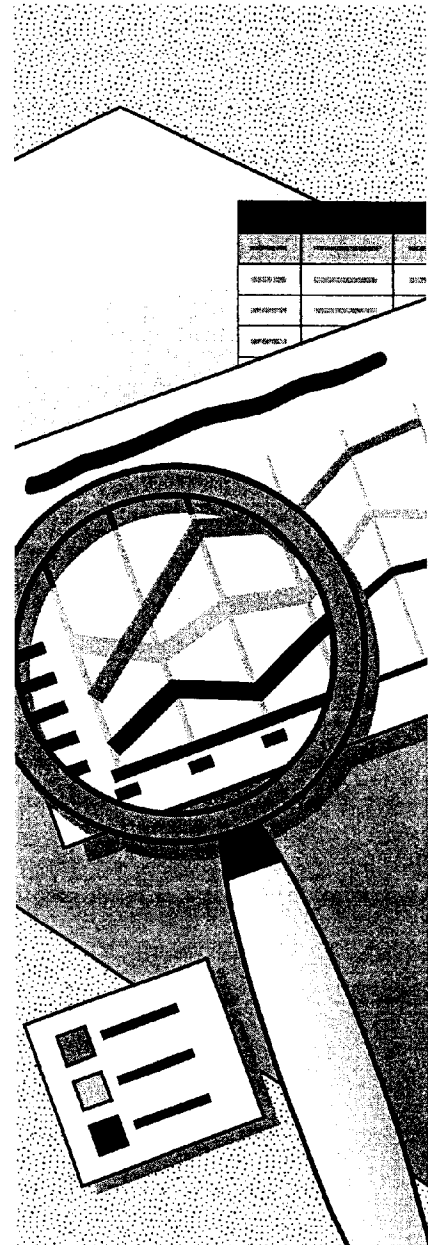
MS 114322

PART 14

Analyze Scientific and Engineering Data

Contents

- Analyze Data from an Experiment 592
- Display Scientific Data in a Chart 595




MS 114323

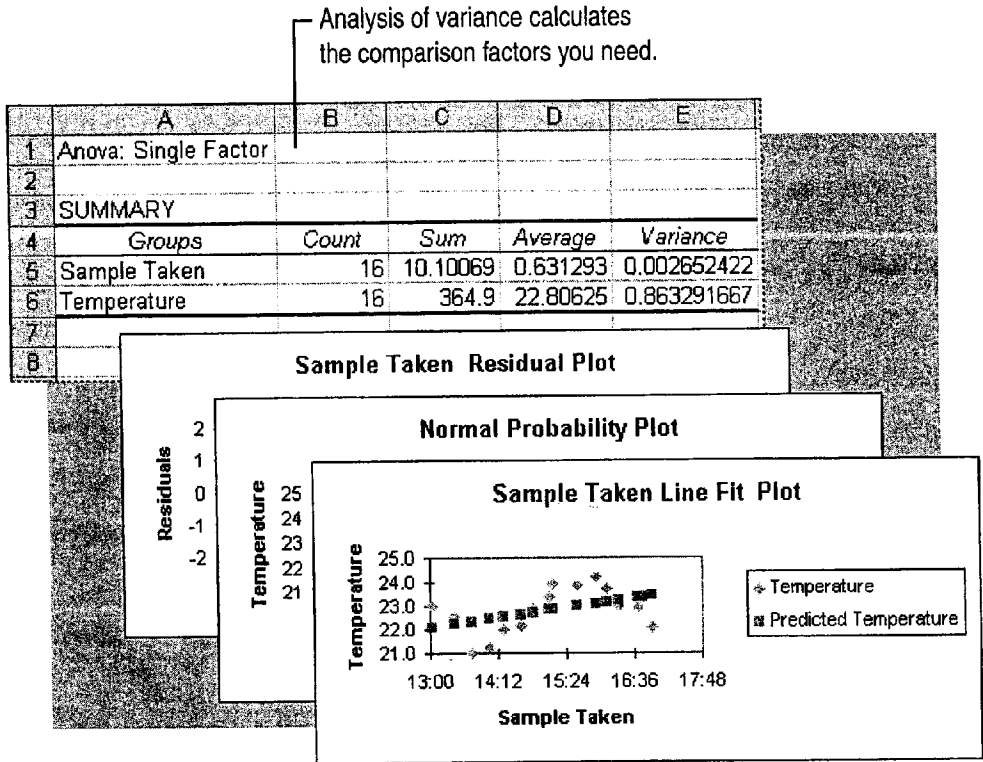
Getting Results with Microsoft Office 591

Analyze Data from an Experiment

Have you been performing calculations like exponential smoothing and Fourier analysis using a dedicated math package? Did you know that you can do the same number-crunching in Microsoft Excel and use all of the convenient and powerful analysis and formatting capabilities of Microsoft Excel on your results?

Key Features

 Analysis ToolPak



Important Make sure you've installed the Analysis ToolPak add-in. If you chose the Typical installation for Microsoft Excel rather than Custom, you'll need to run the Setup program to get this add-in. After installation, enable the Analysis ToolPak by clicking **Add-Ins (Tools menu)**. You can work with data sets of up to 64,000 rows by 256 columns and of up to 32,000 characters per cell.

Set Up Your Data

Before you can run the analysis, you need to set up your data. Place each data series in a row or column. Each tool in the Analysis ToolPak has specific input requirements.

The tools store their output wherever you specify: on the same worksheet as the input range, on another worksheet, or in another workbook.

	A	B
1	Sample Taken	Temperature
2	13:01	23.0
3	13:25	22.5
4	13:45	21.0
5	14:02	21.2
6	14:18	22.0
7	14:36	22.2
8	14:48	22.8
9	15:05	23.3
10	15:10	23.9
11	15:35	23.8
12	15:55	24.2
13	16:07	23.7
14	16:19	23.0
15	16:39	22.9
16	16:45	23.3
17	16:55	22.1

Identify your variables for the resulting analysis, or let the tools create labels for you.

Your input range



Bring external data directly into your worksheet Microsoft Excel can read most database formats, or you can import text files. For examples, see "Get Sales Information from a Database," page 548.

Want just a simple forecast? See "Create a Sales Forecast," page 571. For some straightforward techniques to analyze uncomplicated data, see "Create a Sales Summary," page 563, and "Create a Detailed Sales Report," page 556.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Analyze** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114325

Part 14 Analyze Scientific and Engineering Data

Run the Analysis

Now your data is ready to be analyzed. Click **Data Analysis** (**Tools** menu) to select the type of analysis you want.

	A	B	C	D
1	Sample Taken		Temperature	
2				
3	Mean	0.631293403	Mean	22.80625
4	Standard Error	0.012875418	Standard Error	0.232283726
5	Median	0.630208333	Median	22.95
6	Mode	#N/A	Mode	23
7	Standard Deviation	0.051501671	Standard Deviation	0.929134902
8	Sample Variance	0.002652422	Sample Variance	0.863291667
9	Kurtosis	-1.137247717	Kurtosis	-0.359166577
10	Skewness	-0.158973114	Skewness	-0.493724094
11	Range	0.1625	Range	3.2
12	Minimum	0.542361111	Minimum	21
13	Maximum	0.704861111	Maximum	24.2
14	Sum	10.10069444	Sum	364.9
15	Count	16	Count	16
16	Confidence Level(95.0%)	0.02744332	Confidence Level(95.0%)	0.495101346

The Descriptive Statistics tool calculates the parameters you want for further analysis.

Important If you don't see the **Data Analysis** command, you might not have enabled the Analysis ToolPak after installing it. Use the **Add-Ins** command (**Tools** menu) to enable the Analysis ToolPak.



Want details about tools? For details about specific tools, look up the name of the tool in Microsoft Excel Help. For a list of the available analysis tools, click **Data Analysis**.




Next Steps

To	See
Create scatter plots and other charts from your data or analysis results	"Display Scientific Data in a Chart," page 595

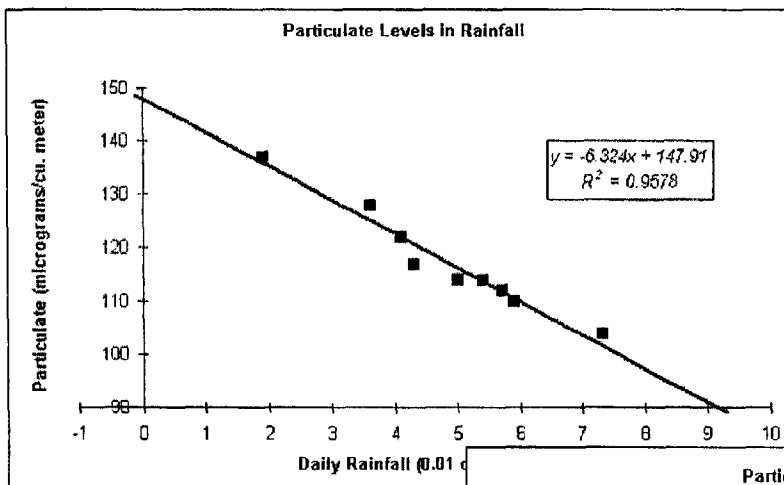
Display Scientific Data in a Chart

When your data has pairs or grouped sets of values, you can display it effectively in an xy (scatter) chart. This chart type is commonly used for displaying scientific and engineering data. A scatter chart has two value axes, instead of one value axis and one category axis like most chart types. Another difference is that data can be shown in uneven intervals, or clusters.

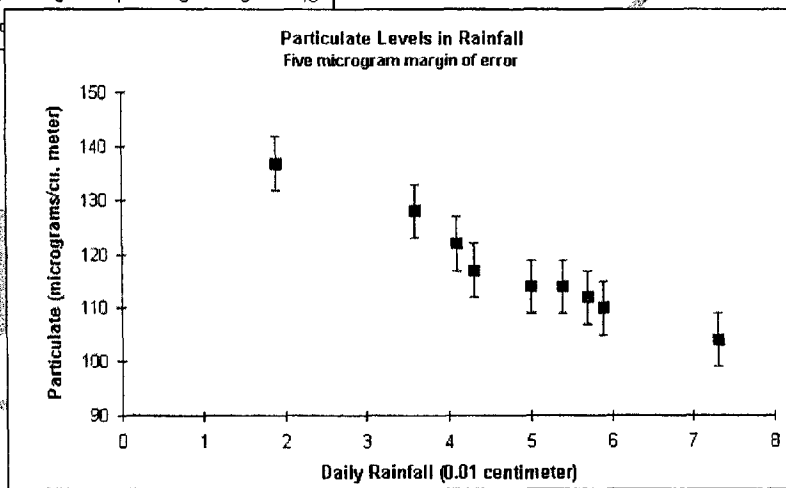
Key Features

-  Scatter Charts
-  Trendlines
-  Error Bars

Optional chart items that can be helpful in analyzing data are trendlines for prediction and error bars to show the margin of error.



Scatter charts display clustered data along two value axes.



MS 114327

Part 14 Analyze Scientific and Engineering Data

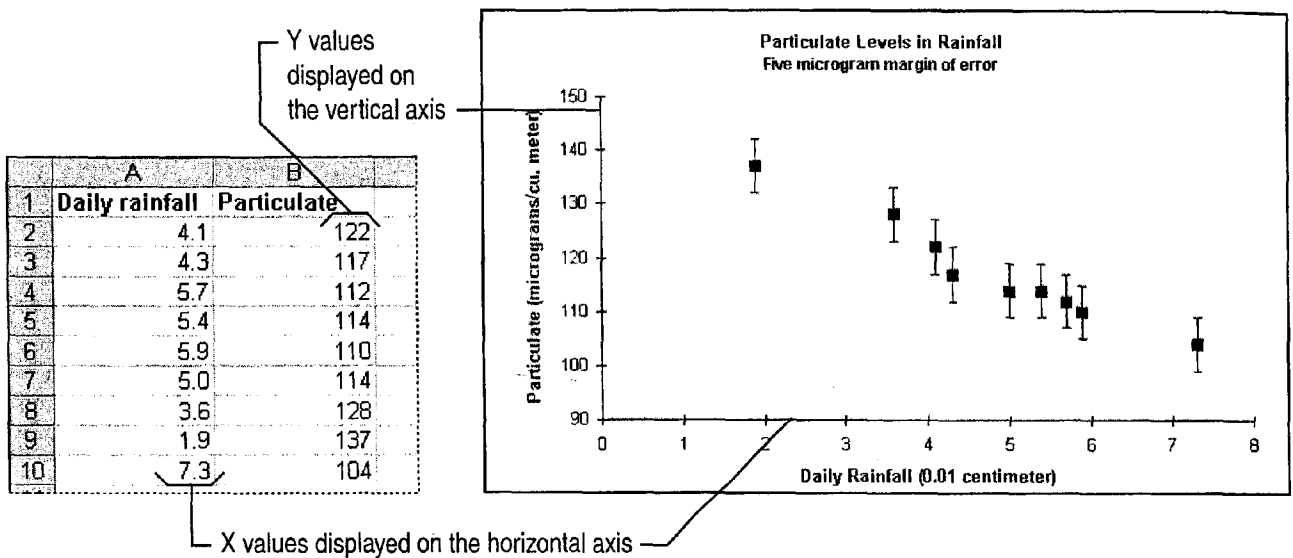
Create a Scatter Chart

Select the data you want to display in the chart. If the selection includes text labels, you can add a legend to help identify data in charts with multiple y values. If there is more than one y value for each x value, see “Display Multiple Y Values,” later in this topic.

You can let the Chart Wizard help you create the chart. After selecting the data, click the **Chart Wizard** button, and then select the XY (Scatter) type in step 1 of the wizard. For more information on creating charts, see “Create a Chart from Worksheet Data,” page 260.



Chart Wizard button



What’s the difference between a line chart and a scatter chart? Line charts and scatter charts look very similar. However, the line chart displays categories of data evenly along the x axis, with values along the y axis. When data should be displayed in uneven clusters, the scatter chart works better. If you want your scatter chart to display connecting lines between points, you can select one of the built-in chart subtypes with lines from the **Chart Type** dialog box (**Chart** menu).

What if my data has three y values? Use the Chart Wizard to create a bubble chart, which is similar to a scatter chart, except that each data point is a “bubble,” the size of which is determined by one of the three data series.

MS 114328

Display Scientific Data in a Chart

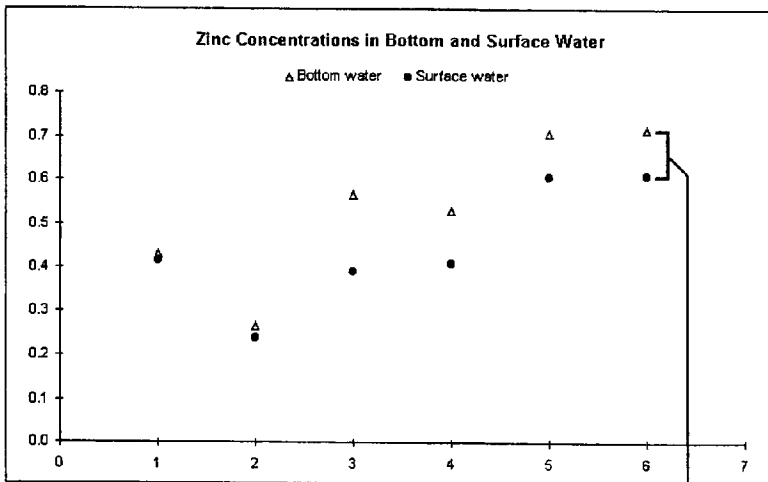
Display Multiple Y Values

When your data has two or more y values corresponding to each x value, arrange the data as shown to get the chart you want. If your data series are in rows instead of columns, the x values should be in the top row and the y values in the following rows.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Zinc Concentrations in Bottom and Surface Water				
2	Day	Bottom water	Surface water		
3	1	0.430	0.415		
4	2	0.266	0.238		
5	3	0.567	0.390		
6	4	0.531	0.410		
7	5	0.707	0.605		
8	6	0.716	0.609		

X values in leftmost column

Pairs of y values in adjacent columns to the right



Pair of y values displayed on the chart

? Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Scientific Data** in Help.



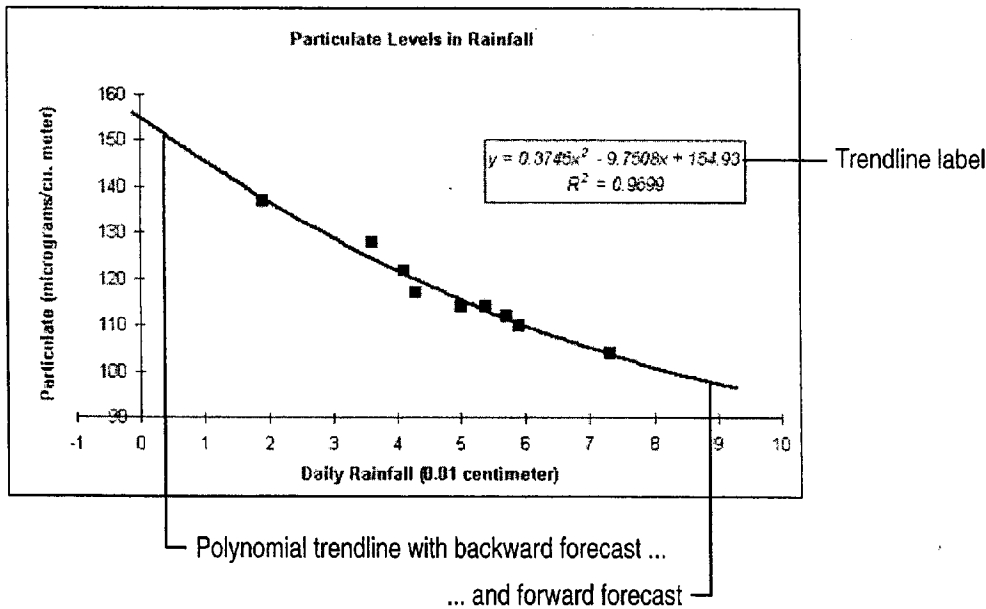
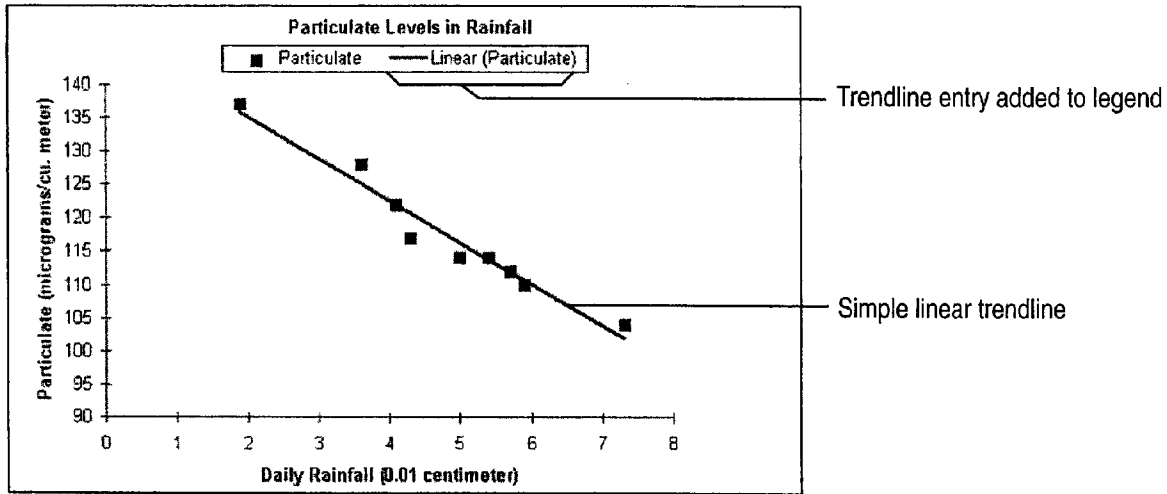
Office Assistant button

MS 114329

Part 14 Analyze Scientific and Engineering Data

Predict Forward or Backward with a Trendline

To predict a trend based on available data (also known as regression analysis), add a trendline to the data series. Select the data series, and then click **Add Trendline** (**Chart** menu). Specify the trendline type you want; on the **Options** tab, you can display a trendline label with the line equation, the R-squared value, or both.



MS 114330

Display Scientific Data in a Chart



The trendline belongs to the data series A trendline is calculated from the values in the associated data series. If you delete or move the data series, the trendline is also deleted or moved. If you want to change the type of trendline you use, double-click the line and then make your change in the **Format Trendline** dialog box.

Modify the trendline You can change the trendline's type (for example, from linear to polynomial), change its color or line style, give it a name, or add a label. Double-click the line, and then make the changes you want in the **Format Trendline** dialog box.

Format the trendline label You work with a trendline label like any other data label: by double-clicking it. Then you can change the font, change the way numbers are displayed, or add a border or background color. To move the label, select it and then drag it to the new location.

Use trendlines with other chart types You can add trendlines to 2-D bar, column, and line charts, but not to 3-D charts.

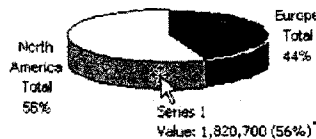
Use a moving average trendline All types of trendlines are useful for business data. For more information, see "Create a Sales Forecast," page 571.



For Help on dialog box options, click this button and then click the option.

Chart Tips Make it Easier to Identify Chart Elements

When you rest the pointer over a chart item, you can see the name and value of the item in a tip. Turn chart tips on or off by selecting or clearing the **Show names** and **Show values** options on the **Chart** tab of the **Options** dialog box (**Tools** menu).



— Chart tips help you identify chart elements.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Scientific Data** in Help.



Office Assistant button


MS 114331

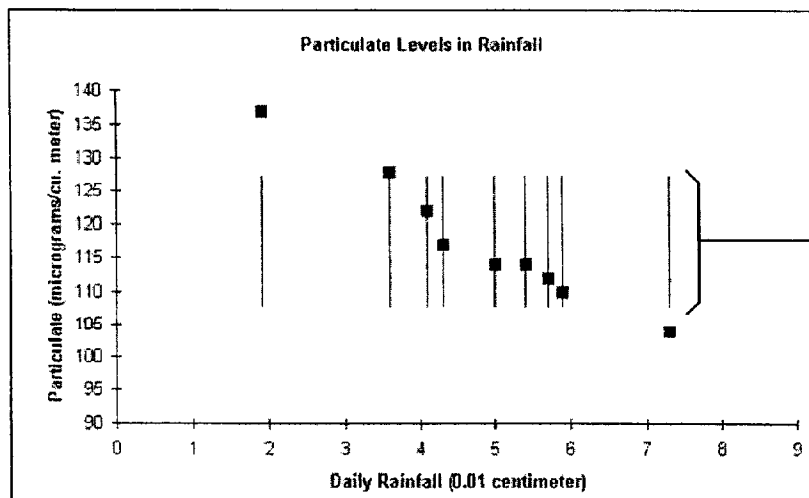
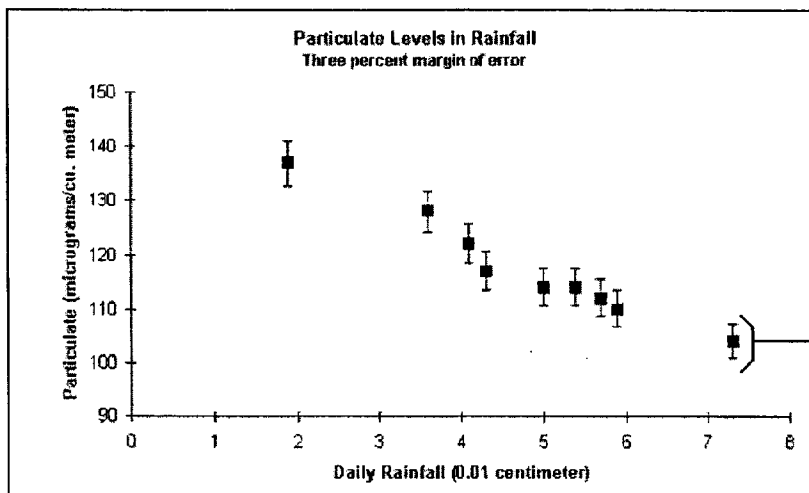
Part 14 Analyze Scientific and Engineering Data

Show “Plus or Minus” with Error Bars

When it’s useful to indicate the degree of uncertainty for a data series—the “plus or minus” range—add *error bars*. Double-click the data series to display the **Format Data Series** dialog box. Click the **X Error Bars** tab or the **Y Error Bars** tab, and then specify the display you want and how the error amount should be obtained.

How is the error amount obtained? On the two error bars tabs in the **Format Data Series** dialog box, specify the error amount; it can be a fixed value, a percentage of each value in the data series, a number of standard deviations, the standard error, or another error value in a worksheet range.

 For Help on dialog box options, click this button and then click the option.



MS 114332



The error bars belong to the data series Error bars are obtained from the values in the associated data series. If you delete or move the data series, the error bars are also deleted or moved.

Modify the error bars To change the color, style, and line weight for all error bars associated with a data series, double-click one error bar. In the **Format Error Bars** dialog box, change the look on the **Patterns** tab. You can change other characteristics on the **X Error Bars** tab and the **Y Error Bars** tab.

Use error bars with other chart types You can add error bars to 2-D area, bar, column, bubble, and line charts, but not to 3-D charts.

Next Steps

To	See
Custom-format a chart and save the formatting to use for other charts	“Customize the Look of a Chart,” page 276
Create a link to, or insert, a chart in a Microsoft Word document or Microsoft PowerPoint presentation	“Add a Chart to a Document or Presentation,” page 266

MS 114333

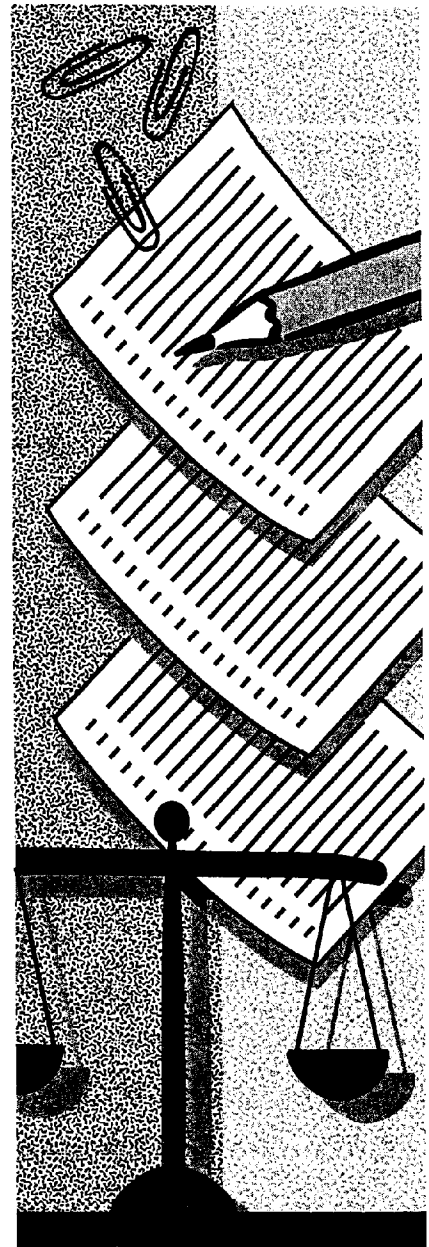
PART 15

Create Legal Documents

Contents

Create a Pleading 604

Create a Legal Contract 611




MS 114334

Getting Results with Microsoft Office 603

Create a Pleading

If you need to create a pleading to initiate or continue a legal proceeding, it's fast and easy to use the Pleading Wizard. The wizard helps you set up the basic formatting of the pleading so that it meets the requirements of the court you specify. After you've determined the formatting, the wizard saves these settings in a template for easy reuse. Then all you do is fill in the content of the pleading.

Key Features

-  Pleading Wizard
- Footnotes
- Table of Authorities

1 UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
2 CENTRAL DISTRICT
3
4
5 PLAINTIFF'S NAME, No. 12-3-456789
6 Plaintiff, Ut vias vobis ad PLEADED TITLE
7 vs Date: OCTOBER 4, 2007
8 DEFENDANT'S NAME, Time: 13:00 A.M.
9 DEFENDANT, ULLAMCORP. Inc. Case: Non-Mal-Dea

10 **I. Introduction**
11 Ut vias vobis ad nihil veniam, quis non ullamcorper Eserci tation ullamcorper
12 suscipit lobortis Nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis aute molar
13 in mollis in voluptate qui non consequat vel illum quis no tation suscipit
14 Sed eu feugiat nulla facilisis at verne lucto odio dignissim nemozrit
15 exerci minis veniam lucto odio dignissim.

16 **I. Exerci tation ullamcorper**
17 Ut vias vobis ad nihil veniam, quis non ullamcorper Eserci tation ullamcorper
18 suscipit lobortis Nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat.
19 ULLA AUtOre dicit in mollis in voluptate qui non suscipit Nisi ut
20 aliquip ex ea commodo consequat.

21 **A. Sed eu feugiat**
22 Sed consequat vel illum quis no tation suscipit. Sed eu feugiat nulla
23 facilisis at vero ut lucto odio dignissim nemozrit exerci minis veniam lucto odio
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39

Use the Pleading Wizard to create a pleading template that complies with the rules of a specific court. Specify, for example, paper size, margins, font, line numbering, and line spacing.

40 **Table of Authorities**

CASES	PAGE
Commodore Corp. v. Ilham Quid, 79 Wa. 2d 214 (1971)	2
Dignissim v. Nihil, 79 Wash. 17, 20 (1905)	4
Dserci Minim v. Consequat, 25 Wa. 2d 84 (1946)	4
Dserci v. Minim, 248 U.S. 132, 136, 63 L. Ed. 166, 39 S. Ct. 59 (1918)	2
Ilham v. Dignissim, 51 Wa. 2d 315 (1957)	6
Ilham, Inc. v. Minim, 107 Wa. 2d 553, 559 (1987)	6
Quis v. Ullamcorp, 43 Wa. App. 387, 390 (1986)	5
Ullamcorp v. Dignissim, 56 Wa. 2d 343 (1961)	3

When you finish the pleading, create a table of authorities.

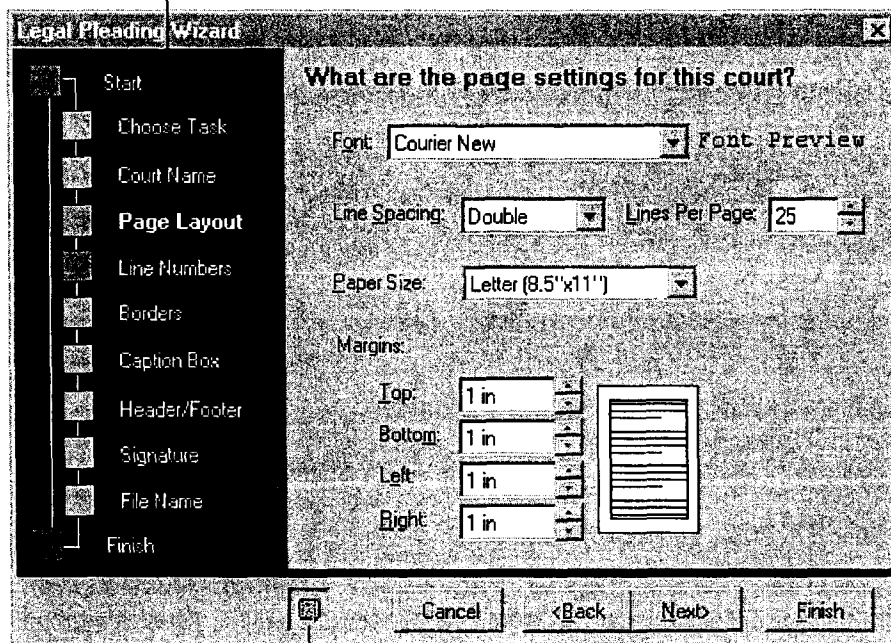
MS 114335

Select Settings to Create a Custom Pleading

To start the Pleading Wizard, click **New** (File menu), click the **Legal Pleadings** tab, and then double-click **Pleading Wizard**. There are two parts to the wizard: the first to create a template, and the second to create a pleading based on the template. The wizard asks you a series of easy questions. Your answers determine how Word sets up the basic page elements of the pleading template.

After you specify the basic structure and formatting of the pleading, the wizard saves the settings in a template with a name you specify. You might want to use the name of the court as the template name. The next time you need to create a pleading for that court, you can start with that template.

Through a series of simple steps, the wizard helps you create a pleading customized for a particular court. In this step, for example, you select settings for the page layout.



Click here to get Help from the Office Assistant.

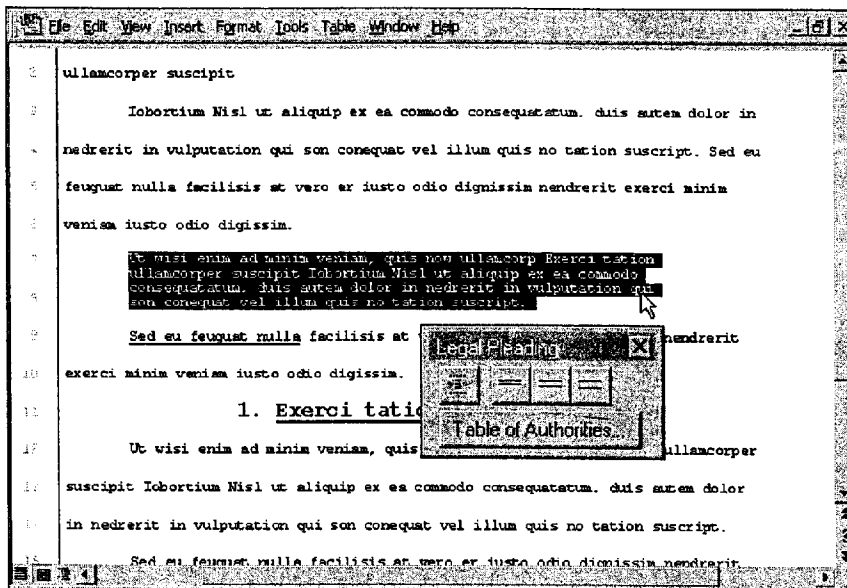
Important If the Pleading Wizard isn't available, rerun Setup to install it. For more information, see "Add or Remove Components," page 32.

MS 114336

Write the Pleading

After you create the template, you go to the second part of the wizard, in which you work in a document based on the template you created. You complete additional steps to add the parties to the pleading, the names, case number, attorney names, and so on.

When you have finished filling in these details, click **Finish**. When the pleading is displayed, the Assistant gives you several options for adjusting the formatting. When you have the format you want, add the content of the pleading.



Format the content you add to your pleading by using the **Legal Pleading** toolbar (**View** menu, **Toolbars** submenu). To indent text for a block quotation, or to change line spacing, select the text and then click the appropriate button.



Need a specific type of pleading? When the wizard asks you to select the parties, click **Petitioner and Respondent** to create a summons for legal separation, or click **Debtor** to create a decree of dissolution.

Need numbered and bulleted lists in your pleading? See “Add Numbering to Headings and Paragraphs,” page 614.

Including cross-references? See “Add Automatic Cross-References,” page 616.

Want more tips on legal forms? See “Create a Legal Contract,” page 611.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Pleading** in Help.



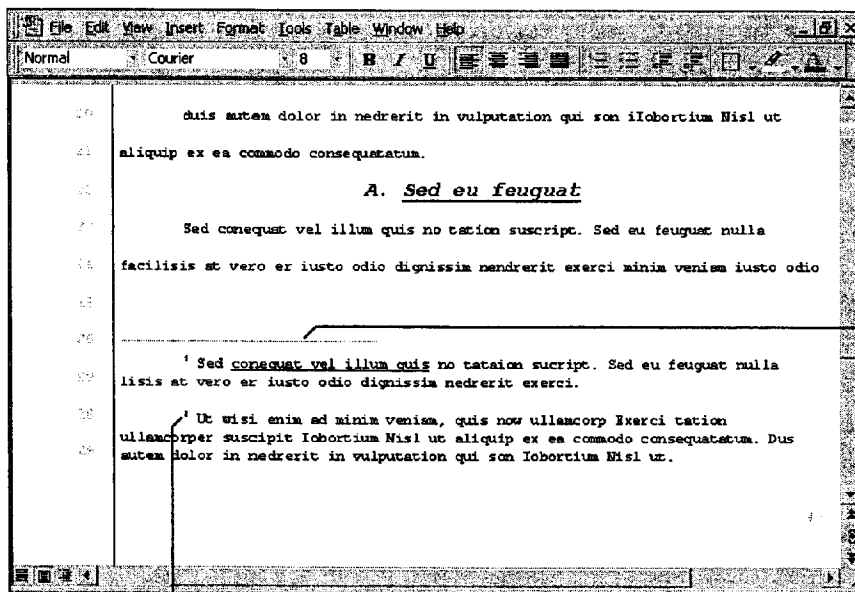
Office Assistant button

Add Footnotes

When you need to expand upon or include other citations or text, you can insert a footnote. Click where you want to insert the footnote reference mark, and then click **Footnote** (**Insert** menu).

To separate footnotes from the pleading text, Word automatically inserts a short horizontal line. Or, if the footnote continues onto the next page, Word inserts a longer separator line.

You can underline citations and format footnote text just as you would any other text.



Word adds a line to separate footnotes from regular text.

Word automatically numbers footnotes as you add them.



See the contents of a footnote quickly Position the insertion point over the footnote reference mark, and the contents of the footnote are displayed.

Move or delete a footnote To complete either action, you work with the footnote reference mark, not the text in the note pane. To move a footnote, select and drag the mark to a new location. To delete a footnote, select the mark and press DELETE. Whenever you move or delete a footnote, Word automatically rennumbers the footnotes accordingly.

Want to add a footnote continuation notice? For footnotes that continue onto the next page, add a continuation notice. In normal view, click **Footnotes** (**View** menu). In the list box at the top of the footnote pane, click **All Footnotes**, click **Footnote continuation notice**, and then type the text of the notice.


MS 114338

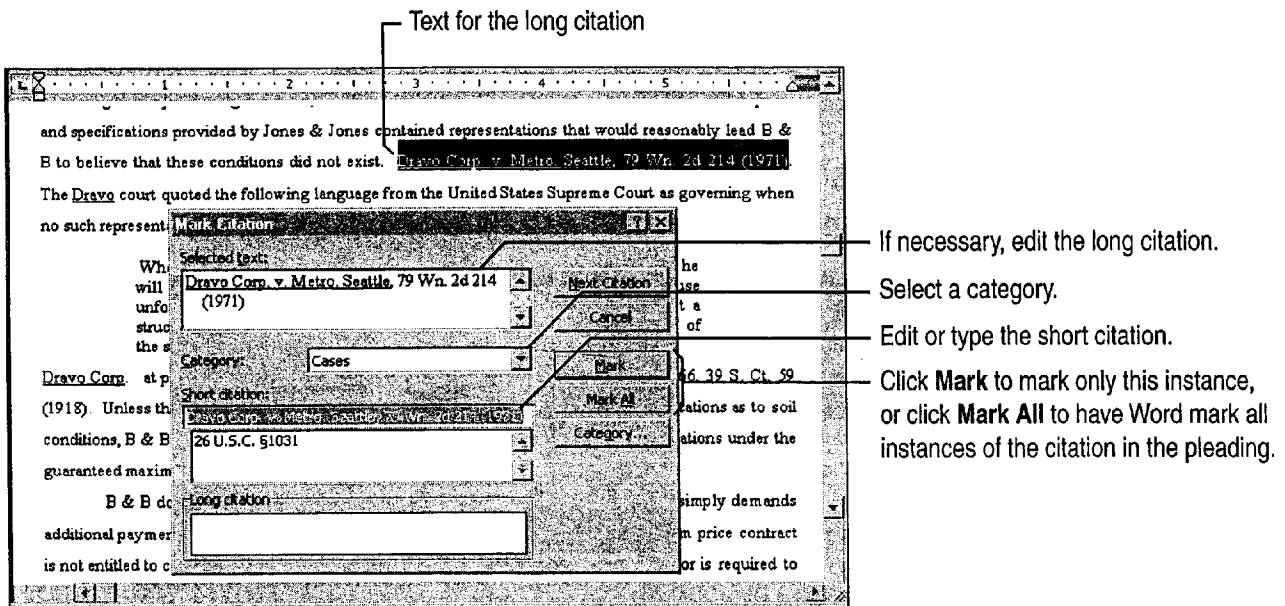
Mark Entries for a Table of Authorities

Before you can create a table of authorities, you need to mark the text to be included. After an entry is marked, Word can include the page number on which the citation occurs.

The first occurrence of a citation is the long version, such as “Forrester v. Craddock, 51 Wn. 2d 315 (1957).” Subsequent references are the short version, such as “Forrester v. Craddock.”

To find the first long citation, scroll through the text. Select the text for the first citation, and then press ALT+SHIFT+I to display the **Mark Citation** dialog box.

 For Help on dialog box options, click this button and then click the option.




Text for the long citation

If necessary, edit the long citation.


Select a category.

Edit or type the short citation.

Click **Mark** to mark only this instance, or click **Mark All** to have Word mark all instances of the citation in the pleading.

 **Have Word search for citations** Word can search for common abbreviations that are found in long citations, such as *v.*, *ID.*, *ibid*, *Cong.*, *Sess.*, or *in re*. In the **Mark Citation** dialog box, just click **Next Citation**.

Format text for the long citation To apply formatting to the case name, for example, select the text in the **Selected text** box of the **Mark Citation** dialog box, and then apply the formatting you want.

 **Want to know more?** Look up **Getting Results - Pleading** in Help.

 Office Assistant button

Create a Pleading

Create a Table of Authorities

Place the insertion point where you want the table to appear in your pleading. Click the **Table of Authorities** button on the **Legal Pleading** toolbar. Select the format and any other options you want.

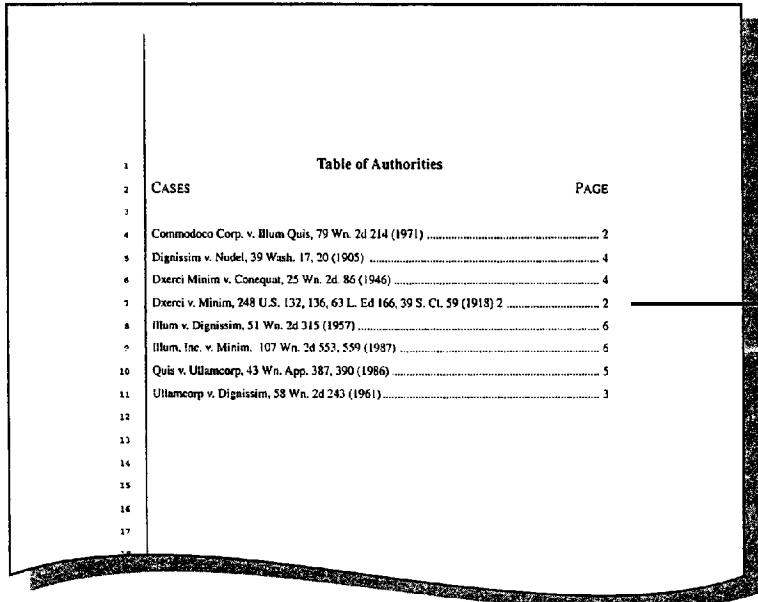


Table of Authorities	
CASES	PAGE
Commodoco Corp. v. Blum Quis, 79 Wn. 2d 214 (1971)	2
Dignissim v. Nudel, 39 Wash. 17, 20 (1905)	4
Dzerci Minim v. Conequat, 25 Wn. 2d 86 (1946)	4
Dzerci v. Minim, 248 U.S. 132, 136, 63 L. Ed 166, 39 S. Ct. 59 (1913) 2	2
Illam v. Dignissim, 51 Wn. 2d 315 (1957)	6
Illam, Inc. v. Minim, 107 Wn. 2d 553, 559 (1987)	6
Quis v. Ullamcorp, 43 Wn. App. 387, 390 (1986)	5
Ullamcorp v. Dignissim, 58 Wn. 2d 243 (1961)	3

Word can automatically update the page numbers in the table of authorities.

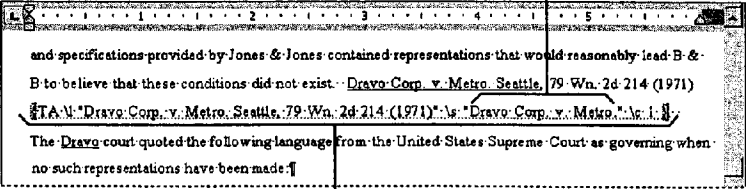
MS 114340

Part 15 Create Legal Documents

Make Changes to a Table of Authorities

Edit the entries Before you make any changes, display paragraph marks (if they aren't displayed already) by clicking the **Show/Hide ¶** button.

To edit an entry in a table of authorities, edit the text within the quotation marks.



To delete an entry, select the entire entry, including the braces, and then press DELETE OR BACKSPACE.

Update the table To have the table of authorities reflect editing changes, click the table of authorities, and then press F9.

Next Steps

To	See
See additional information on legal writing	"Create a Legal Contract," page 611
Fax your pleading to a client	"Create a Fax Cover Sheet and Send a Fax," page 192
Get comments on the pleading	"Have Your Team Review a Word Document," page 406
Change the formatting	"Make Your Word Document Look Great," page 127

MS 114341


Create a Legal Contract

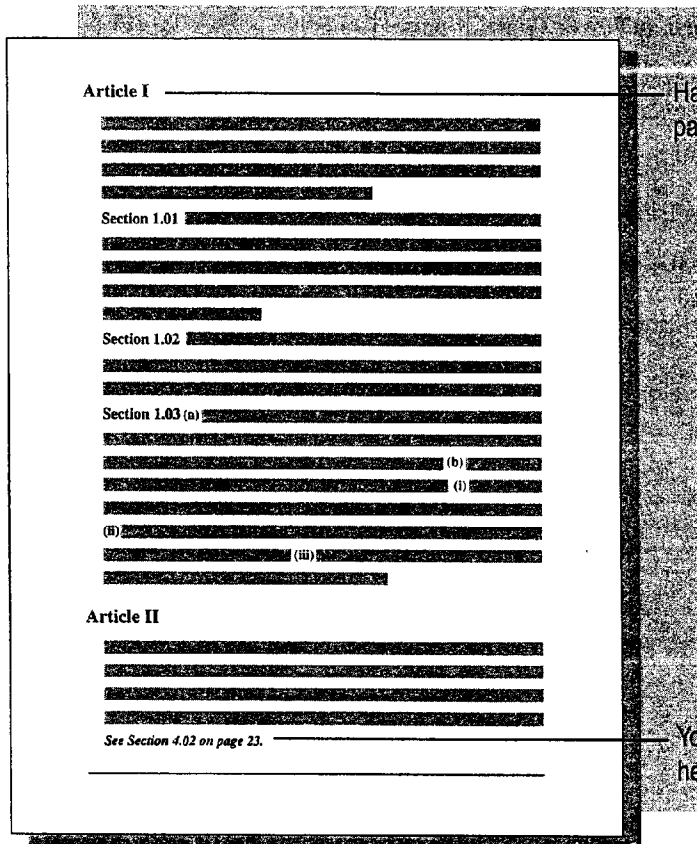
Use Word to Create Legal Documents

Whether you are writing a contract or corporate bylaws, Word provides tools to help you create the document efficiently.

For example, you can add numbering to headings, paragraphs, or items within a paragraph. You can also add cross-references to numbered paragraphs and to items located elsewhere in the document. Word keeps track of the page numbers for you so that you don't have to manually update the cross-references.

Key Features

-  Numbering Paragraphs
 - Cross-References
-



Have Word automatically number headings, paragraphs, and items within paragraphs.

You can include cross-references to numbered items, headings, footnotes, figures, and tables.

MS 114342

Create a Legal Contract



Create a template you can use next time See "Save Your Own Documents as Templates," page 52.

Insert boilerplate text To make it easy to add boilerplate text from other legal documents, display the **AutoText** toolbar by clicking **AutoText (View menu, Toolbars submenu)**. For more information on using AutoText entries, see "Make Writing Easier," page 231.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Legal Contract** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114344

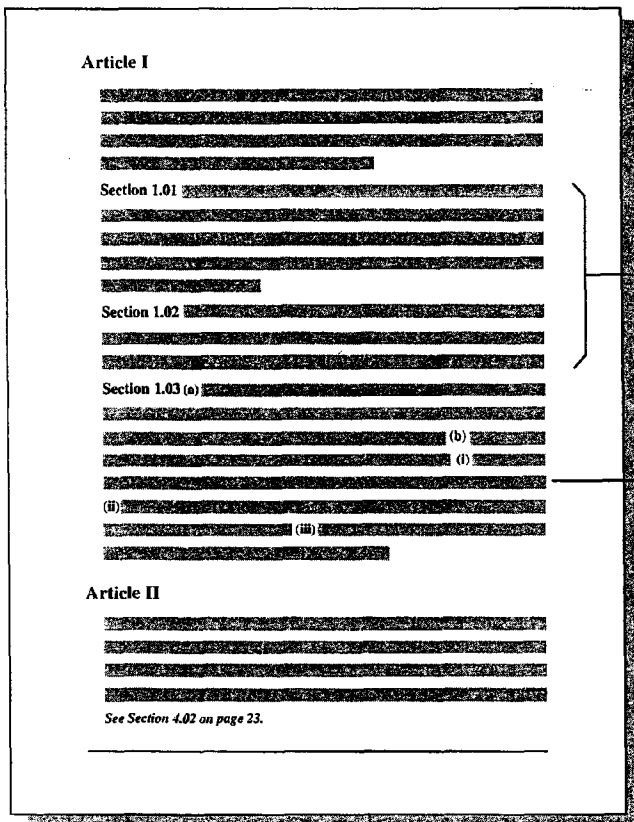
Add Numbering to Headings and Paragraphs

You can apply numbering to headings, paragraphs, and items within a paragraph. You can also mix levels of numbers, such as Section 1.01 (i).

Headings If you apply built-in heading styles, such as Heading 1, to headings in your document, you can have Word automatically number them. Click **Bullets and Numbering (Format menu)**. On the **Outline Numbered** tab, click the format you want.

Paragraphs Use the same procedure as for numbering headings. If the font and formatting of the heading style is not what you want, you can redefine the heading style by clicking **Style (Format menu)**. In the **Styles** box, select the style you want to change, and then click the **Modify** button.

Items within a numbered paragraph To include multiple outline numbers in a single line, such as Section 1.01 (i), use the ListNum field. Click in front of the first item you want to number, and then press ALT+CONTROL+L. Repeat for each item you want to number.



To include numbered headings like these, select a format on the **Outline Numbered** tab of the **Bullets and Numbering** dialog box (**Format menu**).

To include different numbering levels on the same line or in the same paragraph, use the ListNum field by pressing ALT+CONTROL+L.

MS 114345

Create a Legal Contract



Continue a numbered list across unnumbered paragraphs If you have unnumbered paragraphs in a list, you can still have a continuously numbered list. Select the item with which you want to continue numbering. Click **Bullets and Numbering** (**Format** menu). On the **Numbered** tab, click **Continue previous list**.

Change the numbering format used in the ListNum field To change the format from (i) to (a), for example, select the ListNum field, and then click the **Increase Indent** button or **Decrease Indent** button to see a list of options.



Increase Indent
button



Decrease Indent
button



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Legal Contract** in Help.



Office Assistant button

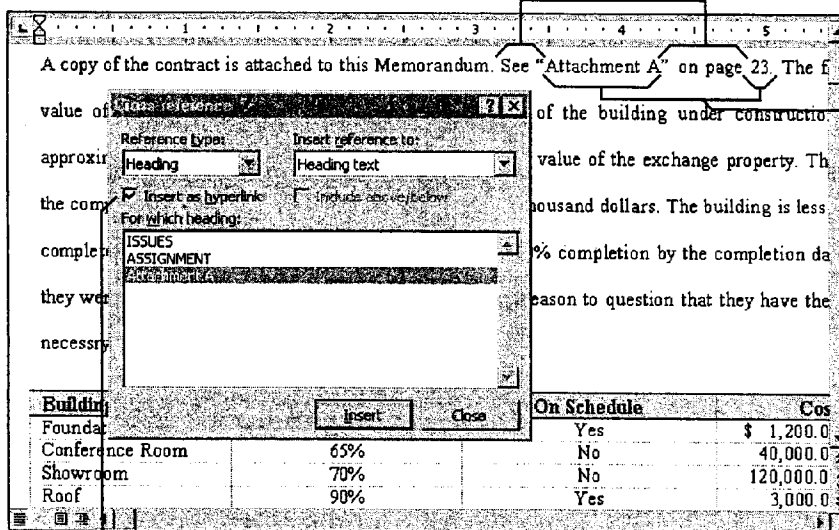
MS 114346

Add Automatic Cross-References

When you want readers to be aware of information in other parts of your contract, include the title, the paragraph number, the page number, or all three, so that readers can find the information quickly. Word can automatically add cross-references to many elements in your document: headings with built-in heading styles, numbered headings and paragraphs, footnotes, and figures and tables with captions.

Just type the text for the cross-reference in your document. For example, type **See “** and then click **Cross-Reference (Insert menu)**. Type the closing quotation mark, and then type **on page** if you want to add the page reference.

You type the “skeleton” of the cross-reference.



Based on the selections you make in the **Cross-reference** dialog box, Word inserts the title and the correct page number.

To allow online readers to jump to an item in the same document, make sure this check box is selected.

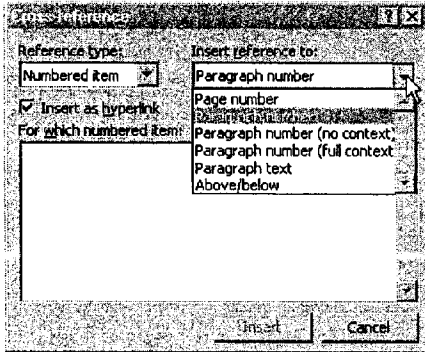


Need to update page numbers in cross-references? Select your document by clicking **Select All (Edit menu)**, and then press F9.

MS 114347

Add Cross-References to Numbered Paragraphs

You can add cross-references to numbered paragraphs, numbered headings, and even numbered items in a paragraph. In the **Cross-Reference** dialog box, select **Numbered Item** from the **Reference type** list. From the **Insert reference to** list, select the numbering option that you want.



Next Steps

To	See
Fax the document to a client	“Create a Fax Cover Sheet and Send a Fax,” page 192
Get comments on the document	“Have Your Team Review a Word Document,” page 406
Change the formatting	“Make Your Word Document Look Great,” page 127

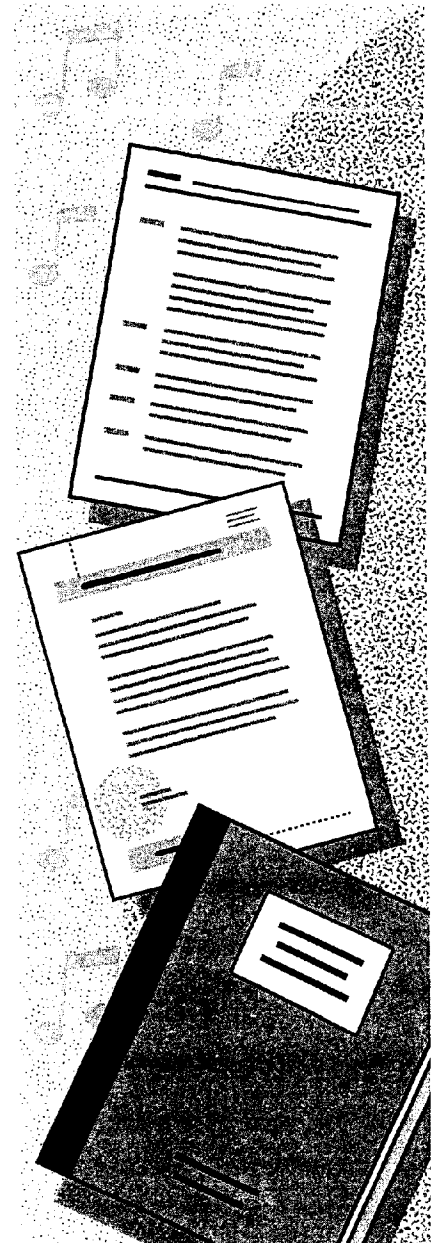
MS 114348

PART 16

The Home Office

Contents

- Create a Resume and Cover Letter 620
- Catalog Your Music Collection 626
- Record Your Home Assets 631



MS 114349

Getting Results with Microsoft Office 619


Create a Resume and Cover Letter

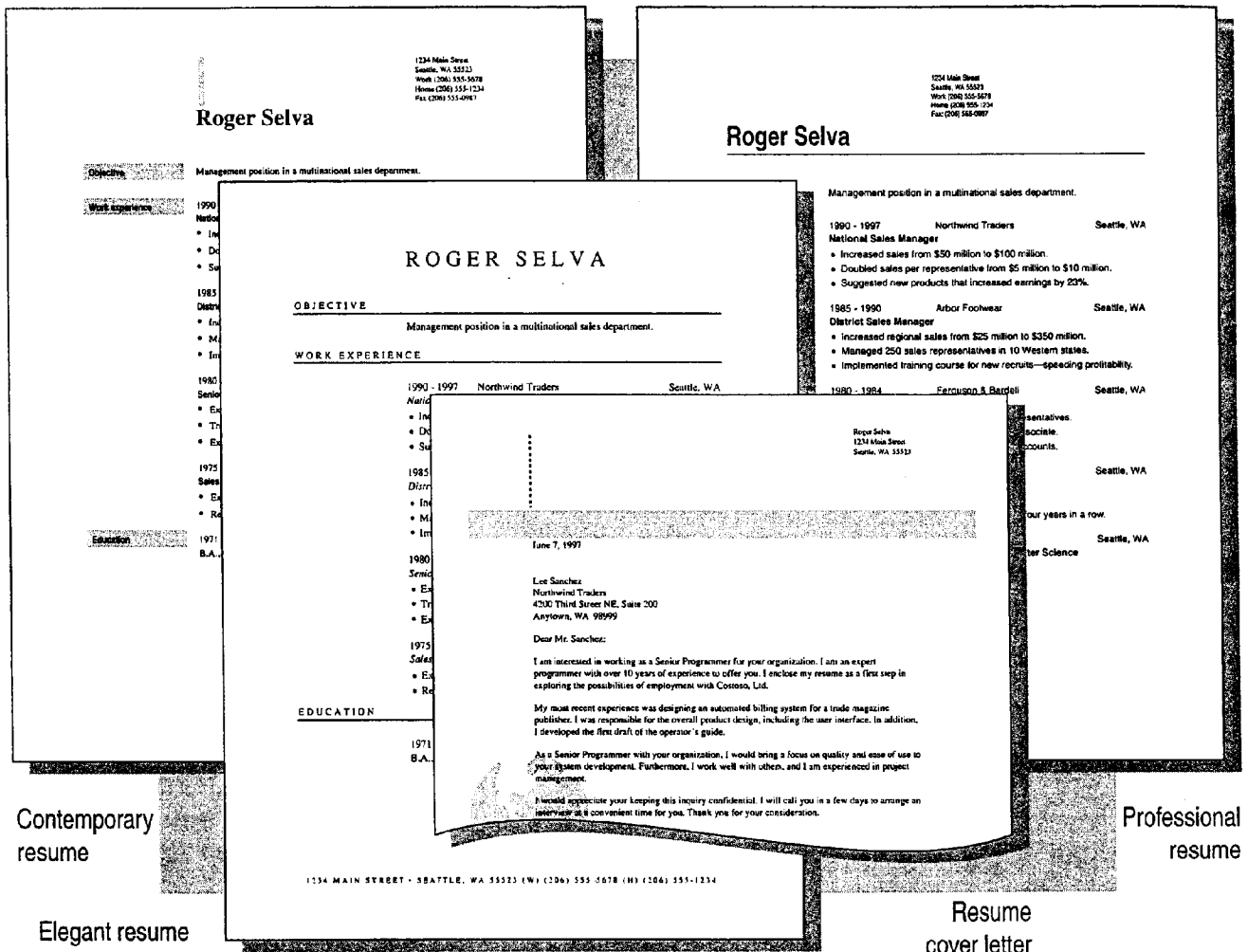
a.k.a. Curriculum Vitae or CV

Creating a resume from scratch may be the first step in your job search. Or you might want to create an online version of your resume so you can update it easily or send it via fax or e-mail. Whatever the reason, you need a resume that stands out from the rest.

The Resume Wizard and resume templates help you create a resume that highlights your skills and experiences. You can also produce a cover letter and matching envelope.

Key Features

 Resume Wizard



Contemporary resume

Elegant resume

Professional resume

Resume cover letter

ROGER SELVA

OBJECTIVE
Management position in a multinational sales department.

WORK EXPERIENCE

1990 - 1997 Northwind Traders Seattle, WA
National Sales Manager
• Increased sales from \$50 million to \$100 million.
• Doubled sales per representative from \$5 million to \$10 million.
• Suggested new products that increased earnings by 23%.

1985 - 1990 Arbor Footwear Seattle, WA
District Sales Manager
• Increased regional sales from \$25 million to \$350 million.
• Managed 250 sales representatives in 10 Western states.
• Implemented training course for new recruits—speeding profitability.

1980 - 1984 Ferguson & Bartlett Seattle, WA
Sales Representative

EDUCATION

1971 B.A.

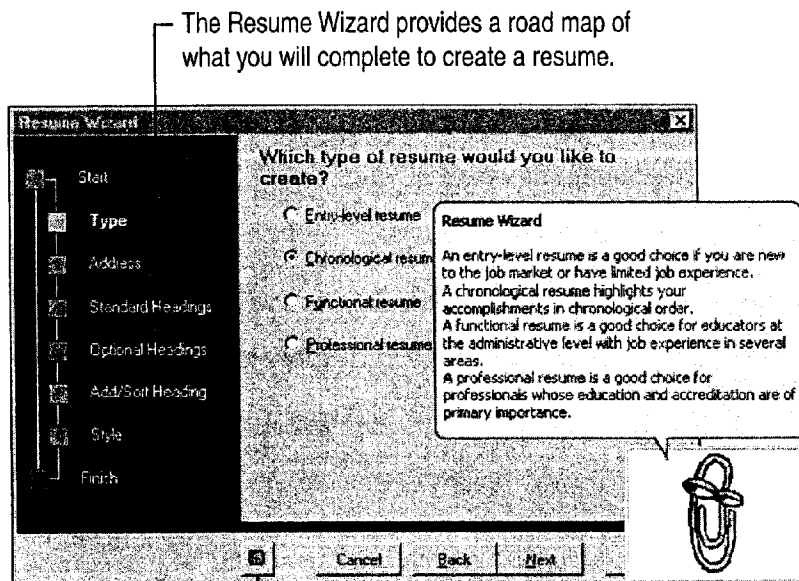
1234 Main Street - Seattle, WA 98101 (206) 555-5678 (H) (206) 555-1234 (F)

Dear Mr. Sanchez:
I am interested in working as a Senior Programmer for your organization. I am an expert programmer with over 10 years of experience to offer you. I enclose my resume as a first step in exploring the possibilities of employment with Costoso, Ltd.
My most recent experience was designing an automated billing system for a trade magazine publisher. I was responsible for the overall product design, including the user interface. In addition, I developed the first draft of the operator's guide.
As a Senior Programmer with your organization, I would bring a focus on quality and ease of use to your system development. Furthermore, I work well with others, and I am experienced in project management.
I would appreciate your keeping this inquiry confidential. I will call you in a few days to arrange an interview at a convenient time for you. Thank you for your consideration.

Use the Resume Wizard to Get Started

To start the Resume Wizard, click **New** (File menu). On the **Other Documents** tab, double-click **Resume Wizard**. In English versions of Word distributed outside the U.S. and Canada, the Resume Wizard is called the Curriculum Vitae Wizard.

The Resume Wizard walks you through a series of steps in which you add or select information to set up the basic content and layout of the resume. When you click **Finish**, the new resume appears. All you need to do is fill in the details.



Click this button to get Help from the Office Assistant.



Need a cover letter or want to send your resume by fax or e-mail?

Immediately after you create a resume with the wizard, the Office Assistant gives you these options. Just click the option you want. For more information, see "Write a Cover Letter," page 624.

Don't like the style of your resume? If you want to change your resume right after you've created it, it's very easy. Immediately after you create a resume with the wizard, the Office Assistant gives you several formatting options, such as changing the style or shrinking the resume to fit on a page. Just click the option you want.

Use a resume template If you want an attractive, ready-to-fill-in resume, use one of the resume templates. Click **New**. On the **Other Documents** tab, double-click the resume template you want.

MS 114351

Add Your Information to the Resume

Since you'll probably be following the same formatting for entries, under Work Experience for example, here are some suggestions to make it quicker and easier to add information:

Show table gridlines The resume that the wizard helped you create is set up as a table. Tables make it easy to align information. If the table gridlines aren't already showing, click **Show Gridlines** (Table menu). The gridlines make it easier for you to select, copy, add, or delete the contents of a row or cell, but they won't show up when you print the resume.

Copy the contents of a row Select a row or rows, click the **Copy** button, click where you want to insert the information you've copied, and then click the **Paste** button.



Copy button



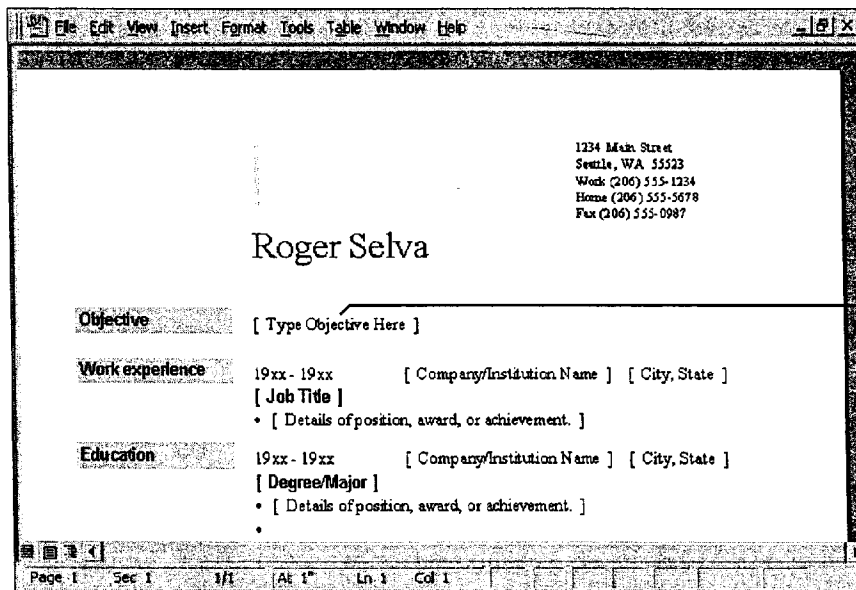
Paste button

Add a row to a table Position the insertion point in the row that you want to be below the new row, and then click the **Insert Rows** button.



Insert Rows button

Add a row to the end of a table Position the insertion point in the last cell of the last row, and then press TAB.

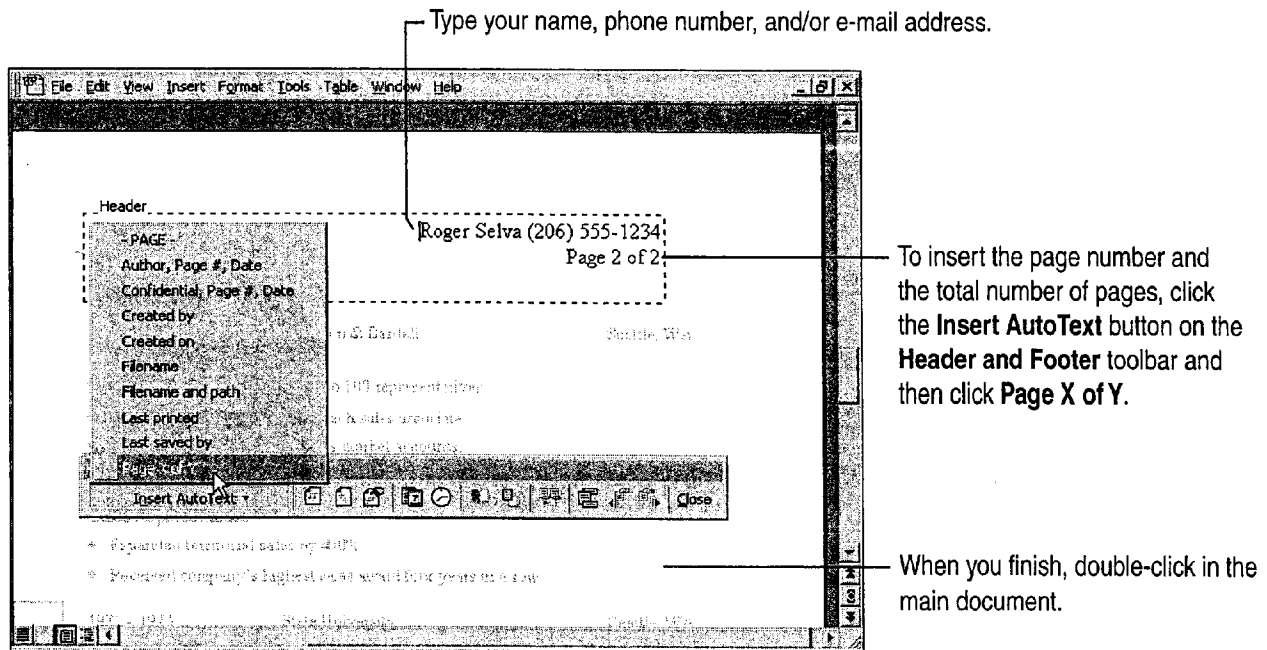


Click or select the sample text, and then type your own information.

Add a Second Page —or More

If you decide to include multiple pages, you can add your name, phone number or e-mail address, and the page number to the top of each page. That way, a prospective employer can easily tell if pages are missing or out of order.

Click **Header and Footer (View menu)** to display the **Header and Footer** toolbar. If necessary, click the **Show Next** button on the **Header and Footer** toolbar to switch to the header for the second and subsequent pages.



Like the result—and want to use it to start your next resume? Save your resume as a template. Click **Save As (File menu)**, and then select **Document Template** in the **Save as type** box.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Resume** in Help.



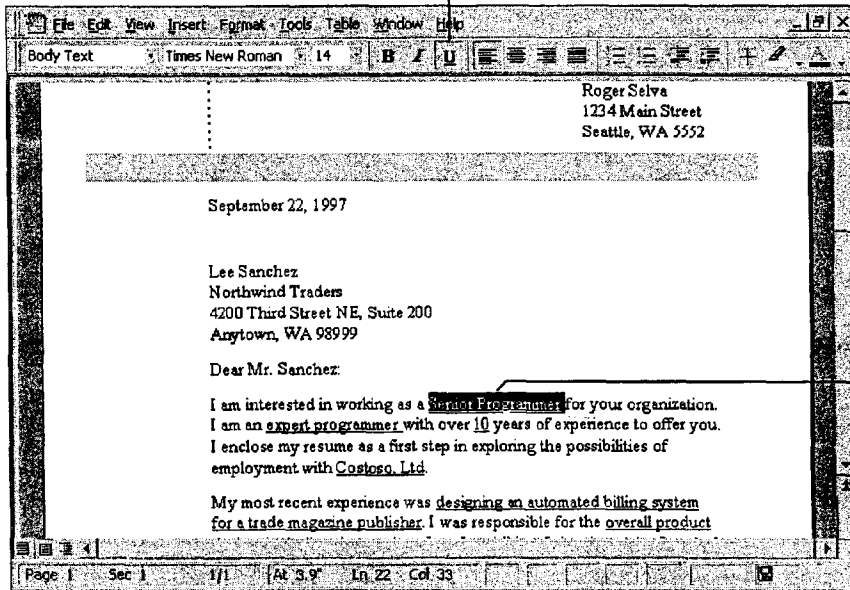
Office Assistant button

MS 114353

Write a Cover Letter

Grab a prospective employer's attention by including a polished, professional cover letter that tailors your skills and achievements to the job description. To get a head start on your cover letter, use the sample that the Office Assistant provides. Select **Add a cover letter** from the options that the Assistant gives you after you create your resume.

To remove the underlining, select the text and then click the **Underline** button.



Select the underlined text, and then type over it.

MS 114354



Did you create a cover letter before filling in your resume? Use the **Window** menu to switch to it and edit the contents. Otherwise, use the Letter Wizard. Start your letter by typing **Dear** followed by a name, and then press ENTER. The Assistant will ask if you want help writing a letter. For more information, see “Write a Business Letter,” page 184.

Record the employer’s address for follow-up correspondence Use your Microsoft Exchange personal address book or Outlook contact list. For more information, look up **Getting Results - Resume** in Help.

Send your resume via fax or e-mail Immediately after you create a resume, the Office Assistant gives you the **Send resume to someone** option. Click it, and then specify how you want the resume sent. If you decide to fax your resume, the Fax Wizard appears. If you decide to e-mail your resume, a message is opened and your resume is attached.

Print an envelope With the cover letter on the screen, click **Envelopes and Labels (Tools menu)**. Change any options you want, insert the envelope into the printer as shown in the **Feed** box, and then click **Print**.

Next Steps


To	See
Add even more visual impact	“Make Your Word Document Look Great,” page 127
Fax a copy of your resume	“Create a Fax Cover Sheet and Send a Fax,” page 192
Send a copy of your resume in an e-mail message	“Distribute Documents Online,” page 396
Schedule an interview	“Schedule an Appointment,” page 383
Write follow-up correspondence	“Write a Business Letter,” page 184
Keep track of contacts	“Manage Contacts with Outlook,” page 348 “Create a Business Contact List in Microsoft Excel,” page 353 “Track Your Business Contacts in Microsoft Access,” page 360

MS 114355

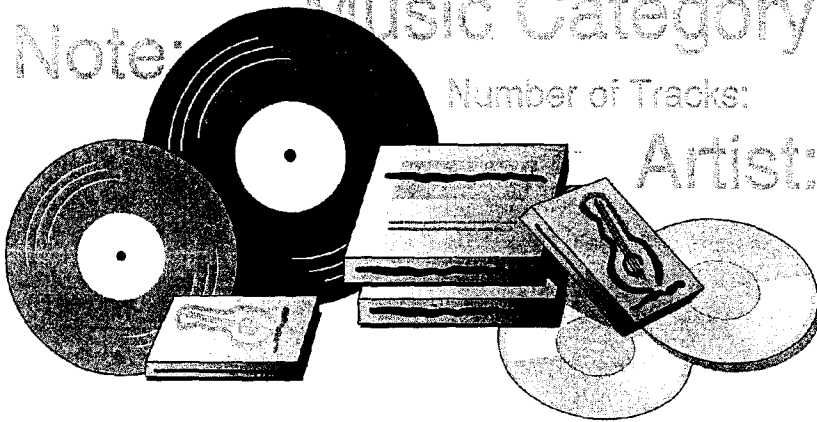
Catalog Your Music Collection

If you have a large collection of CDs, tapes, and albums, you can create a database to catalog your collection and make individual selections or artists easier to find. Use the Microsoft Access Database Wizard to create the database. Then, when you need to find recordings by a particular artist or to print a list of your entire CD collection, just specify in your search the information you need.

Key Features

-  Database Wizard
 - Filter by Form
 - Filter by Selection
-

Purchase Price: Year released:
Recording Label:
Date Purchased:
Album ID: Album Title:
Format:
Music Category:
Note: Number of Tracks:
Artist:



To complete the steps in this topic you need Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed.

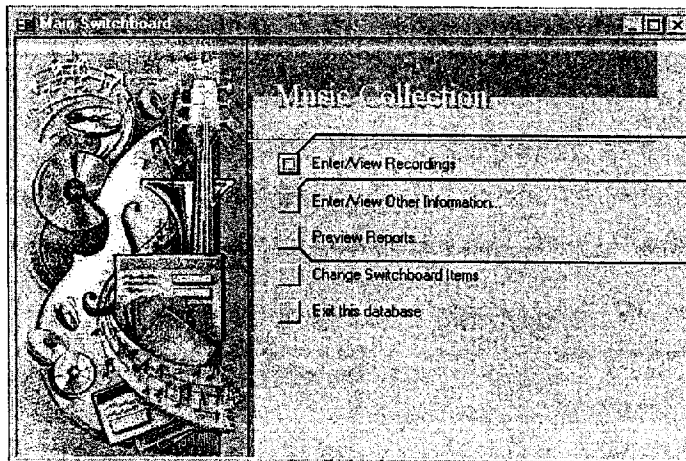
Create a Music Database

With the Database Wizard, you can create everything you need to catalog your music collection, so that you can find the information you want. To use the wizard, start Microsoft Access, click **Database Wizard**, and on the **Databases** tab, double-click **Music Collection**. Or, if you've already started Microsoft Access, click the **New Database** button, and on the **Databases** tab, double-click **Music Collection**. Then, follow the instructions in the wizard. If you want ideas on how to catalog your music collection, select the sample data option.



New Database button

The Database Wizard creates everything you need to catalog and search your music database, including a switchboard for opening forms, tables, and reports.



- Click here to store information about recordings.
- Click here to store information about specific artists or music categories.
- Click here to preview reports by artist, category, format, or track.



Want to create a new database without using the Database Wizard? Click the **New Database** button, and on the **General** tab, click **Blank Database**.

Set up other types of databases with the Database Wizard You can use the Database Wizard to create many types of databases for business and personal use, including databases for tracking business contacts and cataloging valuable household items. For more information on creating a database to catalog household items, see "Record Your Home Assets," page 631.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Music** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114357

Add Information About Your Music Collection

Now you're ready to add information about your music collection to the new database. You'll enter most of the information you need on the Recordings form.

On the Music Collection switchboard, click **Enter/View Recordings**. If you selected the sample data option when the Database Wizard created the database, you can use this data as an example of what to enter in each field.

Use the Recordings form to store details about each CD, tape, or album in your collection.

Track	Track Title	Track Length
1	Blooming Meadows	12:06
2	Falling Petals	10:11
3	Sweet Hyacinth	7:45
4	Crystal Images	6:12
5	Soothing Sounds	14:29
6	Mayan Majesties	12:22

Use the Track subform to store details about individual selections from a CD, tape, or album.



Want to track additional details about artists and music categories? On the switchboard, click **Enter/View Other Information**, and then use the Recording Artists and Music Categories forms.

Find Selections by Your Favorite Artist

Now, if you want to hear something by your favorite artist, you can search your database quickly for a list of that artist's selections. Use the **Filter by Form** button to narrow your search.

On the Music Collection switchboard, click **Enter/View Recordings**. Click the **Filter by Form** button, and then select the details you want to search for.



Filter by Form button

Choose your favorite artist ...

... and the music category ...

... and then click **Apply Filter** to see details about the first recording by that artist that Microsoft Access finds.

Track	Track Title	Track Length
1	Blooming Meadows	12:06
2	Falling Petals	10:11
3	Sweet Hyacinth	7:45
4	Crystal Images	6:12
5	Soothing Sounds	14:28
6	Mayan Majesties	12:22



Review all records after filtering Each time you begin a search, click the **Remove Filter** button first, so that Microsoft Access looks through all the records in the database.



Remove Filter button

Find all works by a particular artist or all albums in a particular category In the Recordings form, select the data in the field that contains the information you want (for example, "Chopin," in the Artist field), and then click the **Filter by Selection** button.



Filter by Selection button

Want to find data that meets either of two criteria? For example, to find recordings by either Beethoven or Chopin, click the **Filter by Form** button, click the field that contains Beethoven's name, click the arrow that appears to the right of that field, and then select Beethoven's name from the list of artists. Click the **Or** tab and then click the arrow that appears to the right of the field that contains Chopin's name. Select Chopin's name from the list of artists and then click the **Apply Filter** button.



Filter by Form button

MS 114359

Part 16 The Home Office

Next Steps

To	See
Create your own database without using wizards	"Design a Custom Inventory Database," page 492

MS 114360

Record Your Home Assets

Do you need to keep track of valuable household items for insurance or inheritance purposes? You can use Microsoft Access to catalog furniture, art, and other assets. When you add this information to a database, you have an inventory of all your assets in one location that's easy to update.

Key Features



Database Wizard

Use Microsoft Access to organize your household inventory and print several types of reports.

Inventory by Category

Collectible					
Description	Room	Model Number	Model	Serial Number	Value
Baseball card collection	Den				\$500
Summary for 'CategoryName' = Collectible (1 detail record)					
Sum					\$500

Electronic					
Description	Room	Model Number	Model	Serial Number	Value
Audio-Visual Receiver	Living Room	AV-520		AVZZZ98333257	
Computer	Den	1089	375	00001	\$2,500
Summary for 'CategoryName' = Electronic (2 detail records)					
Sum					\$2,500

Furniture	
Description	Room
Ebony inlaid table	Dining Room
Gray three-cushion sofa	Living Room
Summary for 'CategoryName' = Furniture	
Sum	

Jewelry	
Description	Room
Pearl necklace	Bedroom

Inventory Details

Household Inv ID:

Description:

Room:

Model:

Model Number:

Serial Number:

Inventory by Room

Bedroom							
Description	Category Name	Model Number	Model	Serial Number	Value	Cost	
Exercise Bike	Sports Equipment	KK200	Deluxe	1234ABCD0001234	\$100.00	\$200.00	
Pearl necklace	Jewelry				\$250.00		
Summary for 'Room' = Bedroom (2 detail records)							
Sum						\$350.00	\$200.00

Den							
Description	Category Name	Model Number	Model	Serial Number	Value	Cost	
Baseball card collection	Collectible				\$500.00		
Pearl necklace	Jewelry	KK200	Deluxe	1234ABCD0001234	\$250.00	\$200.00	
Summary for 'Room' = Den (2 detail records)							
Sum						\$3,000.00	\$3,000.00

Dining Room							
Description	Category Name	Model Number	Model	Serial Number	Value	Cost	
Ebony inlaid table	Furniture					\$250.00	
Summary for 'Room' = Dining Room (1 detail record)							
Sum						\$350.00	\$250.00

Garage							
Description	Category Name	Model Number	Model	Serial Number	Value	Cost	
Cordless drill	Tool	PK200	Deluxe	XXX8373220	\$1,250.00	\$2,000.00	
Mountain Bike	Sports Equipment				\$1,000.00	\$1,329.00	

MS 114361

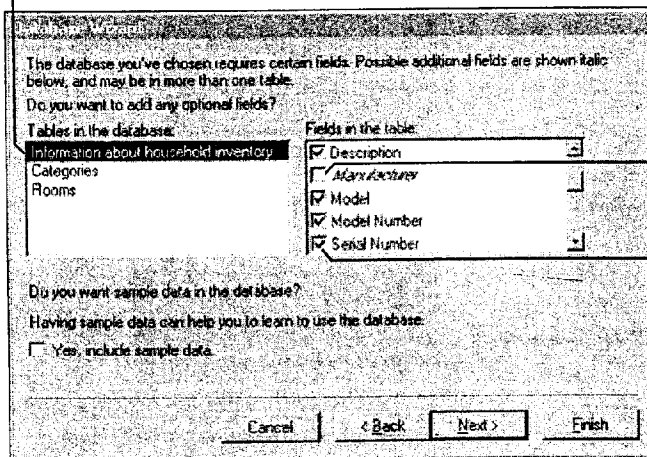
Create a Household Inventory Database

Use the Database Wizard to quickly create a database with the information you need to record your home assets.

To use the wizard, start Microsoft Access, click **Database Wizard**, and on the **Databases** tab, double-click **Household Inventory**. Follow the instructions in the wizard to create the tables, forms, and reports you need to catalog your household assets. If you want to see the types of information that you can include in your database, select the sample data option.

The Database Wizard creates all the fields you need to catalog your household assets.

Click to select a table. All the fields associated with that table are displayed in the adjacent list.



Optional fields are in italics. Select an optional field to add it to the database.

Clear a selected field to remove it from the database.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Home Assets** in Help.



Office Assistant button

Record Assets in the Database

After you create the database, you're ready to add information about your household items. On the Household Inventory switchboard, click **Enter/View House Inventory** to type your data.

Click here to add information to the database.

Use the Household Inventory form to add details about the asset and its location, and any other relevant information.

Click here to select a category for the asset.

Click here to preview the Inventory Details report.



Add additional categories to the database On the Household Inventory switchboard, click **Enter/View Other Information**, and then click **Enter/View Categories** to modify or add new categories to the database.

Print an inventory report organized the way you want On the switchboard, click **Preview Reports**, and then select an option to preview the items in your database. Items can be organized by asset, by value, by category, or by contents per room. When you're ready to print a report, click **Print**.



Print button

Next Steps

To	See
Use a filter to search for specific items in your database	"Catalog Your Music Collection," page 626

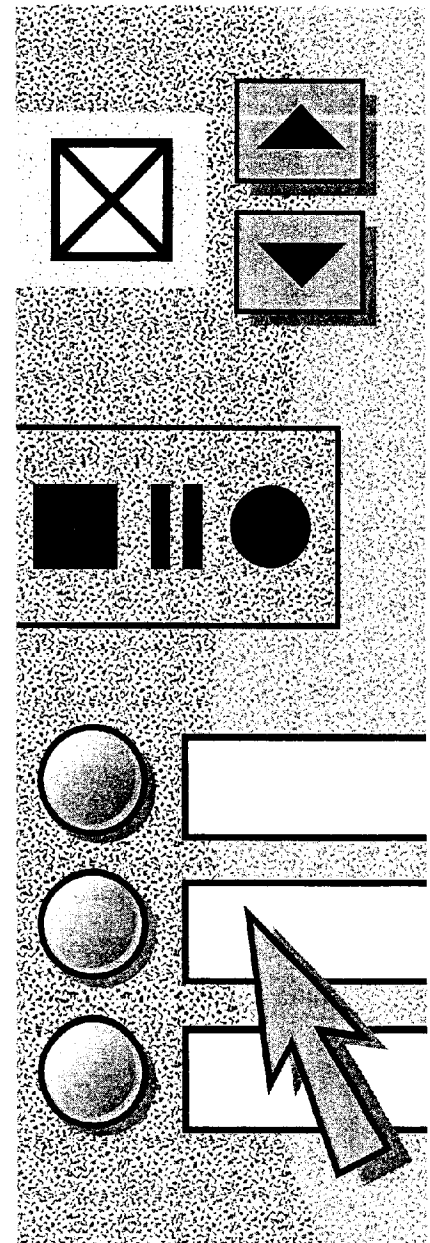
MS 114363

PART 17

Automate and Program Office

Contents

- Customize Office 636
- Automate Repetitive Tasks 643
- Automate Repetitive Tasks in Microsoft Access 649



MS 114364

Getting Results with Microsoft Office 635

Customize Office

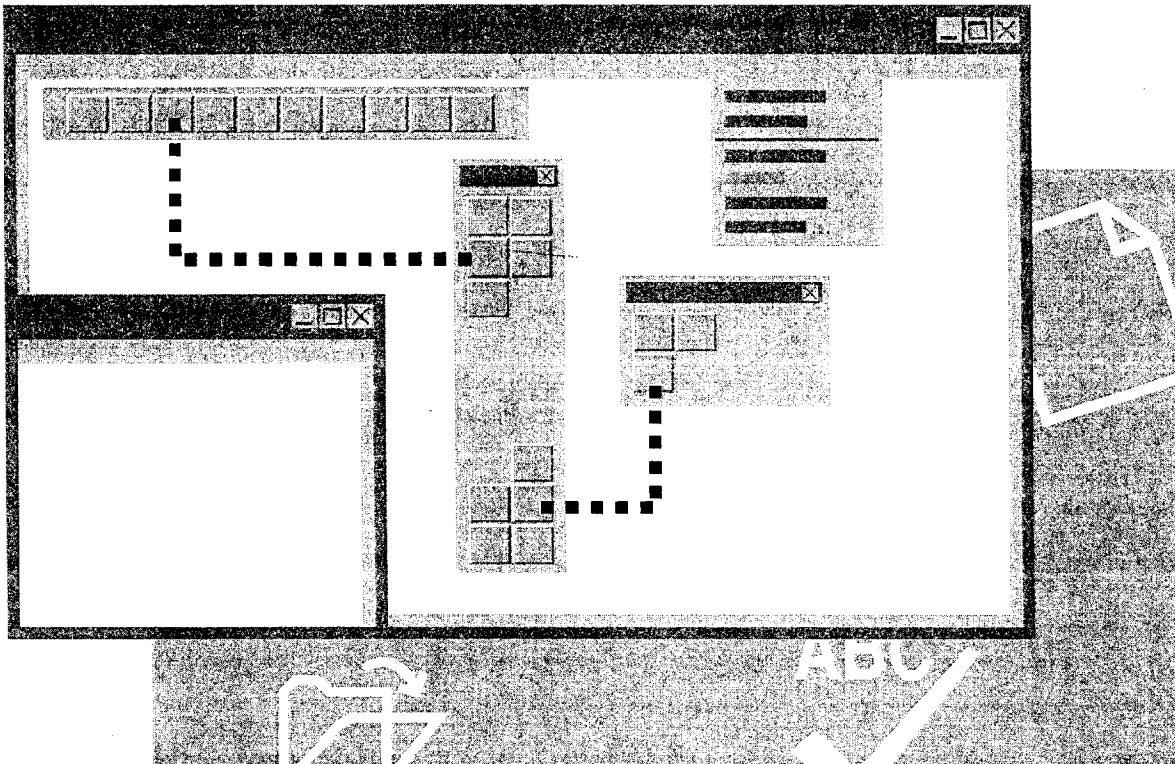
Rearrange Your Work Environment to Suit Your Working Style

When you move into a new office, the first thing you do is adjust things the way you want them: You hang pictures, adjust your chair height, and rearrange the furniture.

You can customize Office applications to match your working style as well. Change the way your screen looks and which elements are displayed, add buttons to toolbars, add commands to menus, or create your own toolbars and menus.

For quick access to commands you use frequently, add a toolbar button ...


... or add a command to a menu.



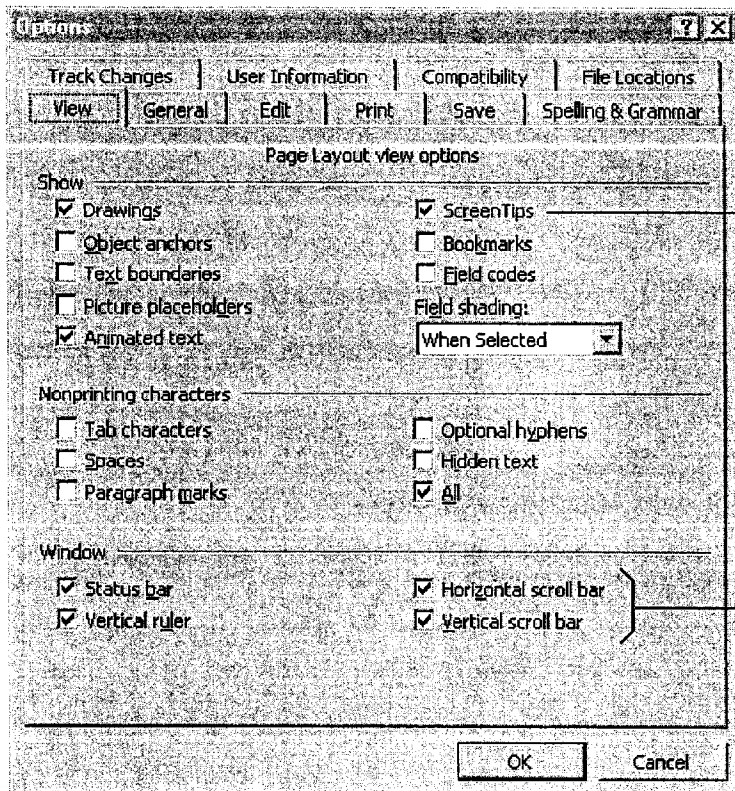
MS 114365

Adjust Your Screen Workspace

Perhaps the easiest way to customize Office applications is to adjust the amount of screen area available for your work. One way to make more screen area available is to hide toolbars that you don't need. Click **Toolbars** (**View** menu). Toolbars with a check mark next to them appear on screen; from these, click the ones you want to hide.

 For Help on dialog box options, click this button and then click the option.

In each Office application, you can also select specific screen elements to hide or display by clicking **Options** (**Tools** menu). On the **View** tab, set the options you want.



These are the view options for page layout view in Microsoft Word.

Selected check boxes indicate items that appear on the screen.

Clear these check boxes to gain more space on the screen.

MS 114366

Part 17 Automate and Program Office



Maximize the screen area in Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word Click **Full Screen (View menu)** to remove everything except your workbook or document. To access commands on the menu bar, point to the top of the screen and then click the command you want. To return to the previous view, click the **Close Full Screen** button.

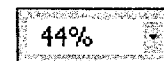


Close Full Screen button

Save and print different views in Microsoft Excel Click **Custom Views (View menu)** to create different views of a worksheet or workbook so that you can see your data with different display options. You can display, print, and store different views without saving them as separate sheets.

Want to view your file without the dots, lines, and paragraph marks? In Word, PowerPoint, and Microsoft Excel, you can determine which nonprinting elements (such as spaces, gridlines, page breaks, field codes, and formulas) you want displayed. Click **Options (Tools menu)**, and on the **View** tab, set the options you want.

Is the text on your screen too small? Use the **Zoom** box to magnify the display up to 400 percent for easy reading. In Microsoft Access, make sure you are in the print preview or layout preview view.



Zoom box

Customize the Office Assistant If you choose to display the Assistant while you're working, you can change the way in which the Assistant appears on the screen. You can also customize the kind of help that the Assistant provides. For more information, see "For Help, Ask the Office Assistant," page 38.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Customize Office** in Help.




Office Assistant button

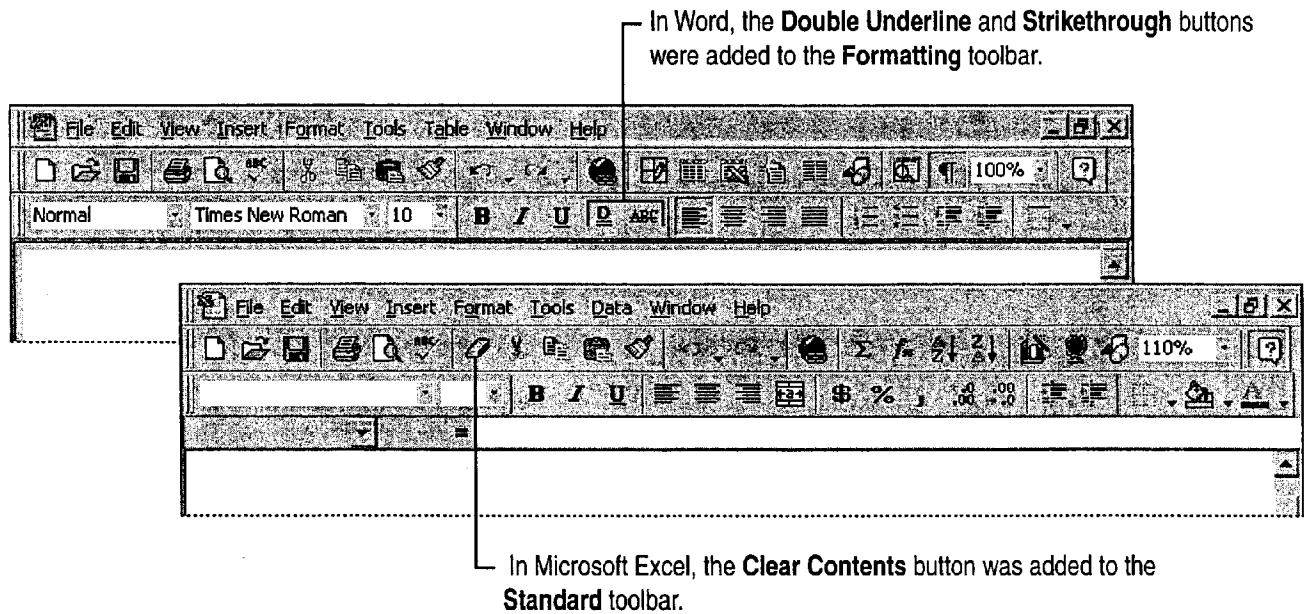
MS 114367

Customize a Toolbar with Your Favorite Buttons

Just as you place items you use often close at hand, you can put your favorite toolbar buttons where you want them. You also can rearrange buttons and remove those you don't use.

 For Help on dialog box options, click this button and then click the option.

To add a button to a toolbar, click **Customize** (**View** menu, **Toolbar** submenu). If the toolbar you want to add the button to isn't displayed, click the **Toolbars** tab, and then click the toolbar you want to change. On the **Commands** tab, select the appropriate category, and then drag the command to the toolbar.



MS 114368

Part 17 Automate and Program Office

Guidelines for Working with Toolbar Buttons and Toolbars

When the **Customize** dialog box is open, you can make a variety of changes to customize toolbars (you can even make some changes without setting options).

Move or delete a toolbar button With the **Customize** dialog box open, drag the button to the new location on the toolbar to move it, or drag it off the toolbar to delete it.

Want larger toolbar buttons? With the **Customize** dialog box open, on the **Options** tab, select the **Large icons** check box.

Display shortcut keys with ScreenTips for toolbar buttons With the **Customize** dialog box open, on the **Options** tab, select the **Show shortcut keys in ScreenTips** check box.

Move a toolbar to another location Click the move handle on a docked toolbar, or click the title bar on a floating toolbar. Then drag the toolbar to a new location.



Move handle

Want to undo changes to a built-in toolbar? With the **Customize** dialog box open, on the **Toolbars** tab, select the toolbar you want to change, and then click **Reset**.

**Move or delete buttons when the Customize dialog box isn't open**

Hold down **ALT**, and then drag the button to a new location or off the toolbar.

Create a custom toolbar With the **Customize** dialog box open, on the **Toolbars** tab, click the **New** button, and then type a name for the toolbar. On the **Commands** tab, select a category and drag a command to the toolbar.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Customize Office** in Help.



Office Assistant button

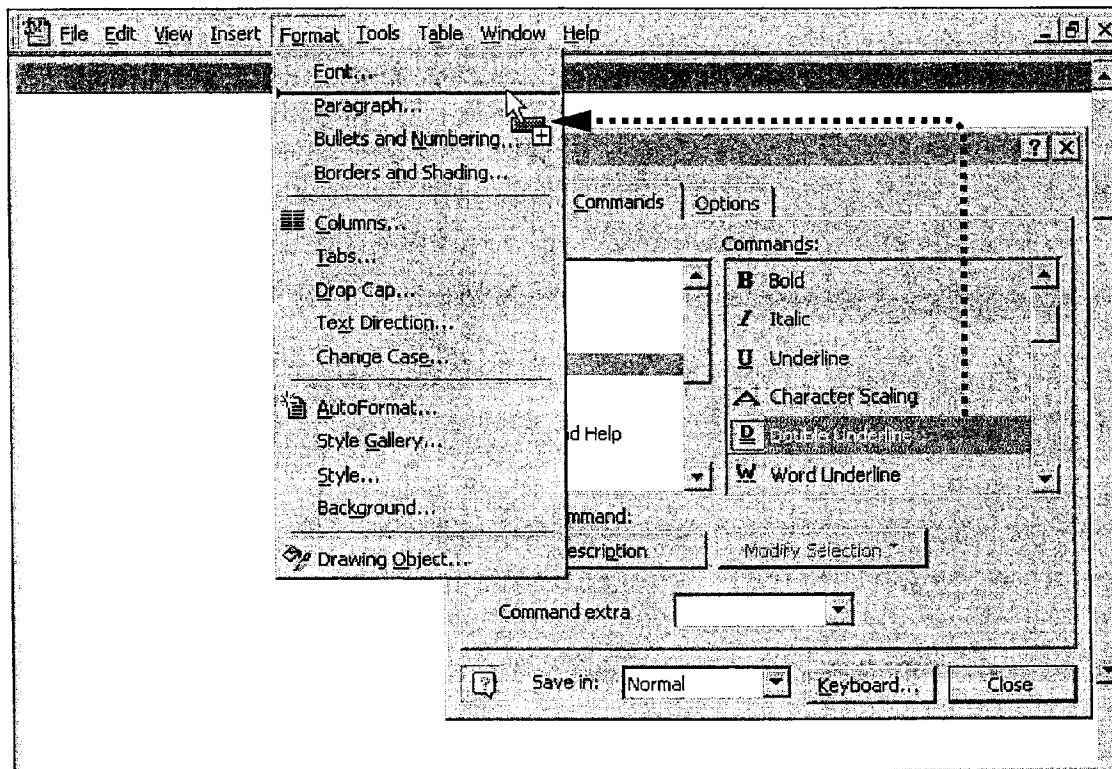
MS 114369

Modify Menus and Commands

In your toolbox at home, the tools you use most often tend to end up at the top of the box. In your Office toolbox, you can make it easy to find the menus and commands you use often. Customize existing menus by adding or removing commands, or you can create your own menus.

To add a command to a menu, click **Customize** (Tools menu). On the **Commands** tab, select a category.

Drag a command from the **Commands** box to the menu to which you want to add the command. When the menu displays, point to the location where you want the command to appear, and then release the mouse button.



MS 114370

Part 17 Automate and Program Office

Guidelines for Working with Menu Commands and Menus

Move or delete a menu command With the **Customize** dialog box open, click the menu that contains the command. Drag the command to the new location to move it, or drag it off the menu to delete it.

Create a custom menu With the **Customize** dialog box open, on the **Commands** tab, click **New Menu** in the **Categories** box. Drag **New Menu** from the **Commands** box to where you want the new menu to appear. Right-click the new menu, click in the **Name** box, and then type a name for the new menu. To add a command to the menu, select a category. Drag the command to the new menu, continue holding down the mouse button until the blank list for that menu appears, and then drag the command into the blank list.

Want to undo changes to a menu? With the **Customize** dialog box open, right-click the menu you want to restore, and then click **Reset** on the shortcut menu.

Next Steps

To	See
Create a macro and add it to a menu or toolbar	“Automate Repetitive Tasks,” page 643
Customize the Microsoft Office Shortcut Bar	“Take a Shortcut to Work,” page 44

MS 114371

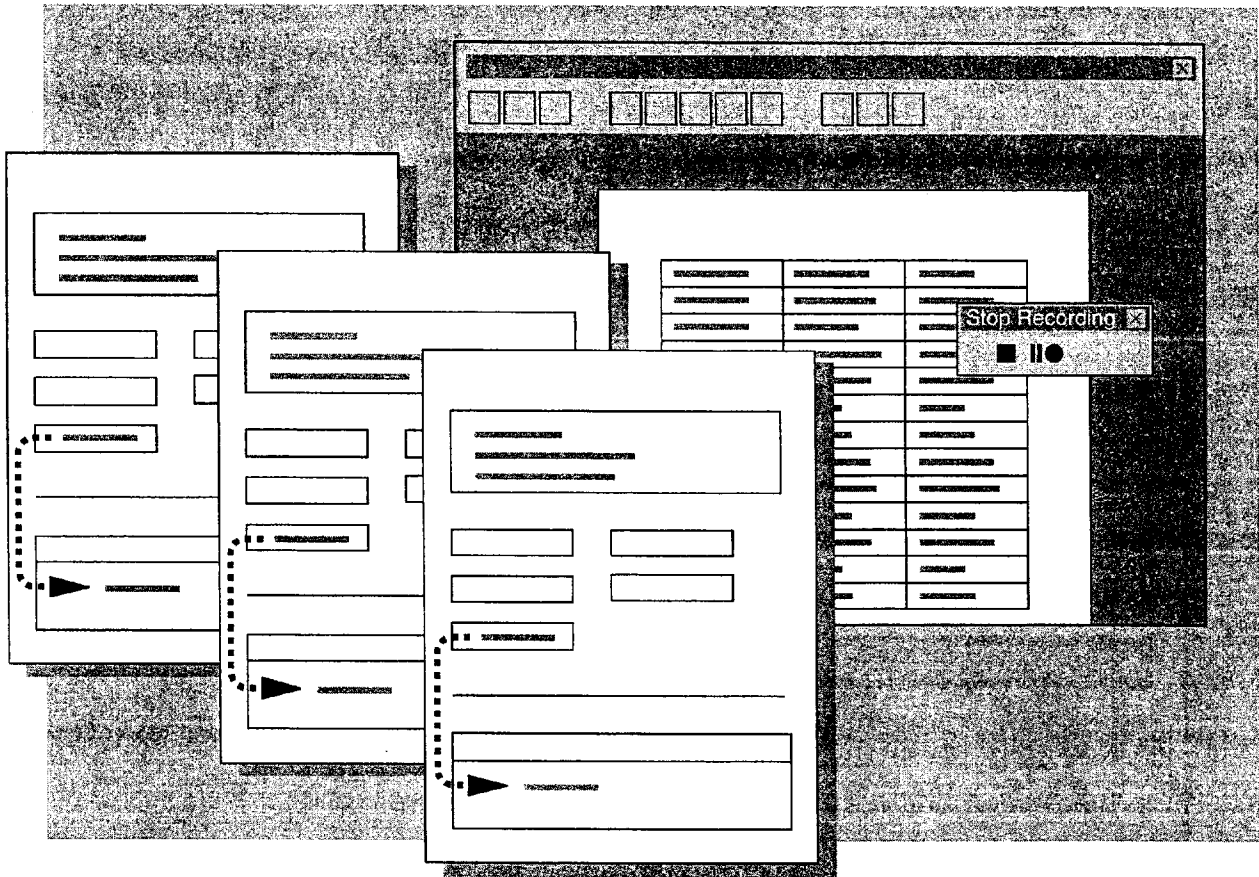
Automate Repetitive Tasks

Do you ever find yourself going through the same steps over and over to perform routine tasks? Perhaps you make the same complex text modifications again and again, repeatedly format certain worksheet cells so that they stand out, or add the same graphic to many of your slides. Or perhaps you perform more complex repetitive tasks, such as filling out employee review forms or collecting and processing payroll information.

Office provides a simple way to perform these tasks automatically. Microsoft Visual Basic for Applications is a powerful built-in programming language that enables a novice user to automate simple tasks and that enables a developer to create customized, multiple application solutions to automate complex tasks.

Key Features

Macro Recorder



MS 114372

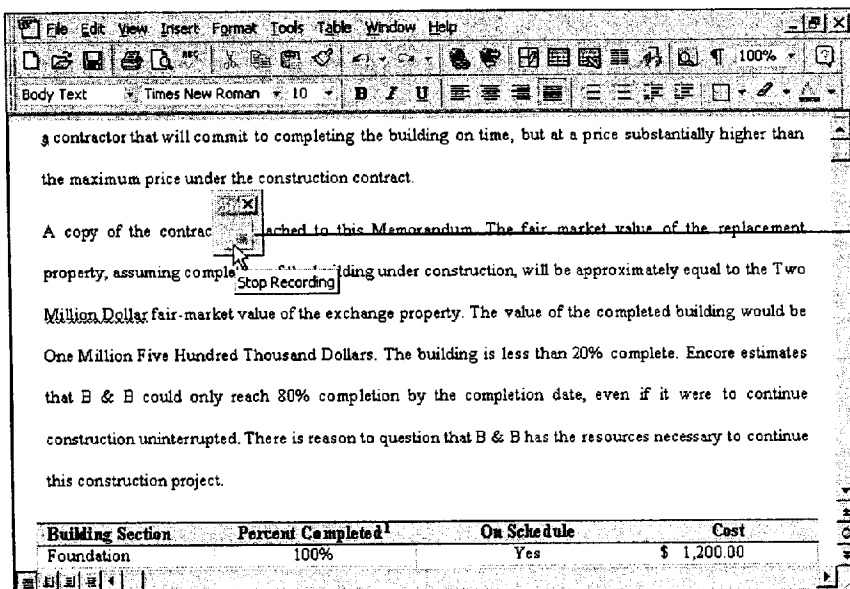
Record a Simple Task

To automate a simple task, you can “record” the task as you perform it. The set of actions you record is called a *macro*. After you have recorded a task, you can “play it back” whenever you want.

For example, suppose you often review Word documents containing revision marks. You can record a macro in Word to display the revision marks automatically. Before you begin recording the macro, make sure the **Highlight changes on screen** check box in the **Highlight Changes** dialog box (**Tools** menu) is cleared and the **Track changes while editing** check box is selected. Then start the macro recorder: Click **Record New Macro** (**Tools** menu, **Macros** submenu), and then type a name for your macro. To make it easy to remember what the macro does, use the descriptive macro name `Turn_on_change_tracking`.

The **Stop Recording** toolbar appears. Word is now ready to record your actions. Click **Highlight Changes** (**Tools** menu), select the **Highlight changes on screen** check box, and then click **OK**. Click the **Stop Recording** button. The entire sequence of actions you just performed is now stored as a macro.

You can record another macro that automatically hides revision marks. Turn on the macro recorder again and this time name your macro `Turn_off_change_tracking`. Clear the **Highlight changes on screen** check box, and then turn off the macro recorder.



The Stop Recording button

MS 114373



Does the computer beep when you click the mouse button? The macro recorder cannot record all mouse movements. If you try an action using the mouse and the computer beeps, try it again using the keyboard.

Do you really need a macro? Before recording a macro, make sure there isn't a built-in feature that accomplishes the task. Search in Help for words related to the task.

Run through the task once before you record The macro recorder records everything you do. If you know exactly what actions you want to take before you turn on the recorder, you can record a cleaner macro.

Is the Stop Recording Toolbar in the way? Just drag it to another part of the screen or dock it on one side of the window. This will not affect the macro you are recording.

Save your work When you first start recording macros, they might not always work exactly as you expect. For example, if you record a series of keystrokes with text selected and then run it with nothing selected, you might not get the results you wanted. As a precaution, always save your work immediately before you run a macro for the first time. Then, if the results are less than perfect, you can just close the document without saving changes, reopen the document, and try again.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Automate** in Help.

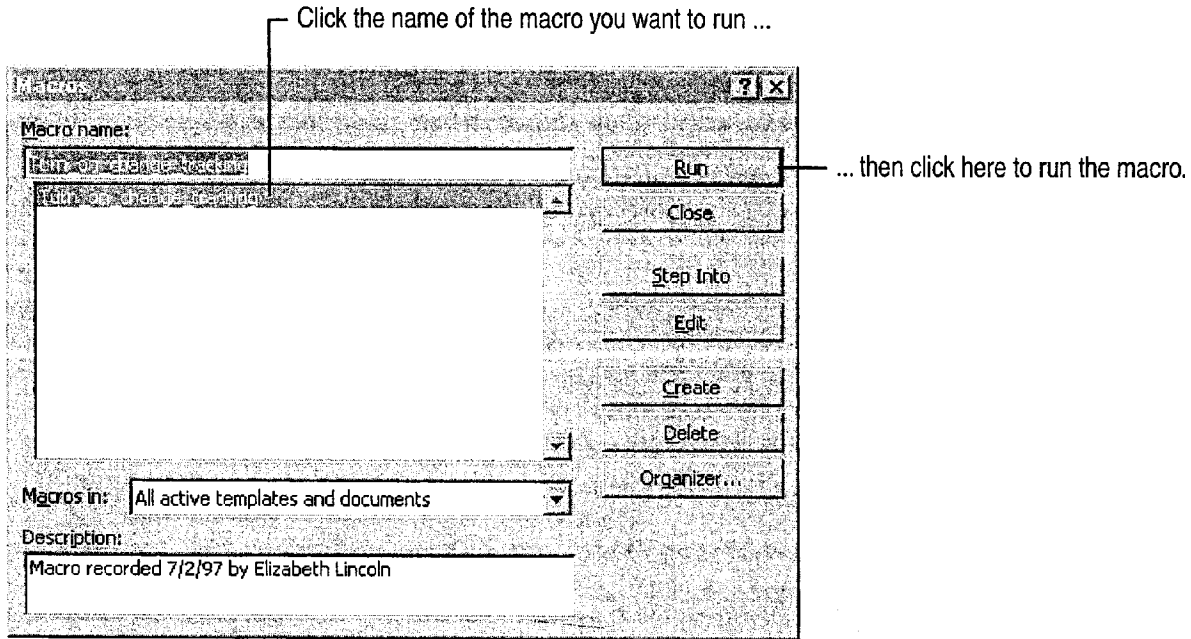


Office Assistant button

MS 114374

Perform the Task Automatically

Now that you have recorded the macro, you can use it whenever you need it. Click **Macros** (**Tools** menu, **Macro** submenu), select **Turn_on_change_tracking**, and then click **Run**.



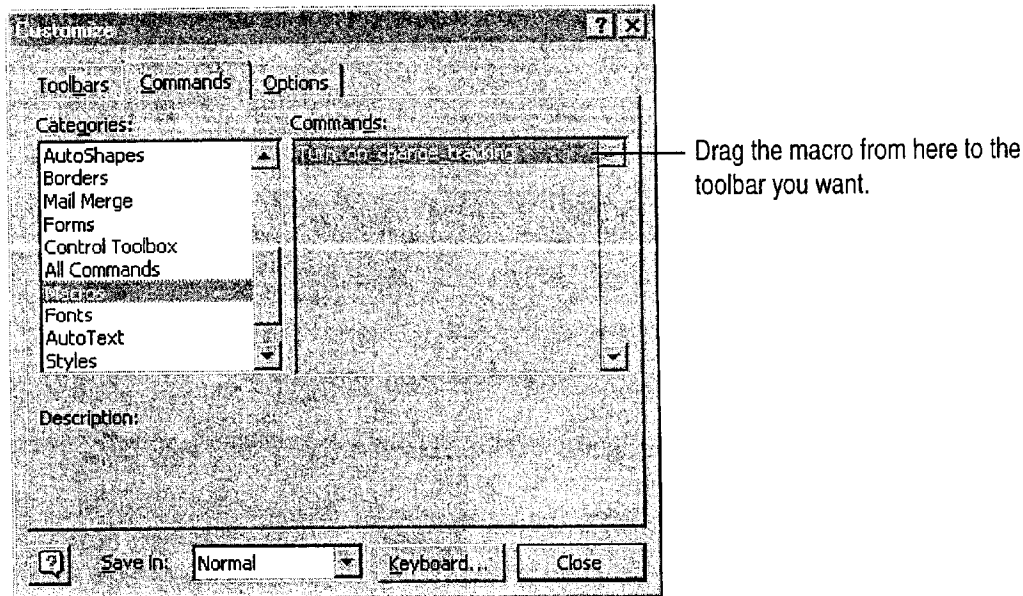
Try it out Type some text in your document. Revision marks should be visible. Then run the **Turn_off_change_tracking** macro. Revision marks should be hidden.

What If Your Macro Doesn't Work?

If your macro isn't working the way you expected, you can try recording it again to make sure you recorded the actions you thought you did. If the macro still doesn't work, make sure that you are running the macro under the same conditions in which you recorded it. For example, if you record the macro with a drawing object selected, select a drawing object before playing the macro back. If you still aren't getting the results you want, look up **Getting Results - Automate** in Help.

Run Your Macro from a Toolbar Button

You can make your macro even easier to use by assigning it to a toolbar button. Click **Customize** (Tools menu). On the **Commands** tab, click **Macros** in the **Categories** box. In the **Commands** box, click the name of your macro, and then drag it to a toolbar. If you want to change the image on the button face, right-click the button to display the shortcut menu.



Now you can run your macro whenever you want just by clicking this custom button. For more information on customizing toolbars, see “Customize Office,” page 636.



Run a macro with a shortcut key If you would rather run your macro by using a shortcut key, select the name of the macro in the **Macro** dialog box (Tools menu, **Macro** submenu), click **Options**, and then type a letter in the **Shortcut key** box.



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Automate** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114376

Automate Complex Tasks

Recorded macros are great when you want to perform exactly the same task every time you run the macro. But what if you want to automate a task in which the actions vary with the situation, or depend on user input, or move data from one Office application to another? For example, you might want to assign a background color to a worksheet cell based on the day of the week that data is entered into the cell, display the performance review form for the employee whose name you enter, or automatically link the most recently created Microsoft Excel chart in your My Documents folder to a PowerPoint slide.

To create automations that are more powerful than recorded macros, you should learn to program in Visual Basic for Applications. If you've never programmed before, don't be scared off! Learning Visual Basic for Applications can be much easier than learning other programming languages, because many of the commands in Visual Basic for Applications are named after familiar interface features, such as dialog box options. A good way to see this is to look at the instructions in a macro you've recorded. Chances are, you'll recognize many of the words and will be able to figure out what some of the instructions mean without knowing anything about programming. For information on displaying a recorded macro, look up **Getting Results - Automate** in Help.

Learning Visual Basic for Applications is well worth the time investment. Many companies are finding that they can use it to extend the features of Office rather than buying dedicated software packages for each task they want to automate. Custom solutions can take less time to develop, since the developer can take advantage of all the features that are built in to Office applications. Creating a custom tool in Visual Basic for Applications can also decrease the amount of training and support employees need in order to use a new tool, since the tool is based on an application they're already familiar with.

You can learn more about Visual Basic for Applications at your own pace. If you like to learn by experimenting, try looking at the code for some of your recorded macros, and then refer to the online reference topics to find out more about specific programming words. (To display a reference topic, place the insertion point in a keyword in the code editing window and then press F1.) If you prefer a more structured approach, try one of the books in the Microsoft Press *Step-by-Step* series. For more information, see "Microsoft Press Publications for Office 97," page 19.

MS 114377

Automate Repetitive Tasks in Microsoft Access

Put Macros and Visual Basic for Applications to Work in Your Forms

When you set up a database, you want it to be as easy to use as possible, especially for repetitive tasks such as data entry. With Microsoft Access, it's easy to automate tasks such as printing a report or displaying a message that lets you know when a product needs to be reordered. You can automate tasks by creating macros or writing Visual Basic for Applications code procedures. When you create a command button for a form by using the Command Button Wizard, the wizard writes a Visual Basic event procedure for you.

Key Features



- Macros
- Command Button Wizard
- Visual Basic Procedures

Whenever both Units in Stock and Units on Order are zero, Microsoft Access prints an "out of stock" message.

Click here to print the inventory report.

To complete the steps in this topic you need to have Microsoft Office, Professional Edition or an individual copy of Microsoft Access installed. You also need a Products form and an Inventory report. For more information, see "Create a Great-Looking Product Form," page 498, and "Create and Enhance an Inventory Report," page 525. However, you can use the basic steps in this topic to add command buttons to any form and to create any macro.

MS 114378

Part 17 Automate and Program Office

Create a Macro to Display a Message

When you find yourself repeating the same tasks, such as searching for products that you need to reorder, create a macro to display a message that an item is “out of stock” if there are no units in stock and no units on order.

In the database window, on the **Forms** tab, select **Products**. Click **Design** to open the Products form in form design view. Click the **Units In Stock** text box, and then click the **Properties** button. On the **Event** tab, click **After Update**. To open the macro window and create the macro, use the procedures shown in the following illustration. When you’re done, click the **Save** button. Microsoft Access runs the macro whenever you change the number of units in stock to zero when the number of units on order is also zero.



Properties button



Save button

In the **After Update** property box, click the **Build** button, and then double-click **Macro Builder** to create a new macro.

Click **Condition** to display the Condition field in the macro.

Click **Action**, click the arrow, and select **MsgBox** from the list ...

Enter the condition that must be true for the macro to run.

... then type the message that you want Microsoft Access to display.

Condition		Action
[UnitsInStock]=0 And [UnitsOnOrder]=0		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Maximize Minimize MoveSize MsgBox OpenForm OpenModule OpenQuery OpenReport

Action Arguments		
Message	This item is out of stock.	
Beep	Yes	
Type	None	
Title		

MS 114379



Want to modify a macro? In the database window, on the **Macros** tab, click the macro you want to modify, and then click **Design**.

What other actions can a macro carry out? A macro can set the value in a field, control, or property (the SetValue action), carry out a Microsoft Access menu command (the RunCommand action), or simulate typing on the keyboard (the SendKeys action), among other actions. To learn more about a macro action, in the macro window, select the action in the Action column and then press F1.

Want a macro to carry out a series of actions in response to a single event? Select each action you want to carry out in a separate row of the macro window. Microsoft Access carries out the actions row by row.

More About Macros and Events

How are events named? Events are named after the user actions that cause them. For example, when you change the units in stock to zero in the Products form, the macro that displays the “out of stock” message runs in response to an “AfterUpdate” event.

Create macros that respond to other events You can create other macros that tell Microsoft Access what to do when a user opens a form (an Open event), moves from one record to another (a Current event), or clicks a specific button (a Click event).



Want to know more? Look up **Getting Results - Automate Microsoft Access** in Help.



Office Assistant button

MS 114380

Add a Command Button That Prints a Report

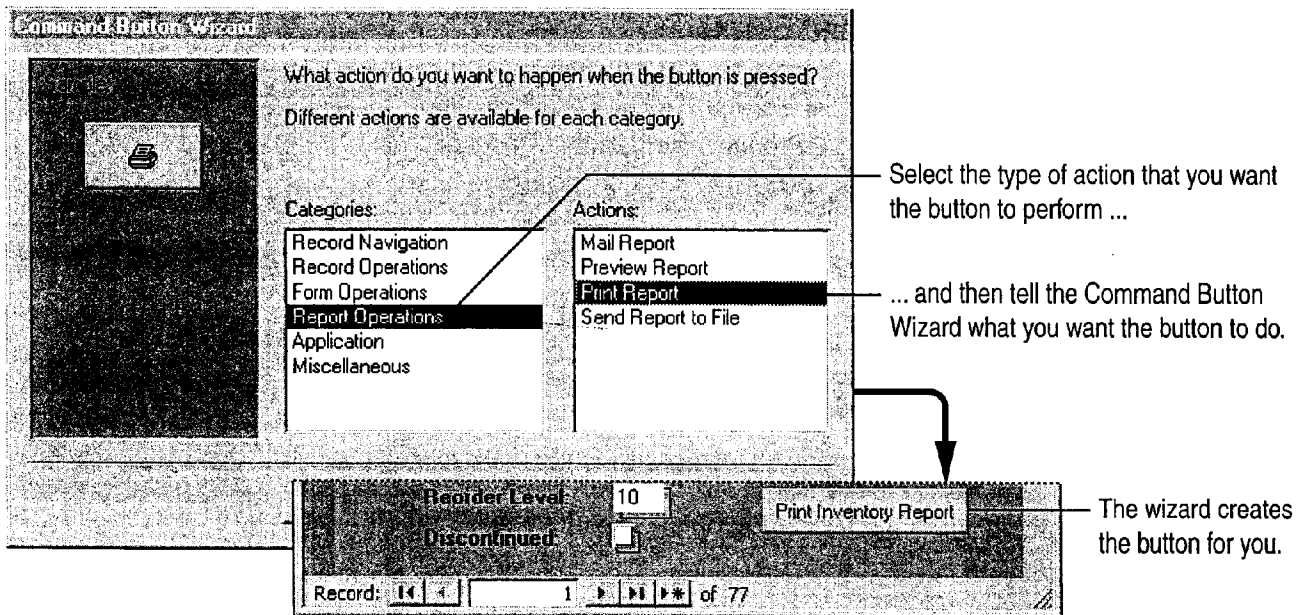
If you often print a report after updating your database, you can save time by using the Command Button Wizard to create a button that automates this task. In the database window, on the **Forms** tab, select **Products** and then click **Design** to open the Products form in form design view. If the toolbox isn't visible, click **Control Toolbox (View menu)** to display it. Click the **Command Button** tool, and then click the **Control Wizards** tool if it isn't already selected. In the Products form, click where you want to put the command button, and then follow the instructions in the wizard. When the wizard finishes, Microsoft Access displays the command button in form design view.



Command Button tool



Control Wizards tool



What other types of buttons can the wizard create? Use the wizard to create buttons that automatically open other forms, move between records, and add or delete records, among other tasks. For more information, see “Add Buttons That Open Forms and Reports,” page 521.

MS 114381

Program in Visual Basic

When the Command Button Wizard creates a button, it writes a Visual Basic event procedure to carry out the action you want. Suppose you want to see the event procedure for the **Print Inventory Report** button. Select the button and then click the **Properties** button to open its property sheet. In the property sheet, select the **OnClick** property, and then click the **Build** button. Using the Visual Basic programming language, you can edit or add to the event procedure that the Command Button Wizard creates. Or, write your own event procedures to customize Microsoft Access even further.

The module window displays the Visual Basic code for the active form.

This event procedure runs whenever you click the **Print Inventory Report** button ...

... and this code prints the report.

```

Sub Inventory_Report_Click()
    On Error GoTo Err_Inventory_Report_Click

    Dim stDocName As String

    stDocName = "Alphabetical List of Products"
    DoCmd.OpenReport stDocName, acNormal

Exit_Inventory_Report_Click:
    Exit Sub

Err_Inventory_Report_Click:
    MsgBox Err.Description
    Resume Exit_Inventory_Report_Click

End Sub
    
```

You can customize the error message that appears when an error occurs by replacing the **MsgBox** function argument with your own error message.

MS 114382

Next Steps

To	See
See examples of how to use macros to automate work in forms and reports	The Northwind sample database, which Setup installs with Microsoft Access (if Northwind isn't already installed, rerun Setup to install it)
Learn more about programming in Visual Basic and creating custom database applications using Microsoft Access	<i>Building Applications with Microsoft Access 97</i> , available directly from Microsoft by using the order form provided with Microsoft Office (also available as part of the ValuPack on the Office 97, Professional Edition CD)

MS 114383

APPENDIX

Accessibility for People with Disabilities

Microsoft is committed to making its products and services easier for everyone to use. This appendix provides information on the following features, products, and services that make Windows, Windows NT, and Office applications more accessible for people with disabilities:

- Accessibility of Office applications
- Microsoft services for people who are deaf or hard-of-hearing
- The Access Pack for Microsoft Windows NT, a software utility that makes using Windows NT easier for people with motion or hearing disabilities
- Keyboard layouts designed for people who type with one hand or a wand
- Microsoft software documentation on audiocassette, floppy disk, or compact disc (CD)
- Third-party utilities to enhance accessibility
- Hints for customizing Windows or Windows NT
- Other products and services for people with disabilities

Note The information in this section applies only to users who license Microsoft products in the United States. If you obtained Windows or Windows NT outside the United States, your package contains a subsidiary information card that lists Microsoft support telephone numbers and addresses. You can contact your subsidiary to find out whether the types of products and services described in this appendix are available in your area.

MS 114384

Appendix

Accessibility of Office Applications

In addition to Windows and Windows NT accessibility products and services, several features of Office applications make them more accessible for people with disabilities. For more information, see Help.

Zoom to Magnify the View

You can view your documents or worksheets at any magnification up to 400 percent.

Enlarge Toolbar Buttons

To view enlarged toolbar buttons, click **Large Buttons** (View menu, **Toolbars** submenu).

Enlarge Interface Text

You can enlarge the text in row and column headings and in the formula bar and status bar. Click **Options** (Tools menu). On the **General** tab, set the font and size you want.

Customize Toolbars

You can add, delete, and move buttons on toolbars to best suit the way you work. You can also create entirely new toolbars that contain buttons for the commands, formats, and macros that you use most frequently. For more information, see the applications' Help.

Customize Menus

You can add new menus, delete existing menus, and customize menus so that they contain the commands, formats, and macros that you use frequently.

MS 114385

Microsoft Services for People Who Are Deaf or Hard-of-Hearing

If you are deaf or hard-of-hearing, complete access to Microsoft product and customer services is available through a text telephone (TT/TDD) service.

Sales information You can contact the Microsoft Sales Information Center on a text telephone by dialing (800) 892-5234 between 6:30 A.M. and 5:30 P.M. Pacific time.

Technical assistance In the United States, you can contact the Microsoft Support Network on a text telephone at (206) 635-4948 between 6:00 A.M. and 6:00 P.M. Pacific time, Monday through Friday, excluding holidays. In Canada, dial (905) 568-9641 between 8:00 A.M. and 8:00 P.M. eastern time, Monday through Friday, excluding holidays. Microsoft support services are subject to the prices, terms, and conditions in place at the time the service is used.

MS 114386

Appendix

The Access Pack for Microsoft Windows NT

Microsoft distributes the Access Pack for Microsoft Windows NT, which provides people who have motion or hearing disabilities with better access to computers running Windows NT. (If you are running Windows 95, these Access Pack features are already built in. For more information, see Windows 95 Help.) The Access Pack for Microsoft Windows NT contains several features that:

- Allow single-finger typing of SHIFT, CONTROL, and ALT key combinations.
- Ignore accidental keystrokes.
- Adjust the rate at which a character is repeated when you hold down a key, or turn off character repetition entirely.
- Prevent typing extra characters if you unintentionally press a key more than once.
- Enable you to control the mouse pointer by using the keyboard.
- Enable you to control the computer keyboard and mouse by using an alternative input device.
- Provide a visual cue when the computer beeps or makes other sounds.

The Access Pack for Microsoft Windows NT is included in the Microsoft Application Note WNO789. Access Packs are also available for Windows 3.0 and 3.1. If you have a modem, you can download the information you need. See “Which Files to Download or Order,” later in this appendix.

MS 114387

Keyboard Layouts for Single-Handed Users

Microsoft distributes Dvorak keyboard layouts that make the most frequently typed characters on a keyboard more accessible to people who have difficulty using the standard “QWERTY” layout. There are three Dvorak layouts: one for two-handed users, one for people who type with their left hand only, and one for people who type with their right hand only. The left-handed or right-handed keyboard layouts can also be used by people who type with a single finger or a wand. Users do not need to purchase any special equipment to use these features.

Windows and Windows NT already support the two-handed Dvorak layout, which can be useful for coping with or avoiding types of repetitive-motion injuries associated with typing. To get this layout, click **Regional Settings** or **International** in the Windows Control Panel. The two layouts for people who type with one hand are distributed as Microsoft Application Note GA0650. For instructions on obtaining this application note, see “Which Files to Download or Order,” later in this appendix.

Microsoft Documentation in Alternative Formats

In addition to the standard forms of documentation, many Microsoft products are also available in other formats to make them more accessible.

Most of the Office 97 documentation is also available as Help, on the Office CD in the ValuPack, or on the Web. If you have difficulty reading or handling printed documentation, you can obtain many Microsoft publications from Recording for the Blind & Dyslexic, Inc. Recording for the Blind & Dyslexic distributes these documents to registered, eligible members of their distribution service, either on audiocassettes or on floppy disks. The Recording for the Blind & Dyslexic collection contains more than 80,000 titles, including Microsoft product documentation and books from Microsoft Press. For more information, contact Recording for the Blind & Dyslexic.

Recording for the Blind & Dyslexic, Inc.
20 Roszel Road
Princeton, NJ 08540

Phone: (609) 452-0606
Fax: (609) 987-8116
World Wide Web: <http://www.rfbd.org/>

MS 114388

Appendix

Third-Party Utilities to Enhance Accessibility

A wide variety of third-party hardware and software products are available to make personal computers easier to use for people with disabilities. Among the different types of products available for the MS-DOS, Windows, and Windows NT operating systems are the following:

- Programs that enlarge or alter the color of information on the screen for people with visual impairments
- Programs that describe information on the screen in braille or synthesized speech for people who are blind or have difficulty reading
- Hardware and software utilities that modify the behavior of the mouse and keyboard
- Programs that enable users to “type” by using a mouse or their voice
- Word or phrase prediction software that allows the user to type more quickly and with fewer keystrokes
- Alternative input devices, such as single switch or puff-and-sip devices, for those who cannot use a mouse or a keyboard

For more information on obtaining third-party utilities, see “More Accessibility Information,” later in this appendix.

MS 114389

Customize Windows or Windows NT

There are many ways you can customize Windows or Windows NT to make your computer more accessible.

- Beginning with Windows 95, accessibility features are built in to Windows. These features are useful for individuals who have difficulty typing or using a mouse, who have moderately impaired vision, or who are deaf or hard-of-hearing. The features can be installed during setup, or you can add them later from your Windows 95 installation disks. For information about installing and using these features, see Windows Help.
- You can also use the Control Panel and other features to adjust the appearance and behavior of Windows or Windows NT to suit varying vision and motor abilities. You can adjust colors and sizes, sound volume, and the behavior of the mouse and keyboard.

The specific features available, and whether they are built in or must be obtained separately, depend on which operating system you are using.

For full documentation on the accessibility features available in your operating system, see the appropriate application notes listed in the next section. Accessibility features are also documented in the *Microsoft Windows 95 Resource Kit* and the *Microsoft Windows NT Resource Kit*.

MS 114390

Appendix

Which Files to Download or Order

The resources listed here provide more complete documentation on ways to customize Windows and Windows NT for people with disabilities.

You can obtain these files by downloading them with your modem, or you can order them on disks by phone.

For	You need
Application notes for Windows 95	Ww1062.exe
Application notes for Windows NT 3.1 and 3.5 (includes Access Pack for Microsoft Windows NT)	Wn0789.exe
Application notes for Windows for Workgroups 3.1	Wg0788.txt
Application notes for Windows 3.1	Ww0787.txt
Application notes for Windows 3.0	Ww0786.txt
Access Pack for Microsoft Windows 3.0 and 3.1	Accp.exe
Dvorak keyboard layouts for people who type with one hand (already included in Windows NT 3.5 and later)	Ga0650.exe (most network services) Ga0650.zip (Microsoft Download Service)

MS 114391

Download the Access Packs, Application Notes, and Alternative Keyboard Layouts by Modem

If you have a modem, you can download these files from the following network services:

- The Microsoft Web site: Click **Microsoft on the Web (Help menu)**
- The Microsoft Internet servers: ftp.microsoft.com and gopher.microsoft.com, in /softlib/mslfiles
- MSN, The Microsoft Network online service
- CompuServe
- GEnie
- Microsoft Download Service (MSDL), which you can reach by calling (206) 936-6735 any time except between 1:00 A.M. and 2:30 A.M. Pacific time (MSDL supports 1200, 2400, 9600, 14400, and 28800 baud rates (V.32 and V.42), with 8 data bits, no parity, and 1 stop bit)
- Various user-group bulletin boards (such as the bulletin board services on the Association of PC User Groups network)

Order the Access Packs, Application Notes, and Alternative Keyboard Layouts on Disks by Phone

If you do not have a modem, within the United States call the Microsoft Sales Information Center at (800) 426-9400 (voice) or (800) 892-5234 (text telephone).

In Canada, you can call (905) 568-3503 or (905) 568-9641 (text telephone).

MS 114392

Appendix

More Accessibility Information

In addition to the features and resources already described in this appendix, other products, services, and resources are available from Microsoft and other organizations.

Additional Microsoft Products and Services for People with Disabilities

For more information, contact:

Microsoft Sales Information Center	World Wide Web:	http://www.microsoft.com/
One Microsoft Way	Voice telephone:	(800) 426-9400
Redmond, WA 98052-6393	Text telephone:	(800) 892-5234

Directories of Computer Products for People with Disabilities

The Trace R&D Center at the University of Wisconsin–Madison produces the *Trace ResourceBook*, which describes products that help people with disabilities to use computers. It provides descriptions and photographs of about 2,000 products. A compact disc, CO-NET CD, provides a database of more than 18,000 products and other information for people with disabilities. It is issued twice a year.

To obtain these directories, contact:

Trace R&D Center	World Wide Web:	http://trace.wisc.edu/
University of Wisconsin	Fax:	(608) 262-8848
S-151 Waisman Center		
1500 Highland Avenue		
Madison, WI 53705-2280		

Assistive Technology Programs and Trained Evaluators

For general information and recommendations on how computers can address specific needs, you should consult a trained evaluator. An assistive technology program in your area will provide referrals to programs and services that are available to you.

To locate the assistive technology program nearest you, contact:

National Information System	Voice/text telephone:	(803) 935-5231
University of South Carolina	Fax:	(803) 935-5059
Center for Developmental		
Disabilities		
Columbia, SC 29208		

MS 114393

Index

= (equal sign) in worksheet formulas 84
 # (pound sign) in Microsoft Excel worksheet cells 86, 150
 ###, defined 86
 1-2-3, Lotus *See* Lotus 1-2-3
 35mm slides 102
 3-D charts
 formatting 276–286
 rotating 286
 when to use 263
 3-D references 479

A

abstracts, drafting with AutoSummarize 232
 Access *See* Microsoft Access
 accessibility for people with disabilities 655–664
 action items
 See also tasks, individual
 exporting to Outlook 318
 making new slides from 317
 noting during electronic presentations 317
 actions, macro 650
 active settings 308, 309
 add-ins
 Analysis ToolPak 592–594
 data access objects (DAO) 250
 getting help with 40
 Microsoft Map 287–295
 Microsoft Query 548
 Template Wizard with Data Tracking 250–257
 address books, electronic
 See also contact lists
 and Microsoft Exchange 185, 190, 208, 209, 625
 as mailing lists for form letters 208, 209, 215
 using in Word 185, 190, 193, 625
 addresses
 See also address books, electronic; mailing labels
 creating contact lists in Microsoft Excel 353–359

addresses (*continued*)
 for envelopes 187
 importing into worksheets 354
 inserting from personal address book 185, 190, 193, 625
 printing on mailing labels 214
 where to store 346, 347
 alarms, in cell formatting 485
 aligning
 data in worksheet cells 152
 text using Word Formatting toolbar 70, 130
 alphabetizing *See* sorting
 Analysis ToolPak
 enabling 592, 594
 installing 592
 listing tools 594
 running analyses 594
 setting up data 593
 analysis, statistical 592–594
 Analyze It With MS Excel button 546
 analyzing data
 sales 576–580
 scientific 592–594
 which method to use 546–547
 animating charts 270
 animations, slide
 creating in slide sorter view 313
 creating using toolbar 306
 defined 305
 in audience handouts 299
 uses for 304, 305
 vs. transitions 305, 313
 Anova (statistical analysis of variance) 592
 applications
 See also names of applications
 adding with Office Setup program 32, 33
 branching from online presentations to 308
 combining information from 169–181
 custom, creating from databases 519–523

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114394

Index

- applications (*continued*)
 - customizing use of 636–642
 - exchanging information between 327–331
 - installing 28–33
 - linking documents to charts 267
 - moving data among 169–181, 347
 - quitting 34
 - removing with Office Setup program 32, 33
 - starting 34
 - using together 169–181
 - versions of 32
 - where to store contact information 346, 347
 - which to use for analyzing sales data 546–547
 - which to use for creating forms 240
- appointments
 - for conference calls 390
 - printing Calendar 385
 - recurring 383
 - scheduling 383
 - turning into meetings 383
 - vs. events 382
- area charts 263
- Arial font 128
- arrays 573
- arrow keys 65
- arrows
 - adding to charts 281
 - adding to worksheets 156
- at sign (@) *See* equal sign (=) in worksheet formulas
- attaching database tables 432
- attaching documents to electronic mail messages 399
- audience handouts *See* handouts, audience
- AutoComplete feature 356
- AutoContent Wizard 95, 97
- AutoCorrect feature
 - in Microsoft Access 518
 - in Microsoft Excel 356
 - in PowerPoint 100
 - in Word 64, 72
- AutoFill feature
 - calculating trends 573
 - copying formulas 480
 - entering series 81
 - repeating cell entries 356
- AutoFilter feature 357, 483, 542, 558
- AutoForm feature 109
- AutoFormat feature
 - applying to database forms 503
 - applying to documents 142, 233, 237
 - applying to Word outlines before transferring to PowerPoint 329
 - applying to worksheets 86, 158
 - setting options in Word 142, 143, 144
 - turning on and off in Word 142
- automatic spelling checking 72
- automatic subtotals 558
- automatic presentations 309
- automatic word selection 67
- AutoShape feature 162, 165
- AutoSum feature 84
- AutoSummarize feature 232
- AutoText feature
 - adding to Word toolbar 613
 - for boilerplate text in legal contracts 613
 - for inserting headers and footers 133
 - how to use 64, 231
 - reusing parts of business letters 186
 - saving confidentiality statement 194
- averages
 - charting trends 574, 575
 - finding in database queries 587
 - moving 575
- Avery labels 214
- axes, chart
 - category (x) 261, 262, 281
 - defined 282
 - formatting 282, 283
 - hiding 282
 - labels for 282, 283
 - secondary 264, 283
 - titles for 281
 - value (y) 261, 264
 - xy (scatter) charts 596

B

- background spell checking 72
- background, chart 285
- banner headlines 139
- bids, online form for preparing 539–543

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114395

- Binder
 - accessing from Shortcut Bar 47
 - creating 179
 - including Microsoft Access information in 181
 - saving sections separately 180
 - shortcut menu for 180
 - storing related documents together 179, 180
 - templates for 181
 - tips for using 180, 181
 - when to use 169, 303
 - black and white presentations
 - changing from color to 324
 - handout options 326
 - optimizing 324–326
 - printing 325, 326
 - using presentation designs 320
 - blank presentation template 95
 - blocks, worksheet *See* ranges, worksheet
 - boilerplate text *See* AutoText feature
 - boldfacing text
 - in Microsoft Access 502
 - in Microsoft Excel 86, 151
 - in Word 70
 - borders
 - adding in database forms 503
 - adding to Word documents 138, 198, 243
 - adding to Word tables 243
 - adding to worksheets 154, 155, 355
 - diagonal, in worksheets 154, 155
 - removing from Word documents 138
 - removing from Word tables 224
 - selecting option on Word Formatting toolbar 70
 - vs. gridlines in worksheets 154
 - boxes *See* borders; text boxes
 - branching
 - from presentations to other applications 308
 - in online presentations 308, 309
 - to hidden presentation slides 309
 - bubble charts 596
 - budgets
 - charting alternatives 488
 - comparing using scenarios 487
 - consolidating data 474–481
 - developing alternatives 482–489
 - sorting data 483
 - budgets (*continued*)
 - summarizing alternatives 488
 - testing alternatives using goal seeking 486
 - built-in styles *See* styles, document
 - bulleted lists
 - changing bullet style 135
 - creating in Word 135
 - in PowerPoint outlines 95, 97
 - selecting option on Word Formatting toolbar 70
 - business contacts *See* contact lists
 - business letters
 - cover letter for resume 624, 625
 - creating letterhead 195–204
 - creating with letter templates 186
 - creating with Letter Wizard 185, 186
 - designs for 184, 186, 195
 - modifying parts of letter 185
 - ready-to-use 184–186
 - sending to mailing lists 206–216
 - business reports, creating in Word 228–237
 - buttons *See* command buttons; toolbar buttons
- ## C
- calculations
 - See also* formulas, worksheet; functions, worksheet
 - in Word online form fields 245
 - on database query results 587
 - profit margins 542
 - sales discounts 543
 - sales totals 556–561
 - totals in inventory reports 527
 - Calendar
 - appointments vs. events 382
 - noting events 384
 - printing 385
 - scheduling appointments 383
 - viewing list of tasks 386
 - callouts, creating 162
 - canceling entries 80
 - See also* undoing actions
 - canceling printing 73
 - capitalization 129
 - case, changing 129
 - cataloging of collections 626–629

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114396

Index

- categories, chart
 - adding from worksheets 262
 - defining 261
 - multiple levels 265
 - removing 262
- category (x) axis
 - adding title 281
 - defined 261
- CD collection, organizing 626–629
- cells, table (Word)
 - merging 243
 - splitting 243
 - typing in 136
- cells, worksheet
 - See also* ranges, worksheet
 - ###, defined 150
 - aligning contents 86, 152
 - attaching graphics to 156
 - borders for 154, 155
 - centering contents 86
 - changing in goal seeking 486
 - clearing contents 82
 - color 154
 - copying between worksheets 476
 - copying within worksheets 82
 - defined 78
 - defining formatting as styles 157
 - diagonal borders 154, 155
 - dragging 82
 - editing contents 82
 - formatting 86, 355
 - formatting numbers in 149, 150
 - hyperlinks in 485
 - indenting data in 152
 - inserting 83
 - linking to database fields 253
 - locking 477
 - merging 153
 - moving 82
 - naming 480, 484, 488, 540, 541
 - protecting in forms 252
 - referencing in formulas 84
 - rotating data 152, 155
 - selecting 78, 79
 - shading 154
 - shrinking data to fit 86, 152
- cells, worksheet (*continued*)
 - unlocking 413, 477
 - viewing sum 85
- CellTips feature 415
- centering
 - data in worksheet cells 152
 - text using Word Formatting toolbar 70
 - text vertically in Word 186
 - worksheet headings across columns 153
- changes
 - See also* customizing
 - tracking during team document review 406
 - tracking in shared workbooks 416
- character formats 71, 128, 129, 145
- character spacing 129
- chart area, formatting 285
- chart reports 275
- chart sheets
 - See also* charts (Microsoft Excel)
 - activating 261, 276
 - adding data to 262
 - as workbook element 87
 - creating 261
 - defined 87, 260
 - naming 87
- chart tips 599
- Chart toolbar 269
- chart types
 - changing 263, 278
 - choosing 263
 - combining 263, 278
- chart values 260, 267
- Chart Wizard (Microsoft Access) 272, 274, 275
- Chart Wizard (Microsoft Excel)
 - creating charts with 261, 596
 - for charting PivotTable data 569
- charts (Microsoft Access)
 - adding to forms 273
 - adding to reports 275
 - adding to switchboard 275
 - creating from databases 272–275
 - customizing 276–286
 - from database queries 273
 - previewing 275
 - viewing in forms 274

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114397

- charts (Microsoft Excel)
 - See also* charts (Microsoft Graph)
 - activating 261, 276
 - adding data to 262
 - adding to presentations 266–271
 - adding to Word documents 266–271
 - arrows in 281
 - axis titles in 281
 - background effects 285
 - bubble 596
 - creating from PivotTables 569
 - creating from scenario summaries 488
 - creating with Chart Wizard 261
 - custom types 264, 270
 - customizing 276–286
 - data labels in 279
 - defined 260
 - displaying scientific data 595–601
 - editing from within Word or PowerPoint 269
 - elevation 286
 - formatting 276–286
 - formatting automatically 264, 270
 - gridlines in 282
 - inserting in documents and presentations 268
 - legends in 284
 - linked, updating 267
 - linking to presentations 267
 - linking to Word documents 267
 - modifying 269
 - removing data from 262
 - saving custom formatting 264
 - secondary axis in 264, 283
 - selecting data for 261
 - summarizing budget alternatives 488
 - text boxes in 281
 - text in 281
 - titles in 281
 - types of 263
 - updating 260, 267, 569
 - with trendlines 574, 575
 - xy (scatter) 595–601
- charts (Microsoft Graph)
 - See also* charts (Microsoft Excel)
 - activating 271
 - adding to Microsoft Access forms and reports 272–275
- charts (Microsoft Graph) (*continued*)
 - animating for presentations 270
 - creating for presentations 271
 - creating for Word documents 271
 - modifying 271, 276, 277
- charts (Microsoft Map) 287–295, 291, 292
- check boxes, adding to online forms 244
- checking spelling *See* spelling checking
- checking style 101
- citations, in pleadings *See* tables of authorities
- clip art
 - adding to documents 163
 - adding to presentation slides 99
 - adding to Word documents 137
 - organizing in Clip Gallery 99
- Clipboard 69
- code *See* macros
- color
 - adding to Microsoft Excel worksheets 154
 - for online document background 418
 - presentation color schemes 321
- color presentations
 - changing color schemes 321
 - displaying in black and white 324
- column breaks 139
- column charts
 - 3-D, defined 263
 - creating from PivotTables 569
 - trendlines in 574, 575
- column headings, worksheet and PivotTables 564, 565
 - as chart categories 261, 262
 - formatting 355
 - in worksheets 354
- columns, database
 - as fields 105
 - changing width 105
- columns, newspaper-style
 - adjusting width 139
 - banner headlines for 139
 - creating 139
 - modifying 139
 - viewing 139
- columns, table (Word)
 - adding 136
 - drawing 243

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114398

Index

- columns, worksheet
 - as chart categories 261, 262
 - changing width 86, 152
 - converting to database fields 496
 - defined 78
 - filling automatically 81, 356
 - for contact information 346, 354
 - headings for 78, 354
 - hiding 357, 560
 - indenting cell data 152
 - inserting 152
 - merging cells to center headings 153
 - selecting 79
- combining
 - chart types 278
 - information from Office applications 169–181
 - worksheets 474, 478
- Command Button Wizard 521, 649, 652, 653
- command buttons (Microsoft Access)
 - adding to database forms 521, 652
 - adding to reports 521
 - editing instructions in Visual Basic 653
 - uses for 652
- command buttons (Word), adding to
 - online forms 245, 249
- comments (PowerPoint), adding to presentations 343
- comments (Word)
 - deleting marks 410
 - inserting 407, 408
 - merging 410
 - printing 410
 - uses for 407
 - using 407, 408
 - voice 409
- Comments pane (Word) 407
- comments, worksheet cell
 - and mouse 415
 - creating 413
 - indicator in cell 415
 - printing 415
 - reviewing 414
 - turning off display 415
 - viewing 413, 415
- compact discs (CDs)
 - Getting Results book on 3
 - Help topics on 43
 - installing Office from 30
- comparing
 - budget alternatives 482–489
 - document versions 411
 - sales data in PivotTables 563–569, 580
- computer kiosks *See* self-running presentations
- computer presentations *See* electronic presentations
- computer screen *See* screen display
- conditional formatting 150, 485
- conference calls, scheduling 390
- conferencing *See* presentation conferencing; meetings
- confidentiality
 - "confidential" as letterhead watermark 203
 - saving text as AutoText entries 194
 - statement for fax cover sheets 194
- connecting to external databases (Microsoft Access) 432, 497
- connecting to external databases (Microsoft Excel) 549
- consolidating budget data 474–481
- contact lists
 - See also* address books, electronic
 - as mailing lists for form letters 208, 209, 215
 - creating in Microsoft Access 360–364
 - creating in Microsoft Excel 353–359
 - creating in Outlook 119
 - dialing phone numbers in Outlook 351
 - filtering in Outlook 369
 - finding contacts in Outlook 349
 - grouping Outlook data 371, 372
 - importing to Microsoft Access 363
 - importing to Microsoft Excel 354
 - moving data to different application 347
 - printing customized Outlook views 374
 - saving customized Outlook views 373
 - setting up meetings with contacts 352
 - sorting in Outlook 372
 - viewing in Outlook, 350, 366–374
 - where to store 346, 347
- contact management database
 - creating 360, 361
 - entering data 361, 362, 363
 - filtering records 364

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114399

- contact management database (*continued*)
 - finding data 364
 - switchboard for 361
 - content templates
 - as master formats 319
 - defined 319, 320
 - contracts, legal
 - adding tables to 612
 - boilerplate text in 613
 - creating in Word 611–617
 - cross-references in 616, 617
 - headers and footers in 612
 - heading information in 612
 - numbering headings 614
 - numbering paragraphs 614, 615
 - saving as templates 613
 - templates for 612, 613
 - Control toolbox 502, 521, 528
 - controls
 - See also* command buttons
 - adding to online forms 245, 249
 - arranging in database forms 500, 501
 - arranging in database reports 528, 534
 - assigning macros to in Microsoft Access 652
 - copying formatting 535
 - deleting from database report layout 534
 - Convert To MS Access command 494
 - converting files *See* exporting; importing
 - copying
 - See also* AutoFill feature
 - by dragging and dropping 173
 - cell ranges between worksheets 476
 - cell ranges by inserting 83
 - cell ranges within worksheets 82
 - formatting in database forms 502
 - formatting in database reports 528
 - formatting in Word documents 145
 - formatting in worksheets 157
 - information between applications 170–173
 - maps 289
 - text in Word documents 69
 - vs. linking or inserting 170
 - worksheets to other workbooks 478
 - worksheets within workbooks 476
 - correcting typos
 - in databases 518
 - in presentations 100
 - in Word documents 64
 - in worksheets 356
 - COUNTBLANK function 561
 - COUNTIF function 561
 - counting words in documents 221
 - counting worksheet rows 561
 - cover letters 624, 625
 - cover pages *See* title pages
 - criteria
 - for filtering in worksheets 542
 - specifying in database queries 585, 629
 - cropping graphics 137, 221, 225
 - cross-references 616, 617
 - cross-tabulation (Microsoft Access) 546, 576–580
 - cross-tabulation (Microsoft Excel) 564, 565
 - currency, formatting worksheet values as 86, 149
 - Curriculum Vitae *See* resumes
 - custom inventory database *See* inventory database
 - custom shows 310
 - customizing
 - See also* formatting
 - applications 636–642, 649–653
 - charts 276–286
 - menus 522, 641, 642
 - number formatting in Microsoft Excel 150
 - PowerPoint presentations 319–323
 - screen workspace 637, 638
 - toolbars 522, 639, 640
 - cutting *See* moving
 - CV *See* resumes
- ## D
- data access objects (DAO) 250
 - data categories *See* categories, chart
 - data entry, database
 - creating forms for 498–504
 - in contact management database 361, 362
 - in databases 110, 361, 362, 513–518
 - in inventory database 513–518
 - in shared databases 430, 431
 - macros for repetitive tasks 649, 650, 651
 - of phone numbers 517

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114400

Index

- data entry, database (*continued*)
 - simplifying 513–518
 - using input masks 517
- data labels, chart
 - adding 279
 - defined 279
 - examples 279
 - formatting 279, 280
 - modifying 279, 280
- data markers, chart
 - changing 277, 278
 - connecting to lines 278
 - examples 277
 - formatting 277, 278
 - labeling 279, 280
 - pictures as 277, 278
- data points *See* categories, chart
- data series, chart
 - adding 262
 - and Analysis ToolPak 593
 - defining 261
 - for scientific data 595–601
 - labeling 284
 - legend for 261, 284
 - removing 262
 - worksheet rows as 261, 265
- data, worksheet
 - aligning 86
 - clearing 82
 - copying 82
 - editing 82
 - entering 76–90, 356
 - entering series 81
 - formatting 86
 - linking to databases 250–257
 - moving 82
 - moving to Microsoft Access 493–497
 - saving 89
 - selecting 78, 79
 - selecting for Microsoft Excel charts 261
- database applications *See* inventory database
- Database window 429
- Database Wizard
 - contact management database 360, 361
 - music collection database 626, 627
 - order entry database 427–429
- Database Wizard (*continued*)
 - overview 112
 - using for personal data 626, 627, 632
- databases (Microsoft Access)
 - See also* forms, database; inventory database; records (Microsoft Access); reports, database; shared databases; tables, database
 - adding command buttons to forms and reports 652
 - adding hyperlinks 466, 467, 468
 - adding pictures to records 110
 - adding records 110, 255
 - columns 105
 - controlling access to 431
 - creating and opening 48–59
 - creating charts from 272–275
 - creating from Microsoft Excel worksheets 493–497
 - creating from scratch 627
 - creating with Database Wizard 360–364, 427–429, 626–629
 - defined 106
 - deleting records 110, 255
 - editing records 110
 - employee data in 104–111
 - entering data in 110
 - entering today's date automatically 515
 - expressions 585
 - filtering records 108
 - finding 56, 57, 58, 59
 - finding information in *See* queries (Microsoft Access)
 - for household inventory 631–633
 - forms in 104, 109, 110
 - frequently used 54
 - importing data to 432
 - linking data from external databases 547
 - linking multiple workbooks to 254
 - linking worksheet data to 497
 - macros for repetitive data entry 649, 650, 651
 - moving contact information to and from 347
 - opening 48, 56, 57
 - overview 104
 - passwords for 523
 - personal uses for 626–629, 631–633
 - placing on networks 430
 - preventing changes to 431
 - protecting 523

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114401

- databases (Microsoft Access) *(continued)*
 - publishing imported data to intranet 469
 - querying 582–588
 - relational, defined 106
 - relationships between tables 495, 512
 - reports in 104, 111, 525–529
 - rows 105
 - shared 427–432
 - shared usage on networks 430, 431
 - sharing information between applications 169–181
 - sorting records 107
 - specifying properties for 59
 - splitting in two 431
 - storing 54
 - summarizing data from Microsoft Excel forms 256
 - tables in 104
 - tracking business contacts 360–364
 - tracking data 250–257
 - transferring data to other applications with OfficeLinks button 177
 - turning into applications 519–523
 - updating records 110
 - uses for 627
 - using first database 104–112
 - vs. Microsoft Excel worksheets, which to use when 493, 546–547
 - when to store contact information in 346
 - when to use forms in 240
- databases, external
 - See also* Microsoft Query
 - availability of 549
 - connecting to 549
 - creating PivotTables from 567
 - defining 549
 - extracting data from 548–554
 - importing data into Microsoft Access databases 432, 497
 - importing into worksheets 548–554
 - linking Microsoft Excel forms to 252
 - linking to Microsoft Access databases 432, 497
 - on World Wide Web 549
 - querying 541, 548–554
 - types of files 550
 - updating records 255
 - which application to use with 547
- datasheets (Microsoft Graph) 271
- dates
 - entering automatically in database forms 515
 - entering series automatically in worksheets 81
 - entering today's date in Word documents 64
 - formatting in worksheets 149
 - in PivotTables 564
 - in Word headers and footers 133
 - querying databases for 585, 586
- dBASE files
 - See also* databases, external
 - importing to Microsoft Access databases 497
 - linking Microsoft Excel forms to 252
 - linking to Microsoft Access databases 432
 - opening into Microsoft Excel worksheets 550
- DBF files *See* dBASE files
- default font, changing 129
- default values for database form fields 515
- delimited text files 347
- descriptive statistics, analyzing 594
- designs, ready-to-use *See* templates; wizards
- desktop publishing effects 136–141, 146
- dialing phone numbers 351
- dialog boxes, activating ScreenTips from 36
- dingbats in letterhead design 198
- direct mailings 206–216
- direction keys 65
- discounts, calculating 543
- display screen *See* screen display
- distribution lists, creating 380
- DIV/0! error 561
- Document Map feature 66, 232, 421
- documents
 - adding charts 266–271
 - adding graphics 159–167
 - business letters 184–186
 - business reports 228–237
 - changing screen view of 74
 - closing 73
 - commenting on 407, 408
 - comparing versions 411
 - converting to HTML 460
 - counting words in 221
 - cover letters 624, 625
 - creating based on templates 63
 - creating based on wizards 63
 - creating from scratch 63

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114402

Index

documents (*continued*)

- dividing into sections 234
- editing charts from within 266, 269
- editing text 67–69
- enhancing 127–146
- fax cover sheets 192–194
- first document 61–74
- flyers 222–226
- form letters *See* mailings, creating
- formatting 70, 71, 127–146
- highlighting 403, 409
- improving on-screen legibility 419, 420
- inserting Microsoft Excel charts in 268
- legal contracts 611–617
- letterhead and matching envelopes 195–205
- linking Microsoft Excel charts to 267
- linking Microsoft Excel data to 229
- linking PowerPoint slides to 302
- locking 408
- manuals 417–425
- memos 189–191
- moving around in 65, 66
- navigating online with hyperlinks 423
- newsletters 218–221
- online manuals 417–425
- opening 73
- passwords for 408
- pleadings 604–610
- posting 397, 404
- previewing 73
- printing 73
- protecting 408
- resumes 620–623
- reviewing online 406–412
- routing 397, 400, 401
- saving 73, 267
- saving versions 422
- selecting entire 67
- sending out for team review 406–412
- sharing information between applications 169–181
- shortcuts for entering text 64
- tables of contents in 236, 237
- templates for *See* templates
- transferring presentation handouts and notes to 302
- transferring to PowerPoint 328, 329
- typing text 64

documents (*continued*)

- viewing 74
- when to create forms in 240

dollars *See* currency, formatting worksheet values as

double-spacing text 130

downloading

- See* exporting

Draft copy, as letterhead watermark 203

dragging

- to move or copy worksheet ranges 82
- to select worksheet ranges 79

dragging and dropping

- between applications 178
- within applications 69, 173

drawing

- in Microsoft Excel 156
- in PowerPoint 99
- in Word 137
- Word table rows and columns 243

Drawing toolbar 160–162, 165

drivers, ODBC 548, 549, 550

drop caps, creating 129

drop-down list fields 244

E

editing Word documents 68, 69

electronic address books *See* address books, electronic

electronic binders *See* Binder

electronic mail *See* e-mail

electronic presentations

- advantages of 304
- animations in 304, 305, 306
- branching in 308, 309
- designing 319–323
- finding slides with Slide Navigator 315
- giving 314–318
- hidden slides in 307, 315
- kiosks 309
- master slides 322
- multimedia effects in 312, 315, 316
- organizing agenda 310
- preparing for 304–313
- rehearsing 311
- running on multiple computers 318
- running on remote computers 318

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114403

- electronic presentations (*continued*)
 - running over networks 318
 - self-running 332–337
 - slide transitions in 304–309, 313
 - special effects in 315, 316
 - timing 311
 - two-computer 318
 - use of handouts 102, 299, 326
 - viewing notes on screen during 316
 - when to use 304
 - elevation (3-D charts) 286
 - e-mail
 - attaching documents to 399
 - automatic routing in Outlook 379
 - creating and sending in Outlook 116
 - creating distribution lists in Outlook 380
 - highlighting parts of messages 403
 - including hyperlinks in messages 471
 - including signature in messages 403
 - marking messages for follow-up in Outlook 377
 - organizing in folders in Outlook 378
 - software needed 396, 402
 - soliciting votes in Outlook 381
 - sorting messages in Outlook Inbox 377
 - using Word as editor 402, 403
 - employee data
 - creating phone books 111
 - creating reports 111
 - evaluating sales performance 582–588
 - in databases 104–111
 - in Northwind database 104–111
 - printing from Northwind database 111
 - ranking sales performance 588
 - sorting in database 107
 - viewing in database 105
 - employee handbooks, creating 417–425
 - empty text boxes 225
 - engineering analysis 592–594
 - entering worksheet formulas 84, 85, 484
 - envelopes
 - adding graphics to 205
 - addresses for 187
 - formatting addresses 187
 - labels for 214
 - logos on 205
 - envelopes (*continued*)
 - matching letterhead 205
 - printing 187, 205, 215, 625
 - equal sign (=) in worksheet formulas 84
 - error bars, in charts 600, 601
 - errors, correcting
 - in PowerPoint presentations 100
 - in Word documents 64
 - in worksheets 356
 - errors, tracing in Microsoft Excel 561
 - events, calendar
 - See also* appointments
 - noting in Calendar 384
 - vs. appointments 382
 - events, programming
 - editing procedures in Visual Basic 653
 - macros for 650
 - naming 651
 - viewing event procedures 653
 - Excel *See* Microsoft Excel
 - Exchange *See* Microsoft Exchange
 - exchanging information *See* sharing
 - exclusive mode 431
 - exiting *See* quitting Office applications
 - experimental data, analyzing 592–594
 - exponential growth curve 575
 - exponential smoothing 592
 - exporting
 - data among Office applications 347
 - data from Microsoft Excel to Microsoft Access 494
 - PowerPoint presentations to Word 102, 330
 - text 347
 - expressions in database queries 585
 - external data
 - See also* databases, external; Microsoft Query
 - importing vs. linking to Office applications 547
 - reading in to Office applications 347
 - requirements for linking to 548
- F**
- facing pages 146
 - facsimile *See* fax cover sheets
 - Favorites folder 54

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114404

Index

- fax cover sheets
 - bypassing in wizard 193
 - creating with Fax Wizard 192–194
 - filling in 194
 - saving as templates 194
- field buttons, selecting 566, 569
- fields (Outlook), adding to views 370
- fields (Word) *See* merge fields; form fields (Word)
- fields, database
 - See also* categories, chart; controls; form fields (Word)
 - adding to forms 501
 - adding to queries 583, 587
 - adding to reports 526
 - adding to tables 508, 511
 - converting from worksheet columns 496
 - default values for 515
 - defined 105
 - for tracking inventory levels 511
 - limiting data entry 516, 517
 - linking worksheet cells to 253
 - lookup 509, 510, 512
 - macros for data entry in 649, 650
 - reading long names 578
 - renaming 508
 - setting properties 513–518
 - sorting 107, 588
- figures, tables of 237
- files
 - See also* databases (Microsoft Access); documents; presentations; text files; workbooks
 - adding hyperlinks 444, 445
 - adding maps to 295
 - attaching to electronic mail messages 399
 - compatibility with previous Office versions 6–8
 - creating and opening 48–59
 - creating based on templates 49–53
 - creating based on wizards 49
 - database 252, 550
 - distributing using Web 398
 - finding 56, 57, 59
 - finding from Start menu 58
 - frequently used 54
 - linked vs. inserted 173
 - minimizing size 173
 - moving between Office applications 347
 - files (*continued*)
 - opening 48, 56, 57
 - opening as templates 49
 - posting online 397, 404
 - routing online 397, 400, 401
 - saving as templates 52, 53
 - sending online 397, 399
 - sharing in workgroups 396–404
 - specifying properties for 59
 - starting new from Shortcut Bar 45
 - storing 54, 55
 - version compatibility 6–8
 - ways to share 397
 - where to store contact information 346
 - fill handle 81, 356
 - filling *See* AutoFill feature
 - fills, as graphic effect 161
 - filtering (Microsoft Access)
 - by form 629
 - by selection 629
 - contact management database 364
 - database records 108
 - music collection database 629
 - showing all records after 108, 629
 - filtering (Microsoft Excel)
 - advanced 542
 - contact lists 346, 357
 - criteria for 542
 - price list data 542
 - sales data 558
 - using AutoFilter 542, 558
 - worksheet lists 90, 357, 542
 - filtering Outlook contact lists 369
 - finding
 - See also* filtering; queries; sorting
 - contact information 346
 - databases 56, 58, 59
 - documents 56, 57, 58, 59
 - files 56–59
 - Help topics 40
 - highlighted document sections 409
 - information in Outlook 124
 - slides in electronic presentations 315
 - first-line indent 131

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

- flyers
 - adding graphics 225
 - adding text 225
 - borders in 226
 - columns in 224
 - creating in Word 222–226
 - layout of 222, 223, 224
 - setting margins 223
 - sketching design 223
 - uses for 222
- folders
 - See also* Favorites folder; public folders
 - saving linked data in 267
- fonts
 - See also* Microsoft WordArt and character spacing 129
 - changing 86
 - changing default 129
 - in flyers 70
 - using in Microsoft Excel 86, 151
 - using in Word 70, 128
- footers *See* headers and footers
- footnotes
 - adding to legal documents 607
 - continuation notices 607
 - moving 607
 - numbering 607
 - viewing contents 607
- FORECAST function 572
- forecasting
 - See also* budgets
 - sales 571–575
- form *See* forms, online and printed; forms, database
- form design view (Microsoft Access) 274, 500, 502, 503
- form fields (Word)
 - adding 244
 - calculation 245
 - changing settings 244
 - check boxes 244, 245
 - checking spelling 245
 - creating Help text for 246
 - defined 244
 - drop-down lists 244
 - for printed forms 245
 - for text 244
- form fields (Word) (*continued*)
 - printed form considerations 245
 - testing 245
- form letters *See* letters, form
- form view 109, 110
- Form Wizard 109, 112, 498, 499, 504
- Format Painter (Microsoft Access) 502, 528
- Format Painter (Microsoft Excel) 157
- Format Painter (Word) 145
- formatting
 - See also* AutoFormat feature
 - 2-D charts 276–286
 - 3-D charts 276–286
 - business reports 233
 - cells in worksheets 86, 149, 150, 355
 - characters in text 70, 71, 128, 129
 - characters vs. paragraphs 71
 - charts 276–286
 - conditional, in worksheets 150, 485
 - contact lists in worksheets 355
 - copying in databases 502, 528
 - copying in Word documents 145
 - copying in worksheets 157
 - database forms 502, 503
 - database reports 528
 - dates 564
 - defining as worksheet cell styles 157
 - envelopes 187
 - flyers 225
 - for charts, defined 276
 - graphic objects in Microsoft Excel 156
 - inventory database reports 528
 - map displays in Microsoft Map 291, 292, 293
 - Microsoft Excel charts 276–286
 - modifying in Microsoft Access 502
 - numbers in worksheets 86, 149, 150, 565
 - online forms 252
 - paragraphs 70, 71, 130, 131
 - plot area 285
 - PowerPoint outlines from other
 - applications 328, 329
 - PowerPoint presentations 319–323
 - removing in Word documents 70
 - saving as styles 144
 - single PowerPoint slides 321
 - text in Word documents 70, 71, 128–131, 142

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114406

Index

- formatting (*continued*)
 - turning off in Word 70
 - using Style box 233
 - using Style Gallery 142
 - Word documents 70, 71, 127–146
 - worksheets 86, 148–158
- Formatting toolbar (Microsoft Access) 502
- Formatting toolbar (Microsoft Excel) 78, 86, 149, 151
- Formatting toolbar (Word) 70
- Forms toolbar 244
- forms, database
 - adding charts 273
 - adding fields 501
 - adding hyperlinks 467, 468
 - adding records 110
 - adjusting controls 500, 501
 - borders on 503
 - buttons on 521, 652
 - changing formatting 502, 503
 - changing layout 500, 501
 - copying formatting 502
 - creating 109, 499, 504
 - creating subforms within 504
 - default values for fields 515
 - defined 104
 - entering data with 361, 362, 513–518
 - entering today's date automatically 515
 - facilitating data entry 513–518
 - for contact management database 361, 362
 - for inventory database 498–504
 - for music collection database 628
 - for startup 519–522
 - limiting data entry 516, 517
 - lines on 502
 - macros for 650, 651
 - opening from Windows desktop 499
 - titles for 502
 - using with Microsoft Excel 358
 - viewing charts in 274
 - viewing records in 109
- forms, online and printed
 - automating 247
 - borders on 243
 - calculation fields 245
 - check box fields 244
 - controlling data entry 247, 248
- forms, online and printed (*continued*)
 - creating Help text for 246
 - creating in Microsoft Excel 250–257, 539
 - creating in Word 241–249
 - defined 240
 - designing 242–245
 - drop-down list fields 244
 - fields in 244, 245
 - fill-in fields 244, 245
 - filling out online 255
 - for customer orders 241–249
 - for customer quotes 539
 - for Web pages 249
 - formatting 252
 - linking to databases 252, 253, 257
 - macros for 245, 247
 - Microsoft Excel templates for 251, 257
 - overview 241
 - passwords for 248
 - protecting 245, 248
 - saving as templates 242
 - shading in 243
 - tables for 242, 243
 - testing 245
 - text fields 244, 245
 - uses for 240
 - ways to create 240
 - which application to create in 240
- formula bar 84
- Formula Palette 85
- formulas, worksheet
 - See also* functions, worksheet
 - arrays 573
 - AutoSum 84
 - calculating values in 84
 - cell references in 84
 - copying with AutoFill 480
 - defined 84
 - displaying 85
 - editing 85
 - entering 84, 85, 484
 - errors in 561
 - for consolidating budgets 479
 - hiding 414
 - in 3-D references 479, 480
 - natural language 85, 484, 489

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

formulas, worksheet (*continued*)

- subtraction in 483
- tracing errors 561
- worksheet names in 479, 480

Fourier analysis 592

FoxPro files 252, 550

freezing panes 354

FrontPage 25

full screen view 638

functions, worksheet

COUNTBLANK 561

COUNTIF 561

defined 84

entering 84, 85, 572

FORECAST 572

GROWTH 575

reference information 572

SUM 84, 558

SUMIF 561

for summarizing 559

TREND 573

VLOOKUP 540, 541

G

Genographics 102

geographic displays using Microsoft Map 287–295

getting assistance *See* Office Assistant; Helpglossary *See* AutoText feature

goal seeking for budget alternatives 486

grammar, checking 72, 232

grand totals

calculating from subtotals 558

in PivotTables 565

Graph *See* Microsoft Graphgraphic objects *See* graphics

graphics

adding to charts 281

adding to documents 137, 159–167, 199, 225

adding to Microsoft Access forms and reports 110

adding to worksheets 156

as objects 159

attaching to worksheet cells 156

clip art 99, 137, 163

creating for Word documents 137

creating in PowerPoint 99

graphics (*continued*)

cropping 137, 221, 225

formatting in Microsoft Excel 156

importing into PowerPoint 99

in Clip Gallery 99

in envelope design 205

in letterhead design 199, 200

inserting from other programs 166

positioning 225

resizing 225

rotating in Word 199

symbols as 137

watermarks as 203, 204

wrapping text around 221

graphs *See* charts (Microsoft Access); charts (Microsoft Excel); charts (Microsoft Graph)

grid, worksheet 78

gridlines

chart 282

worksheet 154

grouping

data in database reports 111, 533

data in Outlook contact lists 371, 372

PivotTable data 566, 580

worksheet data 557

GROWTH function 575

growth trend 573, 575

H

handles

for resizing graphics 225

for resizing Microsoft Access controls 500

handouts, audience

assembling in books 302, 303

creating in notes page view 299, 307

exporting to Word 302

headers and footers on 299

including hidden slides 307

note-taking space on 299

output options 102, 326

overview 92, 298–303

printing 102, 299, 301

slides per page 299

use of animated slides 299

when to use 298

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114408

Getting Results with Microsoft Office 679

Index

- hard page breaks 132
 - Harvard Graphics 327
 - headers and footers
 - adding dates 133
 - adding page numbers 133, 234
 - adding to Word documents 133, 197, 198, 623
 - defined 133
 - different first page 133, 202
 - different odd and even pages 146
 - for facing pages 146
 - for letterhead 197, 201, 202
 - for worksheets 86, 88
 - in business reports 234, 235
 - in legal contracts 612
 - in PowerPoint slides 321
 - in resumes 623
 - leaving off first page 133
 - on presentation handouts and notes 299
 - switching between 198, 202
 - viewing 133
 - headings, document
 - See also* styles, heading
 - in database reports 528
 - numbering 614
 - side heads 146
 - headlines
 - banner 139
 - in flyers 225
 - Help
 - creating for online forms 246
 - finding topics 40
 - for add-ins 40
 - for inserted objects 173
 - for Microsoft Map 289
 - index 40
 - installing 35
 - Office Assistant 38, 39
 - on compact disc 43
 - on Getting Results book topics 42
 - overview 35
 - ScreenTips 36, 37
 - with worksheet functions 572
 - hidden slides
 - branching to 309
 - creating 307
 - for adding notes pages 307
 - hidden slides (*continued*)
 - including in handouts 307
 - using in presentations 315
 - when to use 307, 315
 - hiding
 - See also* hidden slides; turning off nonprinting characters 62
 - Office Assistant 39
 - sales detail 560
 - spelling error indicator 72
 - worksheet columns 357, 560
 - worksheet formulas 414
 - worksheet outline detail 560
 - worksheet rows 476
 - highlighting text
 - See also* selecting
 - in electronic mail messages 403
 - in Word documents 191, 409
 - holidays *See* events (calendar)
 - home assets, recording 631–633
 - horizontal pages *See* landscape orientation, in Word flyers
 - horizontal ruler 223
 - hot buttons *See* jumps, creating in presentations
 - HTML (hypertext markup language) format
 - converting presentations to 452–457
 - converting Word documents to 460
 - converting worksheets to 448–451
 - creating Web pages 458–462
 - overview 442–447
 - hyperlinks
 - adding to databases 466, 467, 468
 - adding to files 444, 445
 - adding to worksheets 485
 - creating in online Word documents 423, 424
 - including in e-mail messages 471
 - on shortcut menu 445
 - removing from files 445
 - when to use 170, 175
- I**
- I-beam pointer 65
 - Import Spreadsheet Wizard 494

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114409

- importing
 - data between Office applications 347
 - database data to Microsoft Excel 550
 - external data to Microsoft Access databases 112, 432, 497
 - outlines to PowerPoint from Word 328, 329
 - PIM and other data into Outlook 114
 - presentations to Word 302
 - sales data, which application to use 547
 - text files to Microsoft Excel 354, 550
 - text options 347
- Inbox
 - defined 115
 - marking e-mail messages for follow-up 377
 - sorting e-mail messages 377
- indenting text
 - first-line 131
 - negative 130, 146
 - precise 130
 - using Formatting toolbar 70
 - using ruler 131
- indenting worksheet data 152, 153
- input masks 517
- input range, worksheet 593
- inserted charts
 - activating 276
 - adding data to 262
 - defined 260
 - positioning 285
 - vs. chart sheets 260
 - when to use 268
- inserted objects
 - creating 172
 - double-clicking 172
 - editing 172, 173
 - Help with 173
 - impact on file size 173
- inserting
 - charts *See* inserted charts
 - existing information 172
 - graphic objects in documents 166, 167
 - maps in documents 295
 - media clips in online presentations 312
 - Microsoft Excel charts in documents 268
 - new information 172
 - objects *See* inserted objects
- inserting (*continued*)
 - overview 172
 - text in Word documents 64, 68
 - vs. linking 173, 268
 - when to use 170
 - worksheet rows and columns 152
- insertion point 62, 65
- installing
 - Analysis ToolPak 592
 - Help 35
 - Microsoft Map 287
 - Office 28–33
- IntelliMouse 420
- IntelliSense and Outlook 118
- interactive presentations 309
- internal Webs *See* intranets
- international contacts 390
- Internet *See* World Wide Web
- Internet addresses, sending meeting requests to 389
- Internet Assistant *See* intranets; World Wide Web
- Internet Explorer 447
- intranets
 - and Office applications 442–447
 - creating Web pages in Microsoft Access 464–469
 - creating Web pages in Microsoft Excel 448–451
 - creating Web pages in PowerPoint 452–457
 - creating Web pages in Word 458–462
 - defined 443
 - navigating using Web toolbar 442, 446, 447
 - opening Web pages from Outlook 470–471
 - publishing information on 448–451, 452–457, 469
 - use of Microsoft Access 442–447, 464–469
 - use of Microsoft Excel 442–447, 448–451
 - use of PowerPoint 442–447, 452–457
 - use of Word 442–447, 458–462
- inventory database
 - adding buttons to forms and reports 521
 - adding fields for inventory levels to Products table 511
 - adding Suppliers table to 505–512
 - converting product list from Microsoft Excel 493–497
 - creating Products form 498–504
 - creating reports 525–529
 - creating startup form 520–522
 - customizing menus 522

MS 114410

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

Index

inventory database (*continued*)
 customizing toolbars 522
 facilitating data entry for 513–518
 overview 492
 passwords for 523
 turning into application 519–523
 inventory, household 631–633
 italicizing text
 in Microsoft Excel 86, 151
 in Word 70

J

joining *See* merging
 Journal feature
 logging phone calls 351
 overview 121, 122
 jumps, creating in presentations 308, 309
See also hyperlinks
 justifying text 70

K

kerning 129
 kiosks, presentation *See* self-running presentations

L

Label Wizard 216
 labeling
See also titles
 chart elements 279, 280, 284
 database fields in forms 500
 database fields in reports 528
 maps 293
 startup form elements 520, 521
 labels, mailing 214, 215
 landscape orientation, in Word flyers 224
 languages, programming *See* Visual Basic for Applications
 laptop computers
 giving presentations on 338–340
 using public folders from 439
 using Word on 74
 layout *See* page layout
 Layout Preview feature 534

left-aligning
 data in worksheet cells 152
 text using Formatting toolbar in Word 70
 legal documents *See* contracts, legal; pleadings
 legends, chart
 defined 261, 284
 formatting 284
 moving 284
 positioning 284
 resizing 284
 legends, map
 customizing 288
 changing appearance 292
 legibility of on-screen documents 419, 420
 letter templates
 for business letters 186
 for letterhead 196
 vs. Letter Wizard 186
 Letter Wizard
 creating business letters with 184, 185, 186
 creating cover letter for resume 624, 625
 vs. letter templates 186
 letterhead
 adding logo 199, 200
 adding watermark 203, 204
 matching envelopes 205
 modifying from templates 196, 197, 198
 printing 196
 saving as template 196
 second page 201, 202, 204
 letters, business
 cover letter for resume 624, 625
 creating letterhead 195–204
 creating with letter templates 186
 creating with Letter Wizard 185, 186
 designs for 184, 186
 modifying parts of letter 185
 ready-to-use 184–186
 letters, form
 adding merge fields 210
 creating and sending to mailing lists 206–216
 merging mailing list data with 212, 213
 merging to printer 212
 overview 206
 previewing 212
 printing individually 213

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114411

- letters, form (*continued*)
 - saving 210
 - sending by fax 193
 - targeting recipients 211
 - writing 207
 - line charts
 - data markers 277, 278
 - vs. xy (scatter) charts 596
 - linear regression 598
 - linear trend, projecting 573, 574, 575
 - lines (rules)
 - See also* borders
 - adding to database forms 502
 - adding to Word documents 138
 - removing from Word documents 138
 - lines of text
 - selecting 67
 - spacing 130
 - linking
 - external data to Microsoft Access
 - databases 432, 547
 - Microsoft Excel charts to documents 267
 - Microsoft Excel data to Word documents 229
 - Microsoft Excel forms to databases 252, 253, 257
 - overview 174
 - PowerPoint slides to Word documents 302
 - sales data, when to use 547
 - size of linked objects 173
 - updating data 174, 267
 - vs. inserting 173, 268
 - when to use 170
 - worksheet cells to database fields 253
 - worksheets to Microsoft Access databases 497
 - links
 - modifying 268
 - updating 174, 267
 - using folders for updating 267
 - lists (Microsoft Excel)
 - business contacts 353–359
 - filtering 90, 542
 - format guidelines 355
 - formatting numbers in 150
 - managing 90
 - moving to Microsoft Access 493–497
 - outlining 558, 560
 - selecting 557
 - lists (Microsoft Excel) (*continued*)
 - sorting 90, 356, 357, 557
 - subtotaling 558, 559
 - where to store contact information 346, 347
 - lists (Word)
 - bulleted 135
 - numbered 135
 - where to store contact information 346, 347
 - locking
 - See also* protecting
 - Microsoft Access records 431
 - Word documents 408
 - worksheet cells 252
 - logarithmic trendline 575
 - logos
 - See also* graphics
 - for envelopes 205
 - for letterhead 199, 200
 - lookup fields
 - adding to database tables 509, 510
 - and table relationships 512
 - LOOKUP functions (VLOOKUP) 540, 541
 - Lookup Wizard 509, 541
 - Lotus 1-2-3, Help for users 40
 - Lotus Freelance Graphics 327
- ## M
- Macro Builder 650
 - macros
 - assigning to toolbar buttons 647
 - creating in Microsoft Access with Macro Builder 650
 - database uses for 649, 651
 - for online form fields 247
 - modifying in Microsoft Access 651
 - recording 644–645
 - running 646, 646, 650
 - Word exit macro 245, 247
 - magnifying screen *See* Zoom box
 - mail *See* e-mail
 - mail merge 206–216
 - Mail Merge Helper
 - creating mailing lists 208
 - overview 206
 - setting up mail merge 207

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114412

Index

- Mailing Label Wizard 216
- mailing labels
 - customizing 215
 - layout 214
 - printing in Word 214, 215
 - repeating same label 215
- mailing lists
 - See also* contact lists
 - creating in Word 208
 - filtering records in Word 211
 - merging data with form letters 212, 213
 - querying in Microsoft Access 211, 216
 - querying in Word 211
 - sending form letters to 206–216
 - using parts of 211
 - where to store 209, 215
- mailings, creating 206–216
- mainframe databases 550
- manually updating links 174
- manuals, online *See* online documents
- mapping worksheet cells to database fields 253
- maps
 - activating 289
 - adding data to 289, 294
 - adding features to 292, 293
 - as objects 295
 - changing data 294
 - changing views 290
 - charts on 291, 292
 - copying 289
 - creating 288, 289
 - for sales data 569
 - formatting display 291, 292, 293
 - Help 289
 - inserting in other documents 295
 - inserting in worksheets 167
 - labels on 293
 - legends on 288, 292
 - text boxes on 293
 - types available 289
 - updating 294
 - use of Microsoft Map 287–295
- margin notes 146
- margins, page
 - for facing pages 146
 - for letterhead 200
- margins, page (*continued*)
 - setting on Word rulers 132, 223
 - setting precisely in Word 132
- markers, indent 131
- marking revisions 406, 407, 408
- marks, paragraph 62, 131
- master documents 423
- masters, presentation
 - defined 319
 - for slide formatting 322
 - for title slides 322
 - overriding 323
 - uses for 322
- maximum values, finding in database queries 587
- media clips
 - controlling playback for online presentations 312
 - inserting in online presentations 312
- Meeting Minder
 - recording notes 317
 - using for online presentations 317
 - viewing notes on screen 317
- meetings
 - canceling or rescheduling 388
 - changing appointments to 383
 - recurring 388
 - setting up 117
 - tracking responses 388
- Memo Wizard 189, 190
- memos
 - checking spelling 191
 - creating with templates 191
 - creating with wizard 189, 190
 - for meetings 191
 - formatting 190, 191
 - wizard designs 189
- menus
 - customizing 641, 642
 - for database applications 522
 - shortcut, Microsoft Excel 80
- merge fields
 - in form letters 210
 - in mailing labels 214
- Merge It button 216
- merging
 - cells in Word tables 243
 - document revisions 410

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

- merging (*continued*)
 - form letters to document file 213
 - form letters to printer 212
 - mailing lists with form letters 212, 213
 - shared workbooks 414
- messages *See* e-mail
- Microsoft Access
 - See also* databases (Microsoft Access)
 - adding charts to forms and reports 272–275
 - adding suppliers to inventory database 505–512
 - adding to installation 32
 - automating repetitive tasks with macros 649–653
 - creating and opening databases 48–59
 - creating charts from databases 272–275
 - creating database applications 492, 519–523
 - creating forms for databases 498–504
 - creating inventory reports 525–529
 - creating price lists 532–538
 - creating sales summaries from databases 576–580
 - customizing use of 636–642
 - evaluating sales performance 582–588
 - exporting options 347
 - facilitating data entry 513–518
 - importing data from external databases 497
 - importing data from Microsoft Excel 493–497
 - importing options 347
 - installing 28–33
 - mail merges from 216
 - moving contact information to and from 347
 - moving Microsoft Excel product list to 493–497
 - organizing music collections 626–629
 - querying databases 582–588
 - quitting 34
 - removing parts of installation 32
 - starting 34
 - tracking business contacts 360–364
 - tracking orders in shared databases 427–432
 - transferring information with OfficeLinks button 177
 - turning databases into applications 519–523
 - using first database 104–112
 - using forms with Microsoft Excel contact information 358
 - using PivotTables with 576–580
 - using to inventory assets 631–633
 - using with other applications 169–181
- Microsoft Access (*continued*)
 - views 109, 110
 - vs. Microsoft Excel, which to use when 546–547
 - Web features 464–469
 - when to store contact information in 346
 - when to use for sales data 546
- Microsoft Clip Gallery 99, 163
- Microsoft Corporation, getting help from on Web 41
- Microsoft Excel
 - See also* charts (Microsoft Excel); PivotTables; workbooks
 - adding components 32
 - Analysis ToolPak 592
 - analyzing experimental data 592–594
 - analyzing sales data 556–561, 563–569
 - consolidating budget data 474–481
 - converting product lists to Microsoft Access databases 493–497
 - creating charts from worksheets 260–265
 - creating PivotTables from Microsoft Access databases 576–580
 - creating sales forecasts 571–575
 - custom views 638
 - customizing use of 636–642
 - developing budget alternatives 482–489
 - displaying scientific data in charts 595–601
 - exporting options 347
 - first workbook 76–90
 - formatting 148–158
 - Formatting toolbar 78, 86, 149, 151
 - goal seeking 486
 - importing data from external data sources 548–554
 - importing options 347
 - importing text files 550
 - installing 28–33
 - linking data to Word 229
 - linking worksheet data to databases 250–257
 - Microsoft Map add-in 287–295
 - moving contact information to and from 347
 - moving data to Microsoft Access 493–497
 - overview 76
 - preparing customer quotes 539–543
 - quitting 34
 - removing components 32
 - scenarios 487
 - sharing workbooks with co-workers 412–416

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114414

Index

Microsoft Excel *(continued)*

- Standard Toolbar 78
- starting 34
- summarizing sales with PivotTables 563–569
- summarizing sales with subtotals 556–561
- transferring information to Microsoft Access 177
- using with other applications 169–181
- vs. Microsoft Access, which to use when 546–547
- Web features 448–451
- when to create forms in 240
- when to store contact information in 346
- when to use for sales data 547

Microsoft Exchange

- personal address book 185, 190, 208, 209, 625
- posting to public folders 404
- when needed 396, 402, 403

Microsoft Fax 192

Microsoft FrontPage 25

Microsoft Graph

- adding charts to Microsoft Access forms and reports 272–275
- creating charts in Word documents 271
- customizing charts 276–286
- vs. Microsoft Excel 271
- when to use 271

Microsoft Mail 396

Microsoft Map

- creating maps that display data 287–295
- installing 287
- types of maps available 289

Microsoft Office

- adding applications 32
- adding components 32, 33
- binding documents together 179, 180, 181
- creating and opening files 48–59
- customizing applications 636–642
- first-time installation 29
- how much to install 29
- installing 28–33
- new features 9–18
- on networks 30, 32
- quitting applications 34
- registering 31
- removing parts of installation 32, 33
- restoring 32, 33
- Setup program 30, 32, 33

Microsoft Office *(continued)*

- Shortcut Bar 44–47
- starting applications 34
- types of installation 28, 29
- uninstalling 32, 33
- upgrading from previous version 29
- version file compatibility 6–8
- versions of 29
- Web features 442–447
- where to store contact information 346, 347

Microsoft Outlook

- accessing from Shortcut Bar 46
- adding hyperlinks 470–471
- adding to installation 32
- creating and sending e-mail 116
- customizing display 366–374
- elements of 114, 115
- exporting data 347
- filtering data 369
- grouping data 371
- importing data 347
- importing data into 114
- installing 28–33
- jotting down notes 123
- moving contact information to and from 347
- moving information around in 123, 125, 126
- organizing Calendar 382–385
- organizing contact information 119, 348–352, 366–374
- organizing e-mail 116, 376–381
- organizing tasks 120, 391–392
- overview 114
- posting presentation action items to 318
- quitting 34
- recording activities using Journal 121, 122
- removing parts of installation 32
- searching for information in 124
- setting up meetings 117, 387–390
- shortcuts in 115
- sorting data 372
- starting 34
- using contact list as mailing list 209
- using to share folders 433–439
- views 367–372
- when to create forms in 240
- when to store contact information in 346, 347

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

Microsoft PowerPoint

See also presentations; slides, presentation
 adding charts to presentations 266–271
 adding to installation 32
 black and white presentations 324–326
 creating handouts and speaker's notes 298–303
 customizing presentations 319–323
 customizing use of 636–642
 design of 315
 exchanging information with other
 applications 327–331
 first presentation 92–102
 giving electronic presentations 314–318
 installing 28–33
 Internet Assistant 452–457
 linking Microsoft Excel charts to presentations 267
 preparing for electronic presentations 304–313
 quitting 34
 removing parts of installation 32
 self-running presentations 332–337
 starting 34
 using with other applications 169–181
 views 93
 Web features 452–457

Microsoft Press catalogue 19–23

Microsoft Project 25

Microsoft Publisher 25

Microsoft Query

and PivotTables 567
 enabling 548, 549
 getting external price list data 541
 getting external sales data 548
 installing 548
 overview 554
 starting 549
 when to use 551, 554

Microsoft Word

See also documents; tables (Word)
 adding charts to documents 266–271
 adding to installation 32
 creating business letters 184–186
 creating business reports 228–237
 creating fax cover sheets 192–194
 creating flyers 222–226
 creating form letter mailings 206–216
 creating letterhead 195–204

Microsoft Word (*continued*)

creating memos 189–191
 creating newsletters 218–221
 creating online forms 241–249
 creating online manuals 417–425
 creating resumes and cover letters 620–625
 creating Web pages 458–462
 customizing use of 636–642
 exporting options 347
 first document 61–74
 formatting documents 127–146
 Formatting toolbar 70
 importing options 347
 installing 28–33
 quitting 34
 removing parts of installation 32
 screen elements 62
 starting 34
 team review of documents 406–412
 transferring PowerPoint presentations to 177
 using as electronic mail editor 402, 403
 using with other applications 169–181
 Web authoring tools 458–462
 Web features 458–462
 when to create forms in 240

Microsoft WordArt 137, 164, 225
 minimum values, finding in database queries 587
 minus bars 600
 mirror margins 146
 mistakes, correcting
 in presentations 100
 in Word documents 64, 67
 in worksheets 82, 356
 modeling budget alternatives in worksheets 482–489
 money *See* currency, formatting worksheet values as
 monitor *See* screen display

mouse
 and Microsoft Map 290
 and worksheet cell comments 415
 IntelliMouse 420
 using to move around in Word documents 65

mouse pointer 62
 movie clips 312
 moving
 by dragging and dropping 69, 173
 cell ranges by inserting 83

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114416

Getting Results with Microsoft Office 687

Index

- moving (*continued*)
 - chart legends 284
 - text in Word documents 69
 - vs. linking or inserting 170
 - worksheet cell ranges 82
 - worksheet lists into Microsoft Access 493–497
 - moving around in Word documents 65, 66
 - moving around in worksheets 78, 81
 - moving averages 575, 599
 - multimedia effects
 - adding to electronic presentations 312
 - playing in electronic presentations 315, 316
 - multiple undo 67
 - multiple workbooks, linking to single database 254
 - multiuser databases *See* shared databases
 - multiuser documents *See* shared Word documents
 - multiuser workbooks *See* shared workbooks
 - music collection database
 - adding data to 628
 - creating 627
 - filtering records in 629
 - finding data in 629
 - music, playing in online presentations 312
 - My Documents folder 54, 55
- N**
- named worksheet cells 480, 488, 540, 541
 - named worksheets 479, 480
 - names, personal
 - See also* address books, electronic; contact lists
 - importing into worksheets 354
 - in worksheet contact lists 353–359
 - listing in one column or two 355
 - where to store 346, 347
 - naming
 - See also* labeling; titles
 - chart sheets 87
 - worksheet cells 484, 488
 - worksheet tabs 87
 - worksheets 87
 - natural language formulas 85, 484, 489
 - navigating
 - in Word documents 65, 66
 - in worksheets 78, 81
 - Navigator, Slide 315
 - negative indents 130, 146
 - nesting subtotals 559
 - networks
 - See also* intranets; World Wide Web
 - giving online presentations on 318
 - installing Office from 30
 - installing Office on 32
 - placing shared databases on 430
 - sharing workbooks on 412–416, 481
 - new Office features 9–18
 - Newsletter Wizard 218, 219
 - newsletters
 - adding content 220, 221
 - creating 218–221
 - newspaper-style columns *See* columns, newspaper-style
 - nonprinting characters, turning on and off 62, 638
 - normal view 74
 - Northwind database
 - evaluating sales performance with 582–588
 - preparing price list report with 532–538
 - viewing employee data in 104–111
 - notes *See* comments, worksheet cell; comments (PowerPoint); comments (Word); speaker notes
 - Notes feature 123
 - notes page view 93, 94
 - null modem cable 341
 - numbered lists
 - creating 135
 - removing numbers from 135
 - selecting option on Formatting toolbar 70
 - numbering
 - footnotes in legal pleadings 607
 - headings in contracts 614
 - pages 133, 134, 234
 - paragraphs 614, 615
 - numbers
 - custom formatting in worksheets 150
 - entering series automatically 81
 - formatting in worksheets 149, 150, 565
 - viewing as percentages 484

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114417

O

- objects
 - See also* graphics; inserted objects maps as 295
- ODBC drivers 548, 549, 550
- Office *See* Microsoft Office
- Office Assistant
 - hiding 39
 - in Office applications 35, 38, 39
 - use of 39
- Office Binder *See* Binder
- office memos, creating 189–191
- Office Shortcut Bar
 - changing buttons on 47
 - displaying 45
 - overview 44
 - starting new documents from 45
 - uses for 44, 46
- Office Web, using to distribute documents 398
 - See also* intranets
- OfficeLinks feature 177
- offline folders 439
- on-exit macro 245, 247
- online documents
 - AutoScrolling 420
 - creating 417–425
 - designing 418, 419
 - distributing 425
 - increasing legibility of 419, 420
 - navigating with hyperlinks 423
 - passwords for 425
 - protecting 425
 - saving 425
- online forms *See* forms, online and printed
- online Help *See* Help; Office Assistant
- online index 40
- online information sources 41
- online layout view 74, 420
- online manuals, creating 417–425
- online presentations *See* electronic presentations
- onscreen presentations *See* electronic presentations
- Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) drivers 548, 549, 550
- opening
 - databases 56
 - files 48, 56, 57
 - Word documents 73
- operators, in worksheet formulas 561
- orders
 - See also* sales data
 - creating online forms for 241–249
 - in PivotTables 564–569
 - tracking in shared databases 427–432
- organizational charts 167
- organizing collections 626–629
- organizing documents *See* Binder
- outline view (PowerPoint) 93, 97
- outline view (Word) 421
- outlines (Microsoft Excel)
 - hiding detail 560
 - in lists 558, 560
 - vs. PivotTables 560
- outlines (PowerPoint)
 - bulleted items 97
 - creating new slides in 97
 - for organizing presentations 95, 97
 - in AutoContent Wizard 95
 - printing 102
 - promoting levels 97
 - slides in 97
 - transferring to Word 330
- outlines (Word)
 - and heading styles 230, 421
 - for business reports 230
 - for online manuals 421
 - transferring to PowerPoint 328, 329
 - vs. no outlines 421
- Outlining toolbar 97
- Outlook *See* Microsoft Outlook
- overheads *See* slides, presentation
- Overtyping mode 68
- OVR status indicator 68

P

- Pack and Go Wizard 314
- Page Break Preview feature 86, 88
- page breaks (Microsoft Excel) 88
- page breaks (Word) 132

MS 114418

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

Index

- page fields 568
- page layout
 - for database reports 534, 535
 - for worksheets 86, 88, 89
 - in Word documents 146, 186, 222, 223, 224
 - paper size for database reports 529
- page layout view 74
- page margins *See* margins, page
- page numbers
 - adding to document headers or footers 133, 234
 - for letterhead template 201
 - shortcut for adding to documents 134
- page orientation 224
- pagination 132
 - See also* page numbers
- panes, freezing 354
- Paradox files 252, 497, 550
- paragraph marks 62, 131
- paragraphs
 - formatting 71, 131
 - numbering in legal documents 614, 615
 - selecting 67, 97
- passwords
 - for database applications 429, 523
 - for online documents 425
 - for online forms 248
- Paste Function button 85
- pasting
 - in order to link documents 267
 - text in Word documents 69
 - vs. linking or inserting 170
- patterns
 - adding to charts 277, 285, 286
 - adding to worksheets 154
- Pen drawings in slide shows 318
- percentages, viewing numbers as 484
- personal contacts *See* address books, electronic;
 - contact lists
- personal data, organizing 631–633
- perspective, 3-D chart 286
- phone books *See* contact lists
- phone numbers
 - dialing in Outlook 351
 - simplifying data entry of 517
- Picture toolbar 166
- pictures
 - See also* clip art; graphics
 - adding to database records 110
 - adding to Word documents 137, 225
 - as chart data markers 277, 278
 - creating for Word documents 137
 - cropping 137, 221, 225
- pie charts 263, 277, 278, 488
- PivotTable Wizard
 - using from Microsoft Access 578, 580
 - using in Microsoft Excel 565
- PivotTables
 - and page fields 568
 - changing layout 565
 - comparing budget data 480
 - comparing product sales data 580
 - creating charts from 265, 569
 - creating from database data 256, 576–580
 - creating from worksheet data 564, 565
 - dates in 564
 - defined 256, 563
 - for sales data 546, 547, 563–569
 - grouping data with 566, 580
 - overview 563
 - refreshing 567
 - reusing data 566
 - summarizing sales results 563–569
 - updating 567
 - uses for 547, 563, 564
 - using external data 567
 - using from Microsoft Access 578–580
 - vs. outlines 560
 - when to use 546, 547
- placeholders *See* merge fields
- plain text files, delimited 347
- Pleading Wizard 604, 605, 606
- pleadings
 - citations *See* tables of authorities
 - creating in Word 604–610
 - footnotes 607
 - formatting 606
 - saving as templates 605
 - tables of authorities 608, 609, 610
- plot area, chart 285
- policy manuals, creating 417–425
- polynomial regression 598

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114419

- posting documents online 397, 404
- PowerPoint *See* Microsoft PowerPoint
- PowerPoint Viewer 337
- Presentation Conference Wizard 339, 340
- presentation conferencing 318, 338–340
- presentation designs
 - customizing 321
 - defined 319, 320, 321
- presentations
 - See also* electronic presentations; slides, presentation
 - adding charts 266–271
 - adding comments 343
 - adding graphics 159–167
 - assembling quickly 324–326
 - black and white 324–326
 - blank template 95
 - color vs. black and white 320, 324
 - converting to HTML 452–457
 - creating for Web 452–457
 - creating from Word documents 237
 - creating handouts and speaker notes for 298–303
 - creating with AutoContent Wizard 95, 97
 - creating without wizard 95
 - customizing appearance 319–323
 - designing look 98, 99
 - editing charts from within 266, 269
 - editing text 97
 - electronic 304–313, 314–318
 - elements of 92
 - exchanging information with other
 - applications 327–331
 - exporting to Word 102, 330
 - formatting with content templates 319
 - formatting with master slides 319, 322, 323
 - formatting with presentation designs 319, 321
 - graphics in 99
 - inserting Microsoft Excel charts 268
 - inserting slides from other applications 329
 - linking Microsoft Excel charts to 267
 - on remote computers 338–340
 - overview 92
 - predesigned 319–321
 - previewing 101
 - printed output options 102, 325, 326
 - publishing on World Wide Web 331
- presentations (*continued*)
 - rehearsing 101
 - reviewing 343
 - saving as templates 320
 - saving together with Microsoft Excel
 - workbooks 267
 - self-running 332–337
 - sharing information between applications 169–181
 - spell checking 101
 - style checking 101
 - templates for 98, 319, 320
 - timing 101
 - transferring to Word 177
 - trying out on screen 101
 - two-computer 318
 - types of 92
 - types of templates for 319–320
 - views in 93
 - Write-Up feature 102
- presenter's notes *See* speaker notes
- previewing
 - database reports 363, 529
 - merged data 212
 - Microsoft Access report layout 534, 536
 - presentations 101
 - Word documents 73
 - worksheets 86, 88, 89
- pre-written business letters *See* letter templates; Letter Wizard
- prices
 - calculating discounts 543
 - creating lists 533
 - filtering list data 542
 - formatting lists as database reports 534, 535
 - obtaining using VLOOKUP 540, 541
 - preparing lists 532–538
 - printing as database reports 536
 - querying external databases for 541
- Print Preview feature (Microsoft Access) 529, 536
- Print Preview feature (Microsoft Excel) 89
- Print Preview feature (Word) 73, 132
- printing
 - 35mm slides 102
 - black-and-white presentations 320, 325, 326
 - canceling in Word 73
 - comments in documents 410

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114420

Index

- printing (*continued*)
 - database reports 111, 536, 652
 - envelopes 187, 205, 215
 - form letters from merged data 212
 - Genographics slides 102
 - gridlines in worksheets 154
 - letterhead 196
 - mailing labels from merged data 214, 215
 - Microsoft Excel worksheets 89
 - orientation (Word) 224
 - Outlook Calendar 385
 - Outlook views 374
 - partial worksheets 89
 - presentation handouts 102, 299, 301, 326
 - presentation notes 102, 299
 - presentation outlines 102, 299
 - price lists 536
 - slides 102, 299, 326
 - subtotaled worksheet groups 559
 - Word documents 73
 - worksheet cell comments 415
 - procedure manuals, creating 417–425
 - profit margins, calculating 542
 - programming *See* Visual Basic for Applications
 - programs *See* applications
 - progressive disclosure *See* animations, slide
 - projecting sales 571–575
 - projections, budgeting *See* budgets
 - Promote button (presentation outlines) 97
 - proofreading documents, tools for 72
 - properties, setting
 - for database fields 513–518
 - for database startup forms 520
 - for databases 59
 - for files 59
 - protecting
 - See also* locking
 - databases 429, 523
 - online documents 425
 - online forms 245, 248
 - Word documents 408
 - worksheets 413, 414, 477
 - public folders
 - adding folders to 436
 - as discussion forums 437, 438
 - checking permission levels 434
 - public folders (*continued*)
 - creating folders within 436
 - creating shortcuts to 435
 - overview 433
 - posting documents to 404
 - setting access levels 435
 - using on remote computers 439
 - Publish to the Web Wizard 469
 - push buttons *See* command buttons; toolbar buttons
- Q**
- queries (Microsoft Access)
 - See also* Microsoft Query
 - adding fields to 583
 - calculating totals in 587
 - changing 586, 587
 - charting results 273
 - creating 582, 583, 584
 - creating PivotTables from data 578
 - creating reports from 588
 - criteria for 585
 - design grid 583, 586
 - expressions in 585
 - finding maximum and minimum values with 587
 - in Table Analyzer Wizard 496
 - parameters for 583
 - ranking results 588
 - saving 588
 - selecting fields for 583, 584
 - simple 577, 584
 - sorting results 588
 - tables to search 582, 583, 584
 - totaling results with 587
 - using Simple Query Wizard 577
 - viewing results of 585
 - queries (Word), for mail merge 211
 - queries, external database *See* Microsoft Query; Query Wizard
 - Query *See* Microsoft Query
 - Query Wizard 551, 552, 553
 - quitting Office applications 34
 - quotes, customer
 - built-in template for 539
 - calculating discounts 543
 - creating forms for 539

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114421

- quotes, customer (*continued*)
 - gathering data for 539–543
 - obtaining prices using VLOOKUP 540, 541
 - preparing 539–543
 - viewing profit margin data 540, 542
- R**
- ranges, worksheet
 - See also* cells, worksheet
 - copying 82
 - defined 79
 - inserting 83
 - moving 82
 - named, in consolidation 480
 - selecting 79
- ranking
 - database query results 588
 - database records 107
 - employee performance 588
 - sales data 588
- read-only documents, opening databases as 431
- ready-to-use letters *See* letter templates; Letter Wizard
- record collection, organizing 626–629
- recording macros 644–645
- records (Microsoft Access)
 - adding in Form view 110
 - adding pictures to 110
 - adding to databases 110
 - converting from worksheet rows 496
 - defined 105
 - deleting 110
 - editing 110
 - filtering 108, 629
 - locking 431
 - new 110
 - refreshing in shared databases 431
 - saving 110
 - shared usage on networks 430, 431
 - showing all after filtering 108, 629
 - sorting 107
 - undoing changes to 110
 - updating 110
 - viewing changes in shared databases 431
 - viewing in form view 109
 - viewing in tables 105, 499
- records, external database
 - importing to Microsoft Access databases 112, 432, 497
 - linking to Microsoft Access databases 432
 - linking worksheet cells to 253
 - updating 255
- recurring appointments, scheduling 383
- recurring meetings, scheduling 388
- recurring tasks, organizing 120
- redefining styles 144, 190, 191
- registering Office 31
- Registration Wizard 31
- regression analysis 592, 598
- rehearsing presentations 101, 311
- relational databases 106
- relationships, table
 - between database tables 495, 512
 - setting options 512
 - viewing in relationships window 512
- remote computers
 - giving presentations on 318, 338–340
 - using public folders from 439
- remote links *See* links
- renaming
 - chart sheets 87
 - database fields 508
 - worksheet tabs 87
 - worksheets 87
- repeating worksheet cell entries 356
- repetitive tasks, automating 643–648, 649–653
- report design view 528, 534
- Report Wizard 112, 525, 526, 527, 533
- reports, business 228–237
- reports, database
 - adding buttons to 521
 - adding charts to 275
 - adding cover page from Microsoft Word 537, 538
 - calculating totals in 527
 - changing layout 534, 535
 - chart reports 275
 - copying formatting in 528
 - creating 111, 256, 533
 - defined 104
 - for inventory database 525–529
 - formatting 528
 - grouping data in 111, 533

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114422

Index

- reports, database *(continued)*
 - headings for 528
 - labeling fields 528
 - overview 111
 - page size 529
 - previewing 363, 536
 - printing 111, 536, 652
 - uses of 111
 - viewing charts in 275
 - reports, sales 546, 547
 - See also* summarizing
 - resizing
 - chart legends 284
 - chart plot area 285
 - database table columns 105
 - graphics 225
 - Resume Wizard 620–623
 - resumes
 - adding information to 622
 - adding more pages 623
 - changing style 621
 - creating with templates 621
 - creating with wizard 621
 - designs for 620
 - saving as templates 623
 - sending via fax or e-mail 625
 - retyping data, avoiding 250, 548
 - reverse text 128
 - Review Comments toolbar 414
 - reviewing documents
 - commenting on 407
 - merging revisions 410
 - online 406–411
 - routing to reviewers 397, 400, 401
 - viewing changes 410
 - reviewing presentations 343
 - revisions
 - locking documents for 408
 - marking 406, 407, 408
 - merging 410
 - turning off marks 409
 - viewing 410
 - Rich Text Format 327
 - right-aligning
 - data in worksheet cells 152
 - text using Formatting toolbar 70
 - rolling up budget data 474, 483
 - rotating objects
 - See also* page orientation
 - 3-D charts 286
 - chart axis labels 280, 283
 - data in worksheet cells 152, 155
 - rotating text or graphics 199
 - routing
 - adding slips to forms 254
 - documents for review 406–412
 - documents in workgroups 397, 400, 401
 - online forms 254
 - rows, table (Microsoft Access) 105
 - rows, table (Word)
 - adding 243
 - drawing 243
 - rows, worksheet
 - adding 152
 - and PivotTables 564
 - as chart data series 261, 265
 - changing height 152
 - converting to database records 496
 - counting 561
 - defined 78
 - filling automatically 81, 356
 - freezing heading row 354
 - headings for 78, 354
 - hiding 265, 476
 - inserting 152
 - selecting 79
 - R-squared value 598
 - rulers
 - defined 62
 - displaying 62
 - setting page margins on 132, 223
 - rules *See* borders
 - Rules Wizard 379
 - running macros 646, 646, 650
 - running totals, viewing 85
- S**
- sales data
 - analyzing 546–547, 563–569
 - by product 556–561
 - by region 556–561

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114423

- sales data (*continued*)
 - comparing in PivotTables 580
 - counting orders 561
 - creating reports in Microsoft Access 111, 256, 533
 - creating reports in Word 228–237
 - determining trends 571–575
 - filtering 558
 - forecasting 571–575
 - grouping 557
 - hiding detail 560
 - importing, which application to use 547
 - linking Microsoft Excel data to Word summaries 229
 - linking, which application to use 547
 - mapping 569
 - outlining 558, 560
 - preparing customer quotes 539–543
 - printing 559
 - ranking 588
 - retrieving from external databases 548–554
 - sorting 557
 - summarizing data in Microsoft Access databases 576–580
 - summarizing using PivotTables 563–569
 - summarizing with subtotals 556–561
 - summarizing, which method to use 546–547
 - totaling 556–561
 - when to use Microsoft Access 546
 - when to use Microsoft Excel 547
- sales forecasts 571–575
- saving
 - customized Outlook views 373
 - database records 110
 - document formats as styles 144
 - fax cover sheets as templates 194
 - files as templates 52, 53
 - online documents 425
 - presentations as templates 320
 - queries 588
 - related documents in Binders 179, 180
 - resumes as templates 623
 - undoing 110
 - Word document versions 422
 - Word documents 73
 - workbooks 89, 267
- scale, chart 282
- scatter charts
 - creating 596, 597
 - data markers 278
 - features of 595
 - for scientific data 595–601
 - multiple y values in 596, 597
 - regression analysis 592
 - vs. line charts 596
 - when to use 264
- schedules
 - See appointments
- scientific charts 596
- scientific data
 - analyzing 592–594
 - charting 595–601
- screen display
 - customizing 637, 638
 - elements in Word 62
- ScreenTips 36, 37
- scroll bars
 - defined 78
 - in Word 62, 65
- searching *See* finding
- secondary value axis, adding to charts 264, 283
- sections, dividing documents into 140, 234
- security *See* locking; passwords; protecting
- Select Browse Object button 66
- selecting
 - data for Microsoft Excel charts 261
 - text in Word 67
 - worksheet cells 78, 79
- self-running presentations
 - interactive vs. automatic 332, 336
 - overview 332
 - self-starting 335
 - setting up 335
 - specifying slide timing 333
- sending documents within workgroups 397, 399
- Setup program 30, 32, 33
 - See also* installing
- shading
 - adding to Microsoft Excel worksheets 154
 - adding to Word documents 138
 - for letterhead 199
 - in online forms 243

MS 114424

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

Index

- shading (*continued*)
 - in Word tables 243
 - removing from Word documents 138
- shapes, adding to worksheets 156
 - See also* AutoShape feature
- shared databases
 - changing design in exclusive mode 431
 - creating 428, 429
 - importing external data to 432
 - linking external data to 432
 - simultaneous use of 430, 431
 - tracking orders 427–432
 - viewing in read-only state 431
 - viewing updated records 431
- shared workbooks
 - conflicting changes 416
 - consolidating budget data in 481
 - editing 416
 - highlighting revisions 415
 - keeping track of 416
 - merging 414
 - overview 412, 415
 - preparing 413, 414
 - resources needed 412
 - reviewing revisions 415
 - revision history 414
 - routing 412
 - saving 415
 - timing updates 416
 - uses for 412
- sharing
 - See also* shared databases; shared workbooks
 - data between applications 169–181
 - documents online 396–404, 417–425
- sheets *See* worksheets
- Shortcut Bar *See* Office Shortcut Bar
- shortcut menus in Microsoft Excel 80
- shortcuts
 - creating for public folders 435
 - in Outlook 115
 - sending to public folder users 436
 - storing in Favorites folder 54
 - tips for entering text in Word 64
- Show/Hide Paragraph button 62
- Shrink to Fit feature 86, 152
- side heads 146
- side-by-side columns *See* columns, table (Word)
- sideways *See* landscape orientation
- signatures in electronic mail 403
- simple queries 577, 584
- Simple Query Wizard 577, 584
- size handles, graphic 225
- sizing *See* resizing
- Slide Meter 311
- Slide Navigator 315
- slide projector *See* slide show view
- slide show view 93
- slide shows, electronic *See* electronic presentations
- slide sorter view 93, 313
- slide view 93, 94
- slides, presentation
 - See also* presentations; title slides
 - adding graphics to 159–167
 - animated 299
 - animations 304, 305, 306, 313
 - applying formatting to all 321
 - black and white 324–326
 - branching among 308, 309
 - creating charts for 268
 - creating in outline view 97
 - customizing 319–323
 - expanding one slide to multiple slides 310
 - finding with Slide Navigator 315
 - formatting individually 321
 - grouping as custom show 310
 - headers and footers in 321
 - hidden 307, 315
 - images in audience handouts 299
 - images in notes pages 300
 - in outline view 97
 - in self-running presentations 332–337
 - inserting from other applications 329
 - inserting Word tables in 167
 - jumping between 308, 309
 - linking to Word documents 302
 - masters for 322, 323
 - miniature views 97, 325
 - output options 102, 326
 - overview 92
 - presentation designs 98
 - printing overheads 102
 - progressive disclosure 304, 305, 306

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114425

- slides, presentation (*continued*)
 - templates for 319–321
 - thumbnail views 97, 325
 - timing 311
 - titles for 95, 322
 - transitions between 304, 305, 307, 308, 309, 313
 - using Pen to draw on 318
 - viewing from outline view 97
- slogans for letterhead 197
- small caps 128
- software *See* add-ins; applications; Microsoft Office Solver 486
- sorting
 - budget data 483
 - contact information 346, 356, 357, 372
 - database query results 588
 - database records 107
 - for ranking 588
 - lists in Microsoft Excel 90, 356, 357, 557
 - on multiple worksheet columns 549, 559
 - worksheet data 90, 483
- sound objects
 - adding to electronic presentations 312
 - inserting voice comments 409
 - using in electronic presentations 315, 316
- spacing
 - characters 129
 - lines 130
 - paragraphs 130
- speaker notes
 - creating 300, 316
 - exporting to Word 302
 - headers and footers on 299
 - hidden slides in 307
 - overview 92, 93
 - printing 102, 301
 - resizing slide images 300
 - viewing on screen during presentations 316
 - when to use 298, 300
 - writing style 299
- special characters
 - inserting in documents 64
 - inserting in presentation slide text 97
- special effects in online presentations 315, 316
- speed dialing with Outlook 351
- spelling checking
 - automatic vs. on demand 72
 - in Microsoft Access 518
 - in PowerPoint 101
 - in Word 72
 - in Microsoft Excel 82
- splitting databases 431
- splitting tables and table cells (Word) 243
- spreadsheets *See* worksheets
- SQL Server files
 - linking Microsoft Excel forms to 252
 - opening from Microsoft Excel 550
- standard deviation 600
- standard error 600
- starting Office applications 34
- startup forms, database
 - bypassing 522
 - creating 520–522
 - for inventory database 519–522
 - overview 519
 - setting to open automatically 522
- statistical analysis
 - experimental data 592–594
 - forecasting sales 571
- storing
 - contact information 346, 347
 - frequently used files 54
- Style box, for business reports 233
- Style Checker 101
- Style Gallery
 - changing styles 142
 - letter templates 196
- styles, document
 - See also* templates
 - applying 144
 - creating 144
 - reformatting 144
 - saving text formatting as 144
 - viewing list in Style box 233
- styles, heading
 - creating tables of contents from 236, 237
 - in PowerPoint outlines 328
 - outline vs. no outline 421
 - setting up 418

MS 114426

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

Index

- styles, worksheet cell
 - applying 157
 - copying to other workbooks 157
 - defining cell formatting as 157
- subtotals
 - adding to worksheets 558, 559
 - automatic 558
 - consolidating 479
 - for sales data 558, 559
 - in charts 265
 - in worksheet lists 558, 559
 - nesting 559
 - printing 559
- subtracting in worksheet formulas 483
- SUM function 84, 558
- SUMIF function 561
- summarizing
 - budget data 474–481
 - sales data using PivotTables 563–569
 - sales data with subtotals 556–561
 - sales data, which method to use 546–547
- summary functions 559
- suppliers
 - adding to inventory database 505–512
 - storing Web site hyperlinks in databases 466, 467, 468
 - tying to product lists 509, 510
- switchboard, database
 - adding charts to 275
 - for contact management database 361
 - for music collection database 627
 - for order entry database 428
- symbols
 - adding to Word documents 64, 137
 - in letterhead design 198
 - reversing effect 137
- T**
 - Table Analyzer Wizard 494, 495, 496
 - table design view 514, 515, 516, 517
 - Table Wizard 112, 505, 506, 507
 - tables (Microsoft Access) *See* tables, database
 - tables (Microsoft Excel) *See* PivotTables; worksheets
 - tables (Word)
 - adding 136, 242
 - adding rows to 243
 - tables (Word) (*continued*)
 - borders in 243
 - creating Graph charts from 271
 - drawing rows and columns 243
 - for creating online forms 242, 243
 - for flyer layout 223
 - formatting 136
 - in legal documents 612
 - inserting in presentation slides 167
 - joining 243
 - removing borders 224
 - removing cell partitions 223
 - shading in 138, 243
 - splitting 243
 - uses for 136
 - tables of authorities 608, 609, 610
 - tables of contents 236, 237
 - tables, database
 - adding fields 508, 511
 - adding hyperlinks 466
 - adding lookup field 509, 510
 - creating from scratch 507
 - creating PivotTables from 578
 - creating using Table Wizard 506, 507
 - defined 104, 105
 - entering information 508
 - in inventory database 505–512
 - relationships between 495, 504, 512
 - renaming fields 508
 - setting field properties 513–518
 - viewing relationships between 512
 - tabs, worksheet
 - clicking on 87
 - in consolidation 478, 479, 480
 - renaming 87
 - take-aways *See* handouts, audience
 - tape collection, organizing 626–629
 - tasks, automating 643–648, 649–653
 - tasks, individual
 - See also* action items
 - assigning to others 392
 - organizing 120
 - printing task information 393
 - receiving from others 393
 - recurring 120
 - viewing in Calendar 386

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

- team document review 406–412
- Template Wizard with Data Tracking 250–257
- templates
 - basing files on 49–53
 - budget worksheets as 475
 - creating new workbooks from 77
 - defined 48, 63
 - for Binders 181
 - for business letters 186
 - for business reports 230
 - for contracts 612, 613
 - for memos 191
 - for Microsoft Excel forms 251, 257
 - for presentations 98, 319–321
 - for resumes 621
 - list of 51
 - modifying letterhead designs 196–200
 - opening documents as 49
 - saving documents as 52, 53
 - saving presentations as 320
 - saving workbooks as 89
 - vs. wizards 63
- templates, data-tracking
 - built-in 251, 257
 - creating 251
 - filling out forms 255
 - linking to databases 252, 253, 257
 - modifying with Template Wizard 251, 254
 - protecting cells 252
- text (Word)
 - aligning 70, 130
 - boldfacing 70
 - centering horizontally 70, 130
 - centering vertically 186
 - changing default font 129
 - changing font 70
 - copying 69
 - deleting 68
 - editing 68, 69
 - entering automatically 64
 - formatting 70, 71, 127–146
 - highlighting 191
 - in flyers 225
 - indenting 70, 130, 131
 - inserting 68
 - italicizing 70
 - text (Word) (*continued*)
 - justifying 70, 130
 - linking with text boxes 141
 - marking revisions 406, 407, 408
 - moving 69
 - rotating 199
 - selecting 67
 - shading 138
 - shortcuts for entering 64
 - spacing 129, 130
 - typing 64
 - underlining 70
 - wrapping around graphics 221
- text boxes
 - See also* text fields in online forms
 - adding graphic effects 221
 - adding to charts 281
 - adding to Word documents 225
 - creating 141
 - empty, inserting 225
 - for graphic objects 225
 - for side heads 146
 - for watermarks 203
 - linking together 141
 - on maps 293
- text effects
 - drop caps 129
 - in letterhead design 200
 - using WordArt 137, 164
- text fields, in online forms 244, 245
- text files
 - delimited, when to use 347
 - exporting 347
 - importing 347, 550
 - using in PowerPoint 327
- Text Import Wizard 497
- text, chart
 - adding 281
 - importing 354
- text, presentation 97
- text, worksheet
 - formatting 86, 355
 - importing 354
- thumbnail views of presentation slides 325
- tick marks, in charts 282
- time zones, displaying in Outlook 390

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114428

Index

- timing, presentation 101, 311
 - title pages
 - adding to Microsoft Access reports from Word 537, 538
 - for business reports 235
 - for price lists 537, 538
 - title slides
 - formatting with Title Master 322
 - in presentation outlines 95
 - titles
 - See also* labeling; naming
 - adding to database forms 502
 - for chart axes 281
 - for charts 281
 - for presentation slides 95, 322
 - to do lists
 - See* tasks, individual
 - today's date
 - entering automatically in databases 515
 - entering in Word documents 64
 - toolbar buttons
 - adding 639
 - assigning macros to 647
 - viewing descriptions in Word 37
 - toolbars
 - adding 637
 - adding AutoText feature to 613
 - adding buttons to 639
 - customizing 639, 640
 - displaying 62, 637
 - for database applications 522
 - moving 640
 - Review Comments toolbar 414
 - Web toolbar 442, 446, 447
 - ToolPak *See* Analysis ToolPak
 - tools, statistical analysis 592–594
 - Top 10 feature 483
 - totals
 - See also* subtotals
 - calculating 556–561
 - finding in database queries 587
 - for sales data 556–561
 - formatting 86
 - in PivotTables 563, 564, 565
 - tracing errors 561
 - tracking action items 317
 - tracking data *See* templates, data-tracking
 - tracking orders in shared databases 427–432
 - transitions, slide
 - advantages in presentations 304
 - creating 305
 - use of slide sorter view 93, 313
 - vs. animations 305, 313
 - transparencies 102
 - traveling with presentations 314
 - TREND function 573
 - trendlines
 - adding to charts 574, 575
 - adding to data series 598
 - and chart types 599
 - and error bars 600, 601
 - calculating 573, 574, 575
 - changing 599
 - defined 574
 - for sales data 574, 575, 599
 - formatting 599
 - in column charts 574, 575
 - linear 574
 - logarithmic 575
 - moving average 575
 - types of 575, 598
 - trends
 - calculating 573
 - charting 574, 575
 - overview 571
 - turning off
 - See also* hiding
 - screen elements 637
 - selected toolbars 637
 - two-page spreads 146
 - typos, correcting
 - in documents 64, 72
 - in presentations 100
 - in worksheets 82, 356
- ## U
- underlining (Microsoft Excel) 86
 - underlining (Word) 70
 - undoing actions
 - in Microsoft Access 110
 - in Microsoft Excel 80, 82
 - in Word 67

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114429

uninstalling
 applications 32, 33
 Office 32, 33
 unit price *See* prices
 unlocking worksheet cells 413, 477
 updating
 controlling manually 174
 database records 110, 255
 external data by linking to Microsoft Access
 database 432
 linked charts vs. inserting charts 268
 linked data 174
 linked data using folders 267
 maps 294
 tables of authorities 610
 upgrading Office 29
 uppercase, changing to 129

V

validating data entry
 in database forms 516
 in worksheets 359
 value (y) axis
 adding title 281
 defined 261
 secondary, adding 264, 283
 values *See* numbers
 variance, analysis of 592
 vertical ruler, setting page margins on 223
 vertically centering text 186
 Viewer *See* PowerPoint Viewer
 views
 See also previewing
 full screen 638
 in PowerPoint 93, 94
 in Word 74
 Visual Basic for Applications 643, 648, 653
 VLOOKUP function 540, 541
 voice comments, inserting 409
 volume discounts, calculating 543
 voting, e-mail 381

W

watermarks, adding to letterhead 203, 204
 Web Page Wizard 458–459
 Web toolbar 442, 446, 447
 what-if analysis 482–489
 widening columns 86
 Windows 95
 installing Office in 30, 33
 quitting applications in 34
 starting applications in 34
 using taskbar to transfer information between
 applications 178
 Windows Explorer 430
 Windows NT
 installing Office in 30, 33
 quitting applications in 34
 starting applications in 34
 wizards
 AutoContent Wizard 95, 97
 basing files on 49, 51
 Chart Wizard (Microsoft Access) 272, 274, 275
 Chart Wizard (Microsoft Excel) 261
 Command Button Wizard 521, 649, 652, 653
 Database Wizard 112, 360, 361, 427, 429, 626,
 627, 632
 defined 48, 63
 Fax Wizard 192–194
 Form Wizard 109, 112, 498, 499, 504
 Import Spreadsheet Wizard 494
 Label Wizard 216
 Letter Wizard 184, 185, 186, 624, 625
 list of 51
 Lookup Wizard (Microsoft Access) 509
 Lookup Wizard (Microsoft Excel) 541
 Memo Wizard 189, 190
 Newsletter Wizard 218, 219
 Pack and Go Wizard 314
 PivotTable Wizard (Microsoft Access) 578, 580
 PivotTable Wizard (Microsoft Excel) 565
 Pleading Wizard 604, 605, 606
 Presentation Conference Wizard 339, 340
 Publish to the Web Wizard 469
 Query Wizard 551, 552, 553
 Registration Wizard 31
 Report Wizard 112, 525, 526, 527, 533

MS 114430

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

Index

- wizards (*continued*)
- Resume Wizard 620–623
 - Rules Wizard 379
 - Simple Query Wizard 577, 584
 - Table Analyzer Wizard 494, 495, 496
 - Table Wizard 112, 505, 506, 507
 - Template Wizard with Data Tracking 250–257
 - Text Import Wizard 497
 - vs. templates 63, 186
 - Web Page Wizard 458–459
- Word *See* Microsoft Word
- WordMail 402, 403
- word wrap 64
- WordArt *See* Microsoft WordArt
- WordPerfect, Help for users 40
- words
- See also* text, document
 - counting in Word 221
 - selecting in Word 67
- workbooks
- See also* worksheets
 - adding sheets to 87, 480
 - combining worksheets 478
 - copying cell styles between 157
 - copying worksheets between 478
 - copying worksheets within 476, 478
 - creating based on templates 77
 - creating files 77
 - defined 77
 - first 76–90
 - linking to databases 252, 253, 257
 - multiple, linking to single database 254
 - opening 77
 - revision history 414
 - routing 412
 - saving 89, 267
 - saving as templates 89
 - shared 412–416, 481
 - sharing 412, 413, 415
 - vs. worksheets 77
- workgroups
- creating online manuals 417–425
 - reviewing documents 406–412
 - sharing documents 396–404
 - sharing workbooks 412–416, 481
- worksheets
- See also* cells, worksheet; columns, worksheet; rows, worksheet; workbooks
 - 3-D references in 479, 480
 - adding graphics 156, 159–167
 - adding to workbooks 87, 480
 - applying autoformats to 158
 - attaching to electronic mail messages 399
 - branching from online presentations to 308
 - built-in templates 251, 257, 539
 - combining 474, 478
 - converting product list to Microsoft Access database 493–497
 - converting to HTML documents 448–451
 - copying between workbooks 478
 - copying cell ranges between 476
 - copying formatting in 157
 - copying within workbooks 476, 478
 - creating business contact list in 353–359
 - creating charts from 260–265
 - creating Microsoft Access reports from 533
 - defined 77
 - elements of 78, 79, 80
 - formatting 86, 148–158
 - inserting in other documents 167
 - linking to Microsoft Access databases 497
 - mapping of data 287–288
 - merging list data from 213
 - moving around in 78, 81
 - names in formulas 479, 480
 - naming 87
 - outlining 558, 560
 - page breaks 88
 - page layout 86, 88, 89
 - previewing 86, 88, 89
 - printing 89
 - printing part of 89
 - protecting 413, 477
 - renaming 87
 - revision history 414
 - scenarios in 487, 488
 - selecting cells 78, 79
 - sharing information between applications 169–181
 - spelling checking 82
 - typing data 356
 - upper size limit 592

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114431

worksheets (*continued*)
 using as mailing lists 209, 215
 viewing 86, 88, 89
 vs. Microsoft Access databases 493, 546–547
 vs. workbooks 77
 when to use as forms 240
World Wide Web
 accessing sites using Web toolbar 447
 and document distribution 398
 creating forms to collect information 249
 creating PowerPoint presentations for 331
 creating Web pages 458–462
 defined 443
 getting help online 41
 opening Web pages from Outlook 471
 publishing information on 448–451, 452–457, 469
 querying for data 549
 storing site hyperlinks in databases 466, 467, 468
wrapping text around graphics 221
Write-Up feature 102
WYSIWYG 74

X

xy charts *See* scatter charts

Z

Zoom box 290, 300, 638

Not finding what you want? Your subject may be in Help.

MS 114432

Getting Results with Microsoft Office 703

Getting Results with Microsoft Office 97 helps you get the most out of your software

Get Organized. See how easy it is to organize the information and tasks you work with every day.

Get Connected. Learn how to maximize the potential of the Internet or your company's intranet with innovative tools for finding information, publishing documents, and collaborating with others.

Get Results. Find out how the Office 97 applications work together seamlessly so you can get powerful results faster and easier than ever before.

Read "Start Here" first to:

Chart your course. Learn how to get started with Office 97 quickly, based on your experience and interests.

Find out what's new. Learn about the exciting new features in the Office 97 applications.

Expand your knowledge. Discover the wide range of Microsoft Office 97 publications available from Microsoft Press, tailored to your specific experience level and information needs.

For *insight,*

information,

interaction,

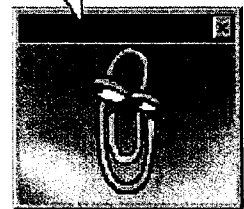
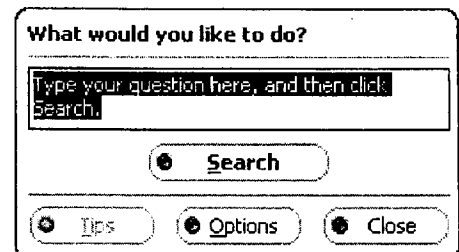
and *support,*

visit the Microsoft Office Web site at:

<http://www.microsoft.com/office/>

The Office Assistant is Ready to Help

- **Ask for help when you need it.** The Office Assistant observes your actions, fields your questions, and quickly presents you with a list of the most relevant Help topics.
- **Get expert advice without asking.** The Office Assistant delivers helpful messages and timely tips that can make your work easier.



MS 114433



Microsoft®